

Richard Coeur de Lion:
An Edition from the London Thornton Manuscript

2 Volumes

María Cristina Figueredo
Submitted for the degree of Doctor in Philosophy

VOLUME 2

University of York
Centre for Medieval Studies
December 2009

VOLUME 2**Table of Contents**

Table of Contents	2
Editorial Practice	3
<i>Richard Coeur de Lion</i>	5
Explanatory Notes	148
Textual Notes	197
Appendix 2	227
Glossary	234

This Edition

Editorial practice

Where a form has been emended, the emendation appears in square brackets in the edited text. The emended and the original forms are given in Textual Notes. Square brackets are also used for the *lacunae* editorially provided, as well as to indicate an illegible part of the text. All of these are documented in Textual Notes. Whenever the scribe has repeated a word or words in error, this is recorded in Textual Notes, but the repetition is corrected and not indicated in the edited text. Likewise, the Textual Notes point out the occasional editorial deletions, but these do not appear in the edited text. The same applies to the marginalia found in the manuscript. All corrections and emendations made by Thornton himself are signalled in Textual Notes, but they are not visible in the edited text.

Expansions of contractions and abbreviations appear in italics. Superscripts that are not abbreviations – for example: *b^e* and *bⁱs* – are edited as a complete word. Capitals have been regularized according to modern usage; this also applies to the medieval capital F (ff). Apart from being used for all proper names, in keeping with manuscript practice, every line begins with a capital. The letters u/v are transcribed as they appear in the original. However, because the distribution of ‘i’ and ‘j’ is very irregular, it has been regularised according to modern usage. Yoghs (ʒ) and thorns (þ) have not been modernised, but the Tironian ‘et’ is shown as ‘&’. Wherever a ‘þ’ is placed instead of a ‘y’, it has been regularized. The bar through ‘ll’ has been disregarded. Paragraphs follow the manuscript; the larger capitals follow the manuscript layout and image.

Finally, wherever **B** is defective, the missing text, marked off by brackets, is supplied from **C** with the appropriate page number in the right-hand margin.

Glosses

The glosses are intended as an aid to understand the general idea of the line or passage; they do not offer a literal translation. Few lines are entirely glossed; for most lines, only difficult words or phrases have been glossed. If a word in the glosses starts with a capital, it refers to a capitalized word in the edited text. Glosses are separated by a slash when they do not refer to consecutive words in the edited text.

Richard Coeur de Lion
from the London Thornton Manuscript

- L**orde Jhesu Criste, kyng of glory,
 The faire grace and the victorie
 Pat thou sent to Kynge Richerde, *you*
 Pat neuer in his lyue was funden cowerde, *life / found*
 5 It is righte gude to heryn in jeste *hear / epic story*
 Off his prowesche and his noble conqueste. *prowess*
 Also full fele romance men makis nowe, *very many / write*
 Of gude knyghtis þat were stronge & trewe,
 Of þaire dedis men redys romance *their deeds / read*
 10 Bothe in Yglonde and eke in Fraunce: *England / also*
 Of Duke Rowlande and of Sir Olyuere, *Roland*
 And also of euereylke a duggèpere. *each one of the twelve peers*
 Of Alexandere and of Sir Gawayne,
 Of Kyng Arthure & of Sir Charlemayne,
 15 How they weren gude and also curtayse, *good / courteous*
 Of Bischope Turpyn & Sir Ogere Danays.
 And also of Troye men redis in ryme,
 Whate werre was there *in* olde tyme, *war*
 Of Ectoure and also of Achilles, *Hector*
 20 And whate folkes were slayne þer *in* þat prese. *in the thick of battle*
 In Fraunce bokes thies *rymes* men wrote, *French / these*
 Bot in Ynglys lewede men knewe it note. *England / laymen / did not know*
 Lewede men kan Fraunce righte none, *almost no layman knows French*
 Amanges ane hundrethe vnnethes one. *Hardly one in one hundred*
 25 Bot nowe will I schewe 3ow *with* gude chere, *show you / cheer*
 3iff that 3ow lyke to lythe & here, *If / listen and hear*
 A noble geste, I vndirstonde, *story / understand*
 Off doughty knyghtis of Inglonde. *brave*
 And therefore nowe I will 3ow rede, *narrate*
 30 Of a kyng that was doughty in dede: *deed*
 Kyng Richerde þat was þe werryoure beste *best warrior*
 Pat men redis offe in any geste. *that one might read about in any tale*
 And to alle þat heris þis ilke talkynge, *hear / this very story*
 Jhesu now graunte theym his dere blyssynge! *grant them / precious*
- 35 **N**ow schalle 3ee herken & heris byforne, *Now you shall hear [how] long ago*
 How þat kyng Richerd was getyn & borne. *begotten*
 His fadir was callede Kynge Henry, *father*
 In his tyme þe secoude, als I fynd sekirly. *as / certainly*
 And also, as I hafe herde men saye in sawe, *heard / in the telling*
 40 Saynt Thomas of Cantirbery was in his tyme yslawe *Thomas Becket / slain*
 At Cantirbery, at his heghe awtire stone; *high altar*
 There many miracles hafe bene done. *have been*
 When he was twenty wyntter alde, *he [Henry] / winters old*
 He was a stronge knyghte & a baulde, *bold*
 45 Bot he ne wolde no wyffe hafe, I vndirstande, *did not want to have*
 With grete tresours þoghe he þam fande. *although he found them with / treasures*
 Bot at the laste so gretely hafe his barouns hym redde *eventually / intently / urged him*
 That he graunted a wyfe to wedde. *consented*

- And hastily he dide sende his sandis *sent / envoys*
 50 Thurgh many regyons & dyuerse landis, *Through*
 To the faireste woman þat moughte be founden one lyue, *To [find]/ alive*
 Men schold brynge hir hym to weyffe. *should bring her to marry him*
 Messengers weren redy dyghte *prepared*
 To schippes þay went þat ilke same nyghte. *very*
 55 Paire saylles full swiftly vp þay droughe *very / they drew up*
 And þe wynde þam seruede wele ynoghe. *served them / well enough*
 Bot when þay come in þe myddis of þe see, as I herde saye, *in the open sea*
 No manere of wynde than there hadde þay; *there was no wind*
 And therefore þam was full swithe woo. *they were extremely afflicted*
 60 Bot anoper schipe þam cowntirde soo, *encountered them*
 Swilke one ne sawe þay neuer none; *such as they had never seen*
 For alle it was of ruelle bone, *walrus ivory*
 And euery nayle was golde wyre, *made of gold*
 Off betyn golde topcastelle and are, *leaf gold / topcastle / oars*
 65 The maste it was of yvorye,
 Off white satyne þe sayle was, sekerly, *satin / certainly*
 And the f[an]e also was of tuly silke. *pennant / vermilion silk*
 Als white als any mornnes mylke *morning*
 This noble schipe was alle withowte, *on the outside*
 70 With clothis of golde sprede alle abowte,
 And their lofe and their wyndas, *spar / windlass*
 Off azoure coloure forsothe it was. *blue / in truth*
 Also in þat schipe was there dighte, *arranged*
 Knyghtys and ladys þat weren full bright.
 75 And also a lady therein was,
 þat schone als bryghte als þe sonne dose thorowe þe glasse, *sun*
 & hire men appon þe borde gane stande, *her*
 And sees þat oþer schipp es come to þaire hande.
 They preyede þam faire *with* them to duelle, *asked / remain*
 80 And their conselle thereto they to telle. *advice* f.125va
 And they ansuerde, righte sone with skylle,
 For to telle them alle þeire will.
 They seyde: 'To wyde landes hafe we ment, *purposed [to go]*
 For oure Kynge Henry forthe vs hase he sent,
 85 For to seke to hym a qwene,
 The faireste lady that [e]wre myghte bene.' *ever*
 Than vp rase a kyng owte of a chayere, *rose / chair*
 With that worde they spake so faire –
 The chayere wasse alle of charbocle stone, *was / carbuncle*
 90 Swilke one ne sawghe they neuere none – *Such as they had never seen*
 And two dukes stode hym besyde,
 Ful nobill men & of mekill pride. *much*
 And faire welcomede þan cuerilkone, *then everyone*
 And into that schipe then þay went sone. *soon*
 95 Thirty knyghtys þan, withowttyn lye, *in truth*
 Weren alle in that companye.
 And into þat riche full sone þay went, *rich [ship]*
 Als messangers þat weren curtaise & gent. *noble*

100	Knyghtis, ladyse come þam agayne, Seuen score and ma, I dare wele sayne, And alle þay welcomede þam with one worde. Þay sett þe tristis and layde the borde, Clothis of silke thereone was sprede. And the kynge hymselfe bede	<i>towards them</i> <i>[i.e. one hundred and forty] / more / say</i> <i>trestles / table</i>	
105	That his doughtire sold forthe be fett, And in a chayere byfore hym sett. And trompetes than bygan to blawe, And sho was þan fett forthe in a thrawe With twenty knyghtis hire abowte,	<i>bade</i> <i>should be brought out</i> <i>she / brought / immediately</i>	
110	And moo of ladys þat weren gaye & stowtte. And alle they gane knelen hir vntoo, Too wiete whate scho wolde hafe ydo. They ete, they dranke, & made þam glade, Als the kyng hymselfe badde.	<i>More / of beautiful appearance</i> <i>knelt in front of her</i> <i>to know / she / done</i> <i>ate</i> <i>as / himself / bade</i>	
115	And when þay hade nerehand etyn, To speke of auntirs noghte þay forgetyn, The kynge þam tolde than in his resoun It come hym, he seyde, in ane avisyoun. In his ownn londe, he seyde, there he come fro,	<i>almost finished eaten</i> <i>adventures / they by no means</i> <i>then / wisely</i> <i>a vision</i> <i>land</i>	
120	Into Inglonde that hym byhouede to goo. And also his doughtire þat was hym dere, For to wende with hym in fere. 'And in this manere we hafe vs dighte, Into that londe to wende full righte.'	<i>needed</i> <i>dear</i> <i>go / together</i>	
125	And than ansuerde a messangere, His name was hatten <i>Sir</i> Bernagere: 'Forthire as nowe will we trete noghte, Bot to my lorde sho schall be broghte. When he hire with his eghne dose ysee,	<i>then</i> <i>called</i> <i>we will not discuss the terms further</i> <i>she</i> <i>he sees her with his eyes</i>	f.125vb
130	We wote that wele apayedede will he bee.' The wynde than rase owte of the northe este, And seruede þam wele at the beste, And at þe turn þay gan vp ryve, To the lande the kynge went þan belyue.	<i>know / well pleased</i> <i>rose / north-east</i> <i>up stream</i> <i>quickly</i>	
135	The messangers to Kyng Henry hafe telde Of that mayden so faire in felde, There, als he laye in his heghe towre, Off that lady als whitte als floure. Kyng Henry þan full sone hym dighte	<i>have told</i> <i>in the world</i> <i>high tower</i> <i>as a flower</i> <i>at once got ready</i>	
140	With erles and barouns & many a kriyghte, Agayne the lady than for to wende, For he was ay curtayse and hende. The dameselle thane one lande was lede, And clothis of golde byfore hire were sprede,	<i>Towards / go</i> <i>always courteous / noble</i> <i>onto</i> <i>her</i>	
145	And hir fadire hire byforne, With a crownn of precyous golde cornen. The messangers also bi ilke a syde, And mynstralles þat weryn of mekill pride.	<i>father / in front of her</i> <i>crowned</i> <i>on either side</i> <i>minstrels / much</i>	

- Kyng Henry þan lighte *with grete hiynge*,
 150 And welcomede full faire þat vncouthe kyng,
 And soo he dide þat faire lady alsoo.
 He seyde: ‘Welcome bene 3e alle me too.’
 To Westmynstere then þay went in fere,
 Lordis and ladys & alle þat there were.
 155 Then trompetes bygan to þe mete to blawe,
 And scho was fochede forthe in a thrawe,
 Then knyghtis þam seruede there gude spede,
 Thereof to telle it es noo nede.
- B**ot anone aftire the mete beyng,
 160 Than righte sone spekes Henry, oure kyng,
 Vnto þe kyng that satt hym by:
 ‘Telle me thy name *Sir*,’ he said, ‘I pryce.’
 ‘Mi name *Sir*,’ he seyde, ‘es Corbarynge,
 Of Antioche I ame corownde kyng.’
 165 And tolde the kyng alle þer in resoun,
 Howe he come thedire thurgh a vesyoun.
 ‘And forsothe, *Sir*, als I tellen the,
 I hade ells broghte moo men3ee *with me*;
 Ful many and ma, *withowtten faile*,
 170 And moo schippes also *with vetaile*.’
 Tha[n] askede he that lady brighte:
 ‘Whate highte thou, my swete wighte?’
 ‘Cassodoren,’ sho said, ‘*withowte lesynge*,’
 Thus answerde sho till Henre, oure kyng.
 175 ‘Nowe Dameselle,’ he said, ‘brighte & schene,
 Will þou duelle here & be my qwene?’
 And sho ansuerde þen *with wordes full still*,
 ‘*Sir*, I am at my fadirs will.’
 Hire fadire graunted þerto full sone,
 180 That alle his will it scholde be done.
 Ful hastily þan were þay wedde,
With honoure als to a qwene fallis to kynges bedde.
 They preyed hym for his curtaisye,
 It moughte be done preualy.
- 185 **[T]**he spowssyng was done þat ilke nyghte;
 Therat dawnsd many a lady & many a knyghte,
 Ful mekill joye was þam emange.
 A preste full sone the messe sange,
 Bot righte byfore þe lauacyoun,
 190 þe qwene felle in a swounyng down.
 þe folke woundrede & were adrede,
 And into a chambire scho was ledd.
 þan sho sayde: ‘For I am þusgates schent,
 Ne dere I neuer see the sacrament.’
 195 Hir fadir at morne þan tooke his leue,
 Noo longare þan wolde he there byleue.

came to them at once
unknown

to me
Westminster [palace] / together

sounded to announce dinner
brought
promptly
is no need

meal began

pray
My / is
am / crowned

wisely
because of / vision
in truth / tell you
a larger retinue

more / without doubt f.126ra

supplies

Then

What are you called / creature
she / in truth

beautiful

very humble

they were married
as befits a king's consort

might / secretly

wedding

danced

among them

mass

Elevation [of the host]

swoon

were astonished / frightened

so lost

I dare never look upon

in the morning

did he wish to stay there

- The kyng duellede still þere *with* his qwene,
 Childre þay hade full faire þam bytwene;
 Two sonnes and a mayden,
 200 Forsothe righte als þe booke vs saiden. *tells us*
 Richerde highte þe firste, ywysse, *is called / indeed*
 Wareof this romance imaked es. *About whom / romance is made*
 Jhon forsothe þe toþer was, *other*
 The thirde, his sistere Topyas.
 205 And thus þay duellid all in fere, *together*
 Till it was passede fiftene zere. *years*
 And one a daye, byfore the rode, *in front of the cross*
 Als þe kyng at his messe stode, *mass stood*
 There come ane erle of grete pouste: *an earl / high position*
 210 ‘Sir,’ he said, ‘how may this be, *f. 126rb*
 That thus my lady, the qwene,
 Ne dare noghte þe sacrament sene? *look upon*
 Now, giffas vs leue to garre hir duelle, *give us leave / make her stay*
 Fro þat þe preste bygynn þe gosepelle,
 215 To þat þe messe be songen and sayde, *sung*
 And zee shall see a full qwaynt brayde.’ *wondrous marvel*
 The kyng comanded all, att his will,
 To holde hir with strengthe stone still: *as still as a stone*
 ‘And noþer for wele nor zitt for woo, *[i.e. on no account]*
 220 Lates hir noughte owte of the kirke goo.’ *Let her leave church*
 Thane, when þe belle bygan to ryng,
 And the preste solde þan make sacrynge, *priest was about to / consecration*
 Owte of þe kirke sho wolde away. *attempted to leave*
 Ane erle sayd: ‘For God, ma dame, nay!
 225 Lady,’ he saide, ‘here þou schall habyde, *stay*
 For anythyng þat may betide.’ *happen*
 Scho toke hir doghetir þan by þe hande, *daughter*
 And Jhon, hir sone, wold sho nott wande, *abandon*
 And owte at þe kirke rofe sho gan hir dighte, *roof / went*
 230 Apertly in þaire allere sighte. *Openly in front of all of them*
 Bot Jhon felle fro hir appon þe grounde, *upon*
 And brake his thee bane in þat stounde. *broke / thigh bone*
 And *with* hir doghetir, thus, sho flowe away, *flew*
 And no man sawe hir no more vnto þis day.
 235 The kyng woundrede gretly of this thyng
 þat sho thus vellely made hir endyng. *wondered*
 And for lufe þat he was seruede soo, *wickedly / ending*
 Neuer more gaffe he hym noo women vntoo. *love / paid*
 Bot ordeyned sone aftir his endyng, *again he gave himself to a woman*
 240 His sone Richerde for to be kyng. *And / ordained soon*
 Thus was Richerd, certaynly,
 Crowned kyng – aftir his fadir, Kyng Henry –
 That was in his tyme nynetene zere. *years*
 He was a man of grete powere,
 245 And dedis of armes he gaffe too, *engaged in feats of arms*
 Als falles to knyghttis and sqwyers also. *As befits*

	He wexe so stronge in euerilke fighte, Agaynes hym hade no man no myghte. And in euerilke stede he toke honoure	<i>grew Against / power in every place</i>	
250	Als noble kyng and conqueroure. In þe firste ȝere that he was kyng, At Salysbery he made a grete justynge þat euerilke knyghte þat couthe hym were Oper with schelde or with spere:	<i>jousting every / knew how to fight with him Both / shield / and / spear everyone</i>	f.126va
255	‘Erles, barouns, euerylkon, Lukes þat byhynd there byleue none For forfeoure of wyfe and londe, And for nothyng that they ne wande’. That was the crye, I vnderstande,	<i>See to it / behind / remain On pain of loss of be absent proclamation / understand</i>	
260	þat was cryed thorowte all Yngland. And alle was to looke and to see, What knyghte beste doande myght bee. And thedir they come at þe kynges will, His commandement for to fullfill.	<i>throughout was the most successful</i>	
265	The parties weren þan insondere sett, Toggedir þay went suythe, withowtтын lett. King Richerde gan hym þan disgyse In his qwayntise, one strange wiese. And he come owte therof a valaye,	<i>then divided swiftly / without delay disguised himself cunning / in a strange disguise came / field</i>	
270	For to profe therof þaire playe, Als he had bene ane awnterows knyght. His atire was alle qwayntely dighte, Alle togedire it was cole blake, His horse & his atire, withowtтын lakk.	<i>test their mettle As [if] / been / knight-errant ingeniously made coal-black indeed</i>	
275	And one his creste a rauē there stode, þat ȝarmede als it ware wode. And abowte his swyre, a belle, Wharefore it was there, I sall ȝow telle. The kynde of þe rauē, forsothe it es,	<i>on / raven stood croaked / were mad its neck Why / I shall tell you nature / for certain</i>	
280	In trauelle euer to bene, ywysse. And the signyficacioun of þe belle Es with holy kirke euer for to duelle, And theym to noye and for to greue þat are noghte in the righte byleue.	<i>to be engaged in action / certainly meaning Is / church / remain annoy / grieve Those [who] / faith</i>	
285	A schafte he bare was grete & strange, þat was fourtene fote full lange, And twenty ynche it was abowte; þat was a schafte bothe grete & stowte. þe firste knyghte þat he with mett,	<i>lance / great / strong foot / long in circumference stout</i>	
290	Grymly he appon hym sett With swilke a dynt in myddis þe schelde, þat his horse he strake down in þe felde. Horse and man he bare to þe grownde, þat full nere he dyed righte in þat stownde.	<i>such a blow / in the middle of struck / field thrust</i>	f.126vb
295	þe nexte þat he mett with thare, A grete stroke of hym he bare;	<i>almost / died / at that moment there endured</i>	

- His gorgere with his coronalle tho,
 And his nekke bone bothe he bare in two.
 His horse felle downn dede to þe grownde,
 300 And he diede in þat ilke same stownde.
- B**ot þan þe kynge gan houe & habyde,
 Giff any moo wolde to hym ryde.
 And tromppettes þan bygan to blawe,
 And knyghtis justed faste in þat thrawe.
 305 Anoper knyghte, hardy & gud,
 Satt one a stede als rede als blode.
 He did hym in armes full wele dighte,
 In þat countre was noghte swilke a knyghte.
 And he toke a schafte full grete & strange,
 310 þat was full heuy & righte full lange,
 And said he wolde vnto hym ryde,
 Gif þat he durste hym habyde.
 Tromppettes one lowde gan blawe þan,
 And þerby wiste wele euerilke a man
 315 þat þe awnterous knyghte sold juste mare,
 Alle þe noble knyghtis byhelde þat þer ware.
 King Richerd full sone of hym was warre
 And hent his spere in haste reghte thare
 And manly encontrede hym in þe felde
 320 And bare away halfe his schelde,
 His besygewe awaye gan gane,
 And alswa of his schouldere bane,
 His pesane & alswa his gorgere;
 Hym forthoghte euer þat he come thare.
 325 Kyng Richerde houede still at þe end of his renk[es]
 A qwille for to riste hym there, he thynkes,
 For to see gif þer were ouper knyghte or swayne
 þat wold any more ryde hym agayne.
 And wele he sees that there *commes nonne*,
 330 And forthe his wayes es he gone
 Into a wodde owte of theire sighte,
 And in anoper atire he dose hym to dighte.
 Appon a stede was rede als blode,
 With alle þe atire þat one hym stode:
 335 Horse & schelde, borthe armours & man
 þat no man myghte hym knawe þan.
 And appon his creste a reede hownde,
 The taile trekillede appon þe grownde.
 And that was in signyficacyoun
 340 The heythyn men to bryng adownn,
 And þam to slaa for Goddis luffe,
 And þe Cristyn men to brynge abouffe.
 Than still he houede & habade thare,
 Bot to hym wolde þay ryde noo mare.
 345 He rode þe rawnge ofte alle abowte,

armour covering his neck / frontal bone

waited / stayed

If / against

trumpets / blow

jousted stoutly / at that time

fearless & good

on / as red as blood

such

lance / strong

heavy / very long

dared / face

loud / blew

through that knew / every

knight-errant was about to / again

were there

aware

seized /right there

encountered / field

[He] struck away half of his shield

plate protecting the armpit flew off

also [part of] /shoulder bone

mail and plate covering his neck

regretted / came

waited / jousting area

while / rest

other / squire

toward him

f.127ra

therefore

wood

another disguise / dressed

both

recognise him then

red hound

hung

meaning

heathen

slay [the heathen] / love

to elevate

Then / waited / stayed

the field marked out for the jousting

	And byhelde þam faste within & withowte.	<i>intently</i>
	And a barownn he sees there houe hym bisyde,	<i>baron / beside</i>
	And to hym he thoghte full euen for to ryde.	<i>thought</i>
	And forthe he drewe a mace of stele,	
350	And a strake he thoghte to sett reghte wele	<i>strike</i>
	Appon his helme, þat was so stronge,	<i>helmet</i>
	þat thourghe þat dynt þe fire owte spronge.	<i>through / blow / sprang</i>
	And þe baroun tornede hym one syde,	<i>turned</i>
	'Goo foole!' he seyde, 'and forthe þou ryde,	<i>ride off</i>
355	And with thi peris go chese the at playe!	<i>go and tourney with your equals</i>
	Come no more, I pray þe, here awaye,	
	And sekerly, giffe þat thou doo,	<i>if</i>
	The tidys a knoke or ells twoo.'	<i>You will receive a blow or two</i>
	þe kyng wonndirde in his thoghte,	<i>wondered</i>
360	þat his stroke ne deryde hym noghte.	<i>hurt / not</i>
	And commes agayne by anoþer waye,	
	And thoghte to make hym a bettire paye.	<i>better</i>
	And in his sterappis vp heghe he stode,	<i>stirrups / high</i>
	And smote to hym with egre mode	<i>hit / impetuously</i>
365	Euen abownn appon his iren hatte.	<i>iron hat [i.e. helmet]</i>
	Bot þe toþer full still in his sadill satt,	<i>other</i>
	And hastily withowtten taryinge mare	<i>without delaying</i>
	His masse he hent in hande reghte thare,	<i>mace / seized</i>
	þat was wele made of ʒottyn bras,	<i>cast copper</i>
370	And hade grete wondir what deuyll he was,	<i>devil</i>
	þat slike a strake vnto hym lent,	<i>such a blow / dealt</i>
	For þerwith his feete owte of þe sterappes went.	<i>At that / stirrups</i>
	And bothe thorghe plate & thorghe actoun,	<i>[pierced] through / arming coat</i>
	Noghte lettyng neþer hawberke ne hawbergoun.	<i>neither long nor short mail shirt</i>
375	For slike a strake had he neuer are,	<i>before</i>
	Neuer nane þat noyede halfe so sare.	<i>No one had ever harmed him half as sorely</i>
	Bot full swithe away þan gan he ryde,	<i>fast / rode</i>
	Owte of þe presse faste þer besyde.	<i>crowd</i>
	The kyng saide than reghte hastily thare:	
380	'Of slike strakes kepe I no mare.'	<i>I will not take such blows any more</i>
	He went anone vnto a welle,	<i>at once</i>
	And of his helme he dranke his fille,	<i>out of his helmet / in abundance</i>
	And watrede his stede righte ther also.	<i>watered</i>
	And in the thride atire he dide hym do,	<i>third disguise</i>
385	Alle þat atyre was white als mylke,	
	His trappours weren alle of tuly silke.	<i>trappings / red silk</i>
	And appon his schelde a crosse of rede,	
	þat bytakyned þat for Goddis dede,	<i>symbolized / death</i>
	With his enymys wolde he fighte,	
390	To wynne the crosse gif þat he myght.	<i>[true] cross</i>
	And appon the crosse a dofe white,	<i>dove</i>
	A signyficacyoun of þe Saynt Espiryte,	<i>Holy Spirit</i>
	To be bolde to wyn the pris	<i>prize</i>
	For to distroye Goddis enemys.	

- 395 **K**yng Richerde *in* thies armours gan hym dight *these / dressed*
 Vntill anoþer, a full noble knyght,
 Sir Fuke Doly was his name –
 Þe kyng hym luffed for his gudly fame –
 And to hym a strake now hase he tighte, *strike / set*
- 400 Wele to sett it at alle his myghte.
 He smate appon his bacenett, *struck / basinet [i.e. small helmet]*
 A grete strake, *withowtten* lett, *without delay*
 Þat it foundred to cheke bane. *sank in*
 Sir Fuk bade hym hys way gane, *to go*
- 405 Þat he no langare thare habyde:
 ‘For that þat may to the betyde!’ *that which / happen to you*
 The kyng sees he felis noghte sore, *feels* f.127va
 And he thoghte to greue hym more. *hurt*
 And by hym he come anoþer brayde; *blow*
- 410 His mace appon his helme he laide,
 And with gud will þat strake he sett.
 The erle thoghte he wolde hym lett *stop him*
 With his mace þat was of stele,
 Reghte there he gaffe þe kyng his dale, *portion*
- 415 Þat his noble helme al torofe, *tore to pieces*
 And he righte ouer his sadill drofe. *drove*
 And his sterappes there he forbare, *stirrups / lost*
 Slike a strake had he neuer are. *before*
 He was so stonayed of þat dynt, *stunned*
- 420 Þat he had nerehande his lyfe tynt, *almost / lost*
 For þe strake þat hym was raughte, *dealt*
 He wiste noghte whedir it was day or naghte. *did not know / whether / night*
 Bot when he recouered of þat suoghe, *swoon*
 Vnto his palays he hym droughe, *palace / withdrew*
- 425 And did comande righte hastily,
 Harawdes of armys to make a cry: *Heralds / arms*
 Euerilkman for to wende *go*
 Home till his awnn frende. *to / own friends*
- 430 The kyng anone a messangere gent,
 Full preualy than furthe he sent *at once / gentle*
 To *Sir* Thomas of Multon, *secretly / forth*
 Þat was so noble a baroun,
 And to *Sir* Fuk Doly,
- 435 Þat þey solde come to hym in hy,
 And þat þay duelle in no manere, *should / in haste*
 ‘Vntill þat þay be bothe here.’ *they [should] not delay*
 The messangere his way is went, *gone*
 And tolde þat þe kyng aftir þam sent *them*
- 440 Swithe for to come hym too, *At once / to him*
Withowtten delaye þat it were doo. *should be done*
 Thies barouns heyed and weren full blithe, *These / hurried / were glad*
 And to þe kyng þay come full swithe,
 And some full hendly þay hym grett. *very courteously / greeted*

	pe kyng þam by hymselfen gart sett,	<i>made them sit beside him</i>	
445	And said to þam with wordes fre: 'Welcome, sirris, are zee now to me!'	<i>noble</i>	
	And in aythere hande he toke ane	<i>sirs</i>	
	Into a chambir þan are þay gane.	<i>either / one</i>	
	Quod Kyng Richerd: 'Lefe frendis twaye,	<i>went</i>	
450	Tellis me þe sothe nowe, I 3ow praye,	<i>Said / Dear / both</i>	
	Of thies justinges, now paramours,	<i>Tell / truth</i>	
	Whatte knyghte he was þat rade þe beste course?	<i>if you please</i>	f.127vb
	And who couthe there beste his crafte,	<i>made the best charge</i>	
	For to demene wele a schafte	<i>was most skilful</i>	
455	With dynttis for to felle his fose?	<i>use</i>	
	And whilke of theym wanne þe beste lose?	<i>foes</i>	
	And whilke þe gretteste tymbir brake?'	<i>which / won</i>	
	Quod Multoun: 'One in atire blake	<i>broke the biggest spear</i>	
	Come prekande ouer a falowe felde,	<i>black attire</i>	
460	Alle þat þer was hym byhelde	<i>Came spurring on across ploughed land</i>	
	How þat he rade als he ware wode.	<i>rode / were mad</i>	
	One rowme he houede and still he stode,	<i>A while / waited / stood</i>	
	And one his creste was a rauen s[w]arte,	<i>on / [there] was a black raven</i>	
	In takynynghe he helde one nowthir part.	<i>A sign that / with neither party</i>	
465	A schafte he bare was stiffe & strange;	<i>lance / wielded [that] / strong</i>	
	Fourtene fote fully was it lange,	<i>long</i>	
	And twentty ynche it was abowte.	<i>in circumference</i>	
	He askede þan att alle the rowte,	<i>assembly</i>	
	3if any man durste come & profe	<i>If / dared / challenge</i>	
470	A course, for his leman lufe,	<i>passage at arms / lover's love</i>	
	With a knyghte awnterous there.	<i>Against a knight-errant</i>	
	And thane a 3onge knyghte, a stronge bachelere,	<i>then / young</i>	
	Anone hent a schafte & stede bystrade,	<i>seized / mounted</i>	
	And to þe knyghte awnterous anone he rade.		
475	And þe awnterous knyghte <i>with</i> hym þere mett,		
	And swilke a stroke one his schelde þer he sett	<i>such / shield</i>	
	þat horse and man & alle ouer he threwe;		
	Bot þere was no man þat hym knewe.		
	Tromppes 3ode and harawdes cryede,	<i>Trumpeters proceeded / heralds</i>	
480	And alle the toper full sore þam drede	<i>others were sorely afraid</i>	
	To ryde to hym ofte with launce,		
	Lesse þam betide swilke a chaunce.	<i>Lest befall them such a fate</i>	
	Bot then an hardy knyghte, stowte & sauage,	<i>strong in battle, bold & fierce</i>	
	Hent a schafte <i>with</i> grete rage,		
485	Saide: "Now he hase one of ours felde,	<i>felled</i>	
	Byfor alle mens sighte now <i>in</i> þis felde.	<i>field</i>	
	Sen he hase done vs this dispyte,	<i>Since / insult</i>	
	And agayne torne & passe alle qwyte,	<i>turned / completely</i>	
	þat he ne hafe firste a knoke!"		f. 128ra
490	He prikked owte fro alle the floke,	<i>from the group</i>	
	With a lange schafte, stowte and hye,		
	And emyddes the course mett he and he.	<i>in the middle of the charge</i>	
	The awnnterous knyghte smote þe scheld amyde,	<i>in the middle of the shield</i>	

- A wounder case ther oure knyghte bityde. *incident / happened*
 495 The awnterous knyght felde hym þer, all with ire, *felled*
 Downn of his stede & brake his swyre. *broke / neck*
 The third knyghte þan to speke biganne, *speak*
 Said: "This is a deuyll & no man
 þat thus oure folke fellys this tyde. *vanquishes / now*
 500 Bot tyd me lyfe tyde me dede, to hym schal I ryde, *whether I live or I die*
 And I schall ones mete hym ȝif þat I may."
 The awnterous þan with grete deraye, *disorder*
 So harde vnto oure knyghte he drafe *drove*
 That his schelde in two peces rafe. *tore*
 505 The schelde with his schafte he brake,
 And there he felle ouer his horse bake *back*
 þat he felle downn & brake his arme;
 Bot he ne dide hym no mare harme.
 Þe awnnterous knyghte þan rode agayne,
 510 And houed still, þe sothe to sayne, *waited / to tell the truth*
 To assaye giff any dorste juste with hym anymore. *if / dared*
 Bot of hym þay were þan adred so sore, *sorely afraid*
 þat no man dorste juste with hym efte *again*
 For drede þat he hade hym his lyfe refte. *might rob him of his life*
 515 And when þat he sawe there com na mo, *no more*
 He rade agayne there he come fro.' *back to where he came from*
- ‘**A**nd aftir that anoþer come,
 Þe folkes of hym gude kepe nome. *paid close attention to him*
 His horse and his atire was rede –
 520 Hym semyd wele to bene a quede – *seemed to be / devil*
 A rede hownde one his helme abownn. *above*
 He come to seke & for to prouen
 Gif any juste with hym dare, *If*
 Bot noghte one þer wolde, whils he was þer,
 525 To hym with schafte make ones a blenke. *once / pass*
 And he rode riȝte sone forby alle þe renke, *right / all the jousting area*
 The deuyll hym hange whereuer he be!
 I ne wote what deuyll hym ayled at me. *I do not know what the devil he has against me*
 His schafte to a sqwyere he bitoke, *handed over*
 530 And bihelde me with grymly looke.
 And smate me so with his mace
 þat, ne had it bene thurgh Jhesu Cristes grace,
 Mi swire bane hade bene broken in twaye. *neckbone / in two*
 Bot I bad hym ride forthe one his waye,
 535 And dele with foles, als hymselfe was. *fools*
 Bot agayne he come bi anoþer pase, *he took another run at me*
 And gafe me ane was werse þan þat, *gave me one [that]*
 And ȝitt still in my sadill I satt. *yet / saddle*
 Bot þan said many a modere sone: *mother*
 540 "Allas! Sir Thomas of Multoun,
 þat he es smyttyn with vnskil!" *hit wrongly*
 Mi mace I hent þan with gud will *seized*

	Smate hym þat alle þe folke it sees, Downn of his horse almoste one knees.	<i>[And] struck him so that</i>	
545	And when I hym had a stroke ysett, And zitt I wolde hafe blissede hym bett, No moo strokes he wolde habide; Away full swythe þan gan he ryde.'	<i>gladly struck him again face at once</i>	
550	When Multoun had þis tale ytolde, Sir Fuke Doly, a barown full bolde, Saide þan vnto Kyng Richerde: 'The thirde come aftirwarde, In atire als white als snawe, Ful many a man þere hym sawe.	<i>snow</i>	
555	And in his schelde a cros rede als blode, A white dofe appon his helme þer stode. He houed & byhelde vs zerne, Zif there were any knyghte so steryn, So hardy & so stronge of bonys,	<i>dove / stood waited / eagerly strong bones</i>	
560	þat dorste come & juste <i>with hym</i> ones. Bot there was none so stowte ne gryme, þat a course dorste juste <i>with hym</i> . þan downn bi þe raunge he gase ful faste, And to me he come at þe laste,	<i>once a charge Then / jousting field / went came to me</i>	
565	Forsothe, <i>Sir Kyng,</i> ' quod <i>Sir Fuk</i> . 'I wen þat that knyghte was a puk. And with his mace appon my bacenett <i>With</i> his ri3the hande a dynt he sett <i>With</i> writh strange & egre mayn,	<i>believe / devil [i.e. small helmet] right hand / blow Angrily & with the utmost force</i>	
570	þat nere alle stonayde was my brayne. I spake to hym wordes fewe: "Ryd forthe," quod I, "þou wode schrewe, And playe <i>with hym</i> þat is thi pere! For come þou efte one this manere, For to be wyse I schall the teche!"	<i>stunned spoke Ride / mad rascal equal again</i>	
575	Bot efte he gan mare conteke seche, And a werse stroke he gaffe me zitt. And than with my mace I hym grett, That bothe his sterapys he forlese;	<i>teach you</i>	f.128va
580	And stonayde he rade owte of þe prese, Agayne vndir the wodde-boughe.' King Richerde satt righte still & loughe, And seyde: 'Frendis, nowe sekirly, Takes noghte to grefe, I prey, for that was I!	<i>lost away from the crowd forest canopy laughed</i>	
585	When ze were gadirde alle in fere, As awnnterous I come one þis manere; Who was strongeste for to assaye, And also who that couthe beste strokes paye. And, lordynges, whethir ze ne wote noghte,	<i>Do not take offence at it gathered together came to test could deal the best blows did not know</i>	
590	What I hafe ordeyned in my thoghte For certeyne the Holy Londe to wende vnto; We thre allone, withowtten moo.	<i>decided to go to no one else</i>	

	And alle salle we be clede in palmers gyse, The Holy Londe alle for to devyse.	<i>shall / clad / the guise of pilgrims spy out</i>	
595	And to me I will that 3e be sworne: No man to wiete now þat is borne, Nowthir for wele ne 3ete for woo, Till that we bene comen and goo.’ þay graunt hym alle his askyng,	<i>you [That] no man knows [of this] For no reason we have gone and come back granted / request</i>	
600	Withowtten any more gayne seying: With hym to lyfe and for to dy, Noghte lettynge nowthir for lawe ne for hy. And appon þe boke þay leyde theire honde, So that forwarde feythfully for to stonde.	<i>Without any disagreement live / die high nor low [i.e. for anything] Bible / hands [to swear an oath] to observe the terms of the vow</i>	
605	And kissed togedirs þan alle three, Trewe sworne brethire for to bee. Than trompes blewe & madyn cry, To þe mete than went þay hastily.	<i>kissed one another True / brothers made a call meal</i>	
610	Bot or the twentty dayes ende, Weren þay redy for to wende, With pyke, scrippe, & also <i>with</i> slawyne, Als palmers gose in paynym, And forthe þay gone, in Goddis name, To seke ferlys wel fere fro hame.	<i>before to go staff / satchel / cloak As pilgrims go to heathen lands seek adventures / far from home</i>	
615	N ow hafe þay dighte þam full 3are, Thies thre knyghttis forthe to fare. þay sett vp the saile, þe wynde was gude, And sayled þam ouer the salt flode Into Flawndirs, als I 3ow saye.	<i>made themselves ready</i>	f.128vb
620	Bot þan Kyng Richerde & his felaws twey, Forthe þay went þan <i>with</i> full glade chere Thorowe many landis, bothe ferre & nere Till þay come at Braundys, That is a coste of full noble prys.	<i>sea Flanders And / two fellows Through / far & near Brindisi shore / fame</i>	
625	A noble schipe þan fonde þay thare, That into Cypres was redy to fare. The saile was raisede of that schip strange, And in þe see they were full lange. And at þe laste, I vndirstande,	<i>found Cyprus strong for a long time</i>	
630	At Famagoste þay come to lande. And thare þay duellyde wel a fourty dayes, For to leren the landys layes. And sythen dide þay þam vnto þe see, Euen vnto Acres, that riche cite,	<i>Famagusta stayed learn / laws of that land then / travelled Acre</i>	
635	And so forthe þay wente vnto Macedoyne, And also to þe cite of Babyloyne. And fro thethyn vnto þe cite of Cesare, Of Nynyve than were þay ware, And so to þe cite of Jerusalem,	<i>Macedonia Babylon [i.e. Cairo] that place / Caesarea Niniveh / had knowledge</i>	
640	And also to þe cite of Bedlem, And also þay went to 3ebedy,	<i>Bethlehem ?Ibelin</i>	

- And to þe cite of Sudayn Turry, ?Tyre
 And to þe Castelle Orgoylyus,
 And to þe Cite of Appayrynous. ?Pireus
 645 To Jaffeth and also to Saffrane, Jaffa / Safita
 To Taboreth & also to Archane. ?Tiberias
 And thus þay asspyede þe Holy Londe, spied
 How þat þay myghte wynn it into þaire hande. [To know] how they might win it
 And sythen homwarde þay gan þam dighte; then homeward / made themselves ready
 650 Till Ynglande warde *with alle* þaire myghte.
 And when þay had passede þe Grekkis See, Mediterranean Sea
 To Almayne thies palmers three Germany
 There byhouede þam ete or þay mughte goo. [they] needed to eat before / might go f. 129ra
 That tornede them to mekill woo. resulted in much woe
 655 And I schall telle 3ow in whate manere,
 Lystenys nowe and 3e may here!
 A gose þay dighte to þaire dynere goose / dinner
 In a tauerne there als þay were.
 And Kyng Richerd there þe fire dide bete, kindled
 660 And Thomas of Multon to þe spete hym sett, spit
 And Fuke Doly, he temprede the wose; prepared / broth
 Bot full dere boughte those thre þat gose. paid a very high price for
 For when þay had therof wele etyn, had eaten
 A mynstralle come righte than in minstrel
 665 And seyde: ‘Gud men, dose gladely, wittirly,
 Wil 3e hafe any mynstralsie?’ truly
 Kyng Richerd seide: ‘We will ryse & goo’.
 That worde tornede þam sythen to mekill woo. caused then much sorrow
 The mynstralle thoghte to þam in mynde:
 670 ‘Forsothe 3ee bene men righte vnkynde,
 And giff I may 3e schall forthynke, you have been
 3e bed me nowthir mete nor drynke; regret
 For gentill men solde redily bede offer / neither food
 To glewemen that abowte 3ede, should / offer
 675 Off þaire mete, bothe wyne & ale, minstrels / travel
 For gude lose aryses of many mynstralle.’ their provisions
 He was ane Ynglys man & wele þam knewe, good reputation
 By speche & sighte, bothe of hide & hewe. an Englishman
 And forthe he went hym in þat tyde entirely
 680 Till a castell was there besyde, time
 And tolde þe kyng righte at þe none at once
 þat thre men weren in his cite ycomen; had come to
 Starke men bothe bolde and fere, Strong / fierce
 That in the worlde were noghte þaire pere. peer
 685 ‘Kyng Richerde of Yngland is one of þaa men,
 And *Sir* Fuk Doly is anoþer then, those
 The thirde highte *Sir* Thomas of Multon, is called
 Ful noble men and of full grete renownn.
 In palmers gyse þay bene dighte, pilgrim's guise / are dressed
 690 þat na manne sall þam knawe by sighte.’ no one shall recognise them
 The kyng said to hym, ywisse, certainly

	'That þou hase tolde, giffe sothe it is, þan sall þou hafe thi warysoun, þou sall chese thiselfe a riche townn.'	<i>if it is true your reward choose</i>	
695	Bot than þe kyng comaunde his knyghtis To arme þam alle wele at alle rightis: 'And gose & takese þam alle thre, And bringis þam hedire bifore mee.'	<i>in the best manner go / take here together</i>	f. 129rb
700	Thane went thies knyghtis forthe in fere, And toke thies palmers at þaire dynere, And broughte þam swithe bifore þe kyng That said to þam in his askyng:	<i>swiftly</i>	
	'Palmers,' he seid, 'whethyn bene 3ee?' 'Of Ynglande,' þai seid, 'Sir, forsothe bene wee.'	<i>whence are you? we are</i>	
705	'What highte thou, felaw?' quod he to the kyng, 'Richerde,' he seide, 'withowten lesyng.' 'And what highte thou, Sir, þou eldare man?' 'Fuk Doly, Sir,' he seid righte than.	<i>What is your name, fellow? truly older man</i>	
	'And what highte thou,' he said, 'þou Sir grey hare?'	<i>grey hair</i>	
710	'Thomas of Multon,' he said righte thare. The kyng þam askede þan alle three, 'Saise me, in my landes whate seke 3ee? I say 3ow certainly, withowtten lyes, 3ow semys wele to bene some spyes.	<i>there</i>	
		<i>Tell me / do you seek?</i>	
715	Alle my landis bothe burghe & townn 3ee thynke to do me some tresoun, Bot for als mekill als þou, Sir Kyng, And thies barouns, withowte lesyng, Ne semys noghte to bene thusgates dighte.	<i>You seem to be village treason And / as much as you</i>	
		<i>Do not seem to be dressed [like pilgrims]</i>	
720	Therefore, by lawe & thorow righte, 3e schall alle bene put in my presoun, For 3e thynke to do me some tresoun.'		
	Kyng Richerd ansuerde þan, <i>with</i> hert full fre 'Sir, þan dose þou vs no righte, als thynke mee,	<i>noble heart you do not treat us fairly</i>	
725	Any palmers þat gose bi the waye, þam to presone, by nyghte or by daye. Sir Kyng, for thi curtasye, Ne do vs palmers no velany.	<i>go</i>	
		<i>Do not do us / any villainy the love of whom we have sought</i>	
730	And for his lufe, þat we hafe soghte, Late vs goo and dere vs noghte. For awnnters also þat may þerfore betide, In vnkouthe londis where þou may ryde.'	<i>Let / do not grieve us fate / happen unknown</i>	
	Bot the kyng comande þan anone, That into his presoun þay scholde be done.	<i>at once should</i>	f.129va
735	And than the portere, I vndirstande, Takis Kyng Richerde bi the hande, And also alle his fellowes hym with. For langare there had þay no grithe, Vntil the toþer daye at pryme,	<i>peace at dawn</i>	
740	þe kyngis sone come thedir in ill tyme; Sir Ardryn, was hatten his name,	<i>called</i>	

- He was a man there of full grete fame,
 He was a stronge knyghte & a fere; *fierce*
 In alle that lande was noghte his pere.
- 745 'Portere,' he seyde, 'I comande the, *order you*
 Thies presoners that þou late me see.' *let*
 The portere seyde: 'Sir, at 3oure will,
 Arely, late, bothe lowde and still.' *Early*
- 750 He broughte þam forthe þan all thre,
 Kyng Richerd, forthirmaste come he *first*
 Ardryn, than, spake to hym anone,
 Seyd: 'Arte thou Kyng Richerde, þat noble man,
 Als men says of the in ilke a lande?
 Dare thou stande a bofete of my hande, *blow / fist*
 755 And to morne I sall giff the lefe *give you leave*
 Swilke anoper me to gyffe?' *give*
 And thane, als tite Kyng Richerde *immediately*
 Grawnte to hym sone þat ilke forwarde. *the same agreement*
- 760 The kyng sone was full ferse and stowte,
 And gaffe Kyng Richerde an ere clowte *gave / box on the ear*
 þat the fire owte of his eghne sprange. *eyes*
 Kyng Richerde thoghte þat he did hym wrange, *wrong*
 And sware his athe, bi Saynt Martyne: *swore / oath*
 'To morne þan schall I paye myn.' *tomorrow / mine*
- 765 The kyng sone bad thane, *with* full gud will, *bade / good*
 That of gude metis & drynkes þay scholde hafe þaire fill. *food*
 Both of sothen & of roste mete, *boiled*
 Of þe beste þat þay wolde ete, *wish to eat*
 And hafe beddis in for to reste,
- 770 To qwite his dett that he be preste
 þat he to na man hym noghte qwitte *pay / debt / he [i.e. KR] / ready*
 For febilnesse that dynt to smytte. *So that he is not unable to pay back*
 The kyng sone did full wele cortaisely, *courteously*
 þat nyghte he made þam full wele at ly. *put them fully at their ease*
- 775 And sone at morne, at þe pryme of þe day, *soon / morning*
 Kyng Richerde rasse, als I 3ow say, *rose* f.129vb
 And wele sone aftir he hym dighte,
 The sone schane bothe clere and brighte. *sun was shining*
 He went anone thane, bi my swire, *soon then, by my neck*
- 780 And waxid his handis agayne þe fire
 A straa brede thikke & somedelle mare; *rubbed his hands with wax against the fire*
 For he thoghte to smyte sare. *straw's breadth [of wax] / somewhat more*
 Wele alle his hand thus hase he dighte,
 To make the paye than hase he highte. *strike so as to cause great pain*
 The kyng sone come full sone by thane, *[KR] looked forward to paying him back*
 785 To holde forwarde, als a trewe mane. *king's son*
 And bifore Kyng Richerde he stode,
 And spake to hym with ire & mode: *fiercely*
 'Smytte one!' he saide, 'with alle thi strengthe & myghte.
- 790 Euen als þou arte a stalworthe knyghte, *hardy*
 Giff þat I owthir stoupe or helde, *If / bend / fall*

- Kepe I neuer to bere no schelde!
 Kyng Richerd þan vndir his cheke his hande he layde.¹
 He that it sawe the sothe he sayde,
 795 That þe flesche & þe skynne awaye he droughe, *tore away skin and flesh*
 And he felle douwne in a dede swoughe; *dead*
 In two he strake his cheke bane, *[Richard] broke [Ardryn's] cheek-bone in two*
 That he felle doune dede, als any stane. *stone*
 A knyghte stirtt thane to þe kyng, *hastened*
 800 And tolde hym alle þat tythyng, *news*
 How that þe Kyng Richerd his sone hade slayne.
 'Allas!', he saide, 'nowe hafe I nane!' *I have no [son]*
 And with þat worde, he felle to grounde,
 Als a man þat was in woo ybounde. *overcome by sorrow*
 805 He swouned for sorowe at þaire fete, *swooned / feet*
 Thane knyghtis toke hym vppe full skete, *quickly*
 And seid hym: 'Sir, dismaye 3ow noghte,
 Now it es done, it helpis righte noghte.'
 The kyng than spake to hym in hy, *at once*
 810 To that knyghte that stode hym by:
 'Do telle me swithe now of this case, *event*
 In whate manere þat he dede was?' *killed*
 Ful still þan stode euerilkaman, *everyone*
 For sorowe myghte hym telle neuer ane. *one*
 815 Bot with þat noyse þan come the qwene,
 'Whate,' sche seyde, 'may alle this bymene?' *mean*
 What es this sorowe and this fare,
 Whaa hase broghte 3ow alle in care?' *Who / sorrow*
 'Whate dame,' seyde þe kyng, 'ne wate þou noghte *do you not know*
 820 That thi sone es to dede broghte. *has been killed*
 Now sen that I was borne to man,
 Slike sorow ne hade I neuer nane; *since*
 Alle my joye nowe es tornede to woo, *such / none*
 For sorowe I will myselven sloo.' *slay*
 825 Bot when þe qwene that vndirstode,
 For sorowe wele nere than wexe scho wode, *almost / became mad*
 Hir kerchofes scho drewe, hir hare also, *veils / tore / hair*
 'Allas!' scho seide, 'what schall I doo?'
 Scho skrattede hir sore in the vesage – *scratched herself / face*
 830 Als woman þat was alle in a rage – *in a fit of madness*
 That hir face fomedede alle one blode. *all covered in*
 Scho rent the robe þat scho in stode: *tore / was wearing*
 'Allas!' scho seide, 'that I was borne!
 Howe was my dere sone forlorne?' *killed*
 835 The kyng seid, als I telle the,
 'þe knyghte þat here standis tolde it to me.
 Þou telle þe sothe,' quod þe kyng to hym than,
 'In whate manere this dede bigan.
 And bot thou the sothe to me now saye, *unless*

f. 130ra

¹ KR laid his hand under his [i.e. Ardryn's] cheek.

- 840 Ane euyll dede ells schall þou dye.' *cruel death*
 Bot than þe knyghte called to þe jaelere, *jailer*
 And bade þat he scholde stonde hym nere, *stand*
 To bere witnessse of þat ilke sawe: *account*
 In whate manere þe kyng sone was yslawe.
- 845 The jaelere seid: 'ʒistirdaye, at pryme, *early in the morning*
 ʒoure sone come in ane euyll tyme *unfortunately*
 Vnto the presonne dore to mee, *prison door*
 And the palmers nedlynges wolde he see. *wished*
 And I fotchede theym forthe onane, *fetched / soon*
- 850 Kyng Richerde þe forthirmaste gan gane. *first / went*
 And Ardren askede hym, *withowtten* lett,
 Giff þat he dorste stande hym a bofett, *blow [of his fist]*
 And he wolde anoper of hym stonde,
 Als he was trewe knyghte in londe.
- 855 And than Kyng Richerd seid: "Sir, bi þis lighte,
 Smyte one hardely and do thi myghte."
 Than Ardren so sore Kyng Richerd smate, *f.130rb*
 þat wele nere tope ouer taile he rade. *head over heels / flew*
 Than seide Ardren: "Nowe bid I the, *I bid you*
 To morne anoþir þat þou gyffe me." *Tomorrow*
- 860 þan þay depertide appon this wiese, *parted / manner*
 And one þe morne gane Kyng Richerd aryse,
 And ʒoure sone anone he came.
 And Kyng Richerd agaynes hym name, *towards / went*
- 865 Als couaunde was betwene þam tweye. *agreement / two*
 Kyng Richerde hym smate, þe sothe to saye, *hit him*
 Righte anone intwo his cheke bone,
 þat he felle doun dede, als any stone.
 Mi lorde, als I am sworne vnto ʒow here,
- 870 Righte thus it was, & one þis same manere.'
 Bot then þe kyng seid *with* full egre will:
 'In presonne now sall he duell full still,
 And grete fetirs one hym loke þou do feste,
 For swilke dedis þat are vn[w]reste.'
- 875 The portere ʒode than, als he was sent,
 To do his lordis comandement.
 That ilke daye ete þay no mare mete, *they ate no food*
 Ne no drynke þat þay myghte gete.
 The kynges doughetir laye in hir towre, *was / her tower*
- 880 And *with* hir maydynes þat weren of honoure;
 Margery, hir name was highte, *called*
 Scho luffed Kyng Richerde *with* all hir myghte. *She loved*
 And at þe middaye, bifore the none, *noon*
 To the presone went scho full sone, *soon*
- 885 And *with* hir, scho toke maydynes thre.
 'Jaelere,' scho seid, 'þou late me see *Jailer / let*
 Thi presoners now, hastily.'
 'Ful blethily,' he seid, 'myn ownn lady.'
 He broghte þam forthe anone ryghte. *willingly*

- 890 Faire gret Kyng Richerd þat lady brighte,
 And seid to hir *with* hert full fre, *noble heart*
 ‘What is thi will, lady, with me?’
 Bot when scho hym sawe *with* hir eghne two, *eyes*
 Hir luffe scho keste appon hym soo. *cast*
- 895 And said: ‘Kyng Richerd, saffe God aboffe,
 Off alle thyng e rthely, moste I the loue.’ *except for*
 ‘Allas!’ he seid thane in that stounde, *on Earth / I love you most* f.130va
 ‘With wrange nowe am I broughte to grounde. *at that moment*
 Lefe, Damesell, whate myghte my lufe do the? *Wrongly / have been overpowered*
 Ame I noghte a presonere, als thou may see? *to you*
 And this nowe es þe toþer daye agone *Am I not*
 That mete ne drynke ne hade I none.’ *the second day*
 The mayden therof hade grete pite, *neither food*
 ‘Now, certis,’ scho seide, ‘it schall amendide be.’ *pity*
amended
- 905 And than scho comande the jaelere
 Mete and drynke to feche hym here.
 ‘And thies iryngns fro hym þou take, *shackles*
 I comande the nowe, for my seke. *sake*
 And aftir sepere, in the euenyng, *supper*
- 910 Vnto my chambire luke þou hym brynge,
 In the atire of a sqwyere. *disguised as a squire*
 Miselfe, I schall kepe 3ow righte there;
 Bi Jhesu Criste and Seynte Semyoun, *Simeon*
 Thou schalte hafe full wele thy warysoun!’ *reward*
- 915 And at þe euynn, the jaelere ne forgat noghte,
 Vntill hir chambre he hym broghte. *evening / did not forget*
 And *with* that mayden ther duelte he still, *stayed*
 To pley *with* hir righte alle his full will.
- 920 Than was he aspyede at þe laste of a knyghte,
 þat to hir chambir he come one nyghte;
 And preualy he tolde the kyng,
 That forlayne was his doghetir 3yng. *seduced / young*
 þe kyng than askede hym full sone,
 Wha hase þat ilke dede swagates done. *Who has / that deed / thus*
- 925 ‘Kyng Richerde,’ he seid, ‘3oure treytoure,
 He hase done 3ow this dishonoure.’ *traitor*
 ‘Sir,’ he seide, ‘be my Cristyndome,
 I sawe when that he 3ode and come.’ *by my faith*
 The kyng in hert þan sighede sare, *went [in] / came [out]*
sorely
- 930 Bot to hym ne wolde he speke no mare.
 Bot swiftly þan, *withowt* tyn faile,
 He sent aftire alle his consaile: *councillors*
 Erelis and barouns, and full wyese clerkes, *Earls / wise*
 For to telle hym their avise of thies werkes. *advice*
- 935 And swythe his messangers forthe are gane, *gone*
 And comen are his consellers euerilke ane. *everyone*
 Bi that it was þe aughtyn daye, *eighth* f.130vb
 þay were comyn, als I 3ow saye.
 And alle at anes þay grett þe kyng, *at once*

- 940 Þe sothe to saye, *withowttyn* lesyng.
 ‘Lordinges,’ he seid, ‘welcome are 3e alle!’
 And ledd theym forthe vnto ane haulle. *a hall*
 Emanges theym, þan, þe kyng hym sett, *among*
 And seid: ‘I sall 3ow telle, *withowtten* lett, *without delay*
- 945 Whi þat I hafe aftir 3ow alle now sent:
 To giffe a treytoure his juggement,
 þat hase me done full grete tresoun; *treason*
 Kyng Richerd, þat es in my presoun.’ *prison*
 And alle he telde þam þan full sone, *told them soon*
 950 How he hade slayne his dere sone, *dear son*
 And his doghetir also forlayne. *seduced*
 ‘I wolde full fayne that he were slayne!
 Bot now þan es it ordeyned soo:
 Men schall no kyng to þe dede do.’ *Men shall not kill a king*
- 955 Than to þe kyng spekes a bolde baroun:
 ‘How come Kyng Richerd in 3our presoun?
 He es holden soo noble a kyng, *regarded as*
 To hym dare no man do no thyng.’ *no one dares to harm him*
 Þe kyng þam tolde þan alle in whate wiese *manner*
- 960 How he hym fand in disagyse. *found him / disguise*
 And *with* hym othire twa barouns,
 Ful noble men & of full grete renownns.
 ‘I toke þam,’ he seid, ‘for sussespeccoun,
 In this manere to my presoun.’ *under suspicion*
- 965 He toke leue þan at þam euerilkone,
 And into a chambre he bade þam gone. *bade them go*
 For to comon ther, in theirre consaile, *discuss*
 Whatte in this case myghte moste availe. *circumstance / help*
 In thaire comonyng, than, þay duelled thare, *conferring*
- 970 Twa dayes or thre and somdele mare.
 And stryuen faste, als þay were wode,
With grete erreure and egere mode. *somewhat more*
 Some wolde sayne hafe hade hym ofdawe, *quarrelled / mad*
 And some seide it was agaynes þe lawe. *wrongly and angrily*
 975 And one this manere, in theirre comonyng,
 þay myghte noghte accorde for nonekyns thyng. *suggested to have his flesh stripped off*
 The wyseste seid than: ‘Verrament, *against the law*
 We ne kane giffe hym noo juggment.’ *discussion*
 And thus þan ansuerde þay þe kyng, *not agree / anything*
Withouttyn any oþer lesyng. *Certainly*
 Bot a knyghte þan spak vnto þe kyng, *cannot pass judgment*
 And seid hym: ‘Sir, grefe the nathyng, *lie*
 For *Sir* Eldrede, forsothe ywisse, *spoke*
 He kan telle the here of whate beste es; *do not grieve yourself*
- 985 For he es a wonder wyse man of rede,
 And many a man hase he demyde to dede.’ *tell you*
 The kyng comande þan, *withowtten* lett, *wise counselor*
 þat he were swythe byfore hym fett; *condemned / death*
 þan was he broghte byfore þe kyng, *swiftly / brought*

f. 131ra

- 990 Pat asked hym sone, *withowtten* lesynge,
 And seid: 'Kane þou me telle, in any manere,
 How one Kyng Richerd þat I vengid were?' Can
take revenge
 And he ansuerde *with* hert full fre,
 And seid 'þerappon, I muste avyse me. Then / think about it
- 995 For 3e wote wele it es no lawe know / not legal
 A kyng to hange nor 3it to drawe. either to hang or to draw
 Bot 3e schall done by my resoune: plan
 Hastyly takes 3our grete lyoune, lion
 And withhaldis hym his mete food
- 1000 Thre dayes þat he noghte ne ete. [For] three
 And than Kyng Richerde in a chambir 3e do, take KR to a cell
 And lates þan þe lyoune wende hym to, let / go
 And in þis manere & he were yslawe. will be slain
 þan dose þou noghte agaynes þe lawe, you do nothing against the law
- 1005 þat þe lyoune hym there schall sla, Because the lion / slay
 And þan art þou wroken one thi faa.' avenged / your enemy
 The mayden asspyede wele þat resoune, overheard
 þat he solde dy thus thurghe false tresoune. die / through treason
 And aftir hym full sone scho sent, she sent for him immediately
- 1010 To warne hym of þis ilke juggement.
 And when he to hir chambir come þan,
 'Welcome,' scho seid, 'my dere lemane! lover
 Mi lorde has ordeynede thurgh false rede, father / advice
 þat þe thride daye hythen þou mon be dede. in three days' time you must be dead
- 1015 And *into* a chambir þou mon ben ydo, be taken
 And þe grete lyoun latyn in the[r] to, put in / too
 þat es enhongrede righte full sore, starved
 þan wote I wele þou leuys no more. know / will live
 Allas, lefe leman!' þan seid sche, dear beloved
- 1020 'Þis nyghte we schall of lande flee, from this land
With golde & siluere & grete tresoure,
 Anoghe to hafe for euermore.'
 'Nay!' quod Kyng Richerde, 'I vndirstande
 þat were agaynes þe lawe of lande
- 1025 I wote, to wende *withowttyn* lefe;
 þe kyng wolde take it gretly to grefe. it is against the custom
to go / without [taking] leave
 And of þe lyoune giffe I righte noghte, would be offended
 Hym for to sla, hafe I na thoghte. I do not care
 And be pryme appon þat same daye, I am not worried about killing him
- 1030 I sall refe hym his herte, als I þe saye.'
 Hir kerchofe he askede, þat was of silke, [i.e. early in the morning]
 þat was als white als mores mylke. tear out / I tell you
 And to þe presoune þay hym brynge, veil
 A littill byfore the euynyng. morning milk
- 1035 And als sone als it to þe tyme come, as soon as
 þe mayden to þe presonne nome, went
 And with hir a full noble knyghte;
 þaire sopere it was full wele ydighte. supper / ready
 Kyng Richerde bad his two feres, bade / companions

- 1040 Come to hym vnto the sopere. *supper*
 ‘And þou, *Sir Portere*, luke þou come also, *look*
 þe lady comandes the to do so.’ *orders you*
 þat nyghte þay were full glade ynoghe, *very happy*
 And euerilke man to his chambir droghe. *withdrew*
- 1045 And Kyng Richerde & þat swete wighte, *creature*
 Togedir þay duellede alle þat nyghte. *stayed together*
 And sone at morne when it was daye,
 Kyng Richerde bad hir go hir waye.
 ‘Nay!’ scho seid, ‘bi God aboune, *above*
- 1050 Here sall I dy righte for thi lufe! *shall / your love*
 And righte nowe here I will habide, *remain*
 Poghe me solde reghte here dede betide. *Though death befall me*
 Now certis hethyn will I noghte wende, *will not go away*
 I will here take þe grace þat God will sende.’
- 1055 Kyng Richerd seid þan: ‘A, lady, late be, *Ah / leave*
 Now certis, bot þou wende swythe fro me, *unless / go quickly*
 I will me grefe swithe sore, *so intently*
 þat I ne schall lufe the no more.’ *love you*
 Bot there agayne scho seide: ‘Naye!
- 1060 My dere leman, now hafe gud daye. *f.131va*
 Now God, þat diede appon a tree, *died / cross*
 Saffe the, giffe that it his will be.’ *Save you, if*
 Hir kerchoffes he toke þan in his hande,
 And alle abowte his arme he theym wande. *wrapped*
- 1065 And thoght, in that same while,
 To sla the lyoun *with* somekyns gile. *some kind of trick*
 And sengly in a surcote he stode, *simply / overgarment*
 To byde the lyoun, ferse and wode. *face*
 And in comes thane the jaelere,
- 1070 And othire two with hym in fere. *together*
 And the lyoun theym amange,
 With pawes þat were bothe scharpe & lange. *claws*
 The chambire dore þay hafe vndo, *unlocked*
 And in the lyoun lete hym to. *let the lion into [his cell]*
- 1075 Kyng Richerd seid: ‘Now, helpe, Lorde Jhesu!’
 The lyoune than makis a venu, *an attack*
 And wolde hafe hym alle torent. *torn apart*
 Besyde Kyng Richerd þan he glent, *dodged*
 And one the breste þe lyoun spornede, *kicked the lion on its breast*
- 1080 þat alle abowte righte there he tournede.
 þe lyoun was full hongrye & megyre, *starved & emaciated*
 He bett his taile for to be egree, *beat / angry*
 Full faste abowte, appon the waves. *because of his pain*
 One brede he sprede alle his brode pawes, *Far and wide*
- 1085 And criede full lowde & gapide wyde. *roared loudly*
 And Kyng Richerde bithoghte hym that tyde *at that time*
 What was beste, and to hym sterte,
 And in at his throte his arme he gate,
 Rente owte his hert *with* his hande, *[KR] put his arm into its throat*
Tore out / heart

- 1090 Lounges & alle that he there fandē. *Lungs*
 The lyoun felle dede downn to þe grounde,
 And Kyng Richerd haues noþer wem ne wounde. *had neither mark nor*
 Bot þan he felle one knes righte in þat place, *And*
 And thanked Jhesu þat of his grace
- 1095 Hym hade so kepide fro schame & harme. *kept [him]*
 He toke þe hert righte euynn alle warme, *still warm*
 And broghte it into the haulle *hall*
 Byfore þe kyng & his barouns alle.
- 1100 The kyng at his mete satt one the desse, *dinner / high table*
 With erles & barouns full prowde in presse. *a noble company*
 þe salte celare appon þe table it stode, *saltcellar*
 Kyng Richerde thraste owte alle þe blode *squeezed / blood*
 And wett þe hert righte in þe salte. *dipped* f.131vb
 And the kyng & his men alle þay behalte *watched [as]*
- 1105 Withowtten brede þe hert he ete. *he ate the heart without bread*
 The kyng awoundrede & seide full skete, *marvelled / immediately said*
 ‘Nowe, ywisse, als I vndirstandyn kan,
 This is a deuyll and na man *not a man*
 þat hase my stronge lyoun slayne,
- 1110 And his hert owte of his body tane, *taken*
 And hase it thus etyn *with* so gud will,
 He may be callede *with* righte gud skylle:
 Cristyn kyng & moste of renownn,
 Strong Richerde, Quere de Lyoun.’ *Lionheart*
- 1115 (Bot now of this late we be, *let*
 And of þe kyng nowe speke wee. *the king [i.e. Moderd]*
 In care & mournynge ledis he his lyfe, *he leads*
 And ofte he callys hymselfe wreche & caytyfe; *calls / vile / miserable*
 He bannys þe tyme þat he was borne, *curses the time*
- 1120 For his sone þat he hase lorne, *lost*
 And his faire doghetir þat was forlayne, *seduced*
 And for his lyoun þat was so slayne.)
 Onone þe qwene þan come hym too, *came*
 And lordes & knyghtis *with* hir also,
- 1125 And askede hym what it was.
 ‘Ȝe wote full wele,’ he seid, ‘alle my case,
 And whi I lyfe in swithe doloure;
 For Kyng Richerd, þat stronge traytour,
 þat hase wroghte me thus mekill wo, *caused*
 And I may not hym to þe dede do. *kill him*
- Therefore I will, for his sake,
 Rawnsone for his body take *Ransom*
 For my doghetir þat he hase schente, *defiled*
 Agayne þe state of sacrament:
 Of euerilke kyrke þat prestis in syngis, *Outside the sacrament [of marriage]*
 Matyns sayes, or bellys rynges, *every church in which priests sing*
 There twa chaleces in be, *Hold early morning’s mass*
 The tane sall be broghte to me. *Were there are two chalices*
 And giffe þer bene mo than so, *One*
should there be even more

- 1140 þe halfendele schall come me to. *half of them*
 And when I am seruede of alle þat fee, *paid*
 þan sall Kyng Richerde delyuerede bee. *be released*
 And my doghetir, for hir owtrage, *wantonness* f. 132ra
 Schall forgo hir herytage. *give up her inheritance*
- 1145 And thus,' he seid, 'it schall be do.'
 And the baronage grauntede wele þerto.
 And aftir Kyng Richerd full sone þay sent,
 To here pleyntly the kynges entent. *hear/ intention*
 And to the courte than es he gone, *he [i.e.KR] was brought*
- 1150 And gret the lordes euerilke one. *greeted*
 Bot than the kyng seide to hym one þis manere,
 He seid: 'We hafe lokede amonges vs here,
 That thou schall paye thi rawnsounes, *decided*
 For the and thi two barouns: *you shall pay your ransom*
 Off euerilke kirke es in thi lande, *you and your*
 Thou schall do me come to hande: *which is*
 Pare als two chalessis in be, *shall make available to me*
 þe tane schalle be sent to me. *where there are*
 Thurghe alle thi lands, weite þou wele, *one*
 I will pleyntly hafe the halfuendele. *be assured*
 And when þat þou thus hafes made thi paye, *a half portion*
 I giffe the leue to wende thi waye. *[will] give you leave to go*
 And my doghetir also with the, *with you*
 That I 3ow neuer with eghne see.' *my eyes*
- 1165 'Now Sir,' seid Kyng Richerd, 'als þou has talde,
 Vnto that forwarde I will me halde.' *agreement*
- K**yng Richerd was euer cortays & hende *noble*
 Seid: 'Who will nowe for me wende *go*
 Till Inglande to my chancellere, *chancellor*
- 1170 þat my rawnsone be payed here?
 Who so it will do *withowtten* faile,
 I schall aqwitte hym wele his trauayle.' *pay / effort*
 And vp sterte thane ane hende knyghte, *one noble*
 And seid: 'Thi message will I do full righte.' *Your*
- 1175 Kyng Richerd did than a *lettir* to writte;
 A full noble clerke gan it endite. *wrote it*
 And made therin alle þe mencyoun, *narrated*
 Bothe lesse and more of alle the rawnsone.
 'And gretis wele,' he seide, 'als I 3ow seye,
- 1180 Bothe myn erbischoppes tweye, *greet*
 And so 3e do my chauncellere, *my two archbishops*
 To serue the *lettir* in alle manere.
 And in no manere þat þe *lettir* faile,
 For sekirly it schall þam avayle.'
- 1185 His sele þerto þan hase he sett, *certainly / be sufficient*
 The knyghte it takes *withowtten* lett. *seal*
 And dightis hym & makes hym 3are, *without delay*
 Ouer the see for to fare. *ready* f. 132rb

1190	When he was þer ouer broghte, To go his wayes forgatte he noghte. To London he rapede hym onone, For there he fonde þam euerilkone. And than he toke þe lettir, als I 3owe seye,	<i>did not forget hastened everyone</i>	
1195	Righte euyn vnto þe erbischoppes tweye, And bad theym that they scholde it rede, For it was sent for full mekill nede. The chancelere than the waxe brakke, And full sone he wiste whatt it spakke. The lettir was than red emanges þam alle,	<i>bade / read in great need broke the wax [i.e. seal] knew / it said</i>	
1200	Whatt thereof than scholde bifalle; How that their Kyng Richerd <i>with</i> tresoun, In Almayne duellyde for rawnsoun. And also how he hase þe kynges sone slayne, And his dere doghetir also forlayne,	<i>happen Germany seduced</i>	
1205	And also how he hase slayne his lyoun, And alle thies harmes he hase hym done. Than bad they clerkes swythe for to wende Till euery kirke bothe ferre and hende, And hastily that it were spedde,	<i>swiftly to go To / far and near was done</i>	
1210	And the tresoure forthe to hym ledde. 'Messangere,' than seide they, 'Thou schall duelle and haue thi paye, And fyve bischoppes to ryde the by, And also fyve barouns, full sekerly,	<i>stay / your pay ride with you certainly</i>	
1215	And other folke enewe <i>with</i> the; In vs schall no defawte fowndyn be. And of euerilke kirke, bothe lesse & mare, þay gadrede vp alle the tresoure. And ouer the see nowe are þay went, For to make the present.	<i>many men with you no lack will be found the lesser and the greater gathered have gone</i>	
1220	And when þay come the cite to, The riche kyng þay gretyn tho. And seid, als they were bythoghte: 'Sir, oure rawnsoun hafe we broghte.	<i>came to greeted then had planned</i>	
1225	Takis it, <i>Sir</i> , now alle at 3oure will, And latis go thies presoners & that is skill.' The kyng seid: 'I gyffe 3owe lefe, I ne will 3owe no more greue. And toke his doghetir bi the hande,	<i>Take let these prisoners go / right leave</i>	
1230	And bade theym sone devoyde his lande. The qwene than sees whate scholde byfalle, Hir doghetir scho gan to chambir calle, And seide: 'Here schall thou duelle <i>with</i> me, Till þat Kyng Richerde sende aftir the,	<i>ordered them to leave saw / happen She called her daughter to you shall stay sends for you</i>	f.132va
1235	Als falles a kyng sende aftir his qwene; And thus, rede I, þat it nowe bene.' Than Kyng Richerde and his felawes twey Hafe tane þaire leue and gase their waye	<i>As it is proper I advise / it should be two friends taken their leave / gone</i>	

- Home agayne into Englande –
 1240 Thankede be Jhesus Cristes sande! *Christ's providence*
 þay come to London, vnto þat cite, *came*
 His erles, his barouns, his felawes & he.
 Bot his two felawes than wentyn home, *And*
 þaire frendis weryn full glade of þaire come *return*
 1245 And bathede theire bodies þat were full sore,
 For trauaile þat þey hafed hade byfore. *exertion*
 And thus they duellede halfe a 3ere, *stayed / year*
 And than byfelle, als 3e schalle here. *happened / hear*
 The kyng comand thorowt alle his lande – *throughout*
 1250 Dorste neuer ane his commandement withstande – *No one ever dared / oppose*
 At London he ordeynede a parlement; *summoned*
 Wolde none withstande his comandement, *No one would*
 Als þat þay wolde safe þaire lyfe, *Because / save*
 þaire childre, þaire londis, or þaire wyfe. *lands / wives*
 1255 And to London vnto his somoun, *summons*
 Come bischoppes, erles, and baroun, *Came*
 Abbottes, priours, and sqwyere,
 Burgesse, and full many a bachelere,
 Sergeandes, and many a frehaldande *Townspeople / students*
 1260 The kynges heste to vndirstande. *Sergeants / freeholder*
 Byfore þat tyme, many a grete contree *command*
 þat was by3onde the Grekkes See: *Mediterranean Sea*
 Acrys, Surry, and full fele landes *Acre, Syria / very many lands*
 Weryn in Cristyn menns handis. *Were in Christian hands*
 1265 And þe crosse þat Criste was one dede – *on which Christ died*
 þat lorde þat boughte vs alle fro the quede. *saved us from the devil*
 And also alle contre abowte Bedlem, *region around Bethlehem*
 And the cite of Jerusalem,
 And Nazarethe, and Jeryco,
 1270 And alle the lande of Galyle also, *Galilee*
 þat ilke a palmere & ilke a pilgryme, *every pilgrim to the Holy Land*
 þat wolde go thedir in that tyme,
 Mighte passen safely *with* gud entent, *in good faith*
 Withowtten rawnsoun, or any rent, *payment*
 1275 Owthir of siluyre, or ells of golde, *Either / silver*
 Into whatt place þat he go wolde. *wished to go*
- O**ff Surry londe, the Duke of Melone *Kingdom of Jerusalem / Guy of Lusignan*
 Was lorde & a full bolde baroun;
 And mawgre the sowdane þat londe he helde, *despite the sultan [i.e. Saladin] / land*
 1280 Bothe *with* spere & eke *with* schelde, *also*
 He and þe doughety Erle Reynawde *He [i.e. Guy] / Raynald [of Chatillion]*
 Wele ofte þay gaffe þe sowdane assawte; *attacked the sultan*
 And wele ofte righte, in pleyne batayle, *battle*
 þay slewe his knyghtys & grete pedayle *a great number of foot soldiers*
 1285 Of the Sarazenes þat misbyleuyde, *Saracens / held a false belief*
 And theratt the sowdane was sore agreuede. *angry*

- B**ot lystenys nowe of a tresoun stronge
 Of the Erle Rosse was þam amonge,
 To whome þe Duke of Melon trustede mekill,
 1290 And he was treytour false & fekyll.
 þe sowdane full preualy vnto hym sent,
 And highte hym golde, londis, & rent –
 þe Cristyn folkes for to bytraye
 When he mayn wyn þam to his paye –
 1295 Of golde full many a thowsande pownde,
 And the erle hym grauntede [hytt] in þat stownde.
 Anothir treytour highte Markes Feraunt,
 He wiste of that ilke couaunt,
 And he hade parte of þat golde þat þe erle toke,
 1300 And aftirwarde his Cristyndom forsoke.
 And thus þe tresone of þe Erle Rosse,
 Surry was loste & þe holy croyse.
 þe Duke Reynawde was hewede full smalle
 Alle to peces, so says þe cronykylls alle.
 1305 þe Duke Melon was gyffen his lyfe,
 And fled awaye *with* his lyffe
 – He was gyoure of Surry lande,
 Kyng Bawdewyne sone, I vndirstande –
 Bot no man wiste neuer sythe,
 1310 Whare he bycome ne in what kythe.
 Soo þat this losse and this pite
 Sprange thorowte alle Cristyante,
 Ane holy pope was than þat highte Vrbane
 þat sent to euerilke a Cristyn man,
 1315 And assoyled theym clene of their synn,
 And graunte þam heuen for to wynn,
 Alle þat euere wolde thedir goo,
 To wreke Jhesu Criste of his foo.
 The Kyng of Fraunce, saunce faile,
 1320 Thedir he went *with* grete vitaile.
 þe Duke of Bloyse, þe Duke of Burgoyne,
 þe Duke of Ostryche, þe Duke of Sesoyne,
 And the Emperour of Almayne,
 And the gud knyghtis of Bretayne,
 1325 þe Erle of Flaundres, þe Erle of Colayne,
 þe Erle of Artays, þe Erle of Bolayne,
 And mekill folke went thedir byfore,
 þat nere had their lyfes forlore
 Thurghe grete werre & hungre harde,
 1330 Als 3ee may here tellyn aftirwarde.
- I**n harueste, aftir þe Natyuyte,
 Kyng Richerde, *with* grete solempnyte,
 At Westmynstre helde a feste
 Off bischoppes & erles, þe moste honeste,

treason
Raymond of Tripoli
much trusted
treacherous
secretly
promised / lands / revenue

help him win them

at that moment
was called Marquis of Montferrat
knew / pact
wanted a part / took
denied his faith
through the treason
The Holy Land / cross
chopped in very small
pieces / chronicles

King of Jerusalem
King Baldwin's son
knew / since then
country

f.133ra

A / called Urban

absolved / sins
promised that they would win heaven
to that place [the Holy Land]
avenge / enemy
without doubt

provisions
Burgundy
Duke of Austria / Saxony
Germany
Brittany

Flanders / Cologne
Artois / Bologne
many men
almost lost their lives
war
hear tell

autumn / Nativity [of the Virgin Mary]
solemnity

- 1335 Abbottes, pryours & knyghtis stronge.
 And aftir mete þam alle emonge, *the meal*
 The kyng stode vp and gan sey: *said*
 ‘My dere frendys, I ʒow prey,
 Bese now in pese & lystenys my tale; *Be / peace*
- 1340 Erles & barouns, bothe grete & smale,
 Bischoppes, abbottes, bothe lewed & lerede, *lay / learned*
 Alle Crystyndom may bene afferde. *has been frightened*
 Þe Pope Vrbane hase to vs sent,
 His bulle and his comandement, *[papal] bull / order*
- 1345 How þat the sowdane hase fyghte bygun,
 And the town of Acrys wonn
 Thurghe þe Erle Rosse & his trechery, *Raymond of Tripoli*
 And alle þe Kyngdome of Surry, *Kingdom of Jerusalem*
 Jerusalem and the crosse es lorne, *have been lost*
- 1350 And Bedlem, þer Jhesu Criste was borne. *where*
 Cristyn kynges es hangede and drawe; *have been / drawn*
 Þe Sarazenes hafe þam broghte of dawe, *put them to death*
 Cristyn man bothe childe, wyfe & grome. *youths*
- 1355 Wherefore oure lorde, þe pope of Rome,
 Es bothe agrefede & anoyede, *angry / troubled* f. 133rb
 Þat Cristyndome es swa distroyede. *in this way*
 And to ilke a Cristyn kyng he sendis his bode – *commandment*
 And biddys þam in the name of God –
- 1360 For to wende thedir *with* grete oste *to go / army*
 For to felle þe Sarazenes boste, *to overcome the Saracens*
 And to wynn the holy crosse agayne.
 And to alle thase þat Cristyn bene *all those [places] / had been Christian*
 And gase to dy there or to lyfe, *go / die / live*
 Or ells of þaire gudis to gyffe, *Otherwise / give their goods*
 To hafe siluere for to spende, *to have money*
- 1365 In Cristis name thedir to wende. *[And] / to go to that place*
 Wherefore oure lorde, the appostoille,
 Graunttes þam alle clene to assoyle *Pope*
 Of their synnes that they hafe wroghte. *Promises to absolve*
 committed
- 1370 Lordynges, now thynkis in ʒoure thoghte,
 Þat the werldis blysse lastis bot a while
 Ful of sorowe & schame, syn and gile.
 Þerfor bese warre when þat ʒe steruen, *be mindful / die*
 Þan schall ʒe hafe als ʒe disseruen, *Then you shall get what you deserve*
- 1375 And aftir ʒoure werkes, wele wote ʒe this:
 Helle paynes or heuenns blysse; *know well*
 For here we lyfe bothe alde & ʒyng, *old / young*
 In fleschely luste, and full lykyng, *carnal / sexual pleasure*
 In pride, in lecherye, & in couetyse, *covetousness*
- 1380 And almoste we forgetyn Goddis seruyce.
 Wharefore, I do ʒow to vndirstande, *Therefore, I tell you*
 I porpose me to wende to the Holy Londe,
 To trauelle thedir there God was borne, *to the place where*
 And to werrey that londe þat is fro vs lorne, *to defend / has been taken from us*

- 1385 þat es oure kyndely herytage. *rightful*
 Erles and barouns, knyghtis, sqwyers & page,
 Now trewely, I rede we alle vs do purvey *make ready*
 And wende we thedir, manly to lyfe & dy,
 To sla vp thase false Sarażenes, *To wipe out completely*
- 1390 þat are oure lordes Jhesu wethirwyns. *enemies*
 Wherefore, myselfe now hafe I mynt, *Therefore / decided*
 To wende forth thedir & *with* suerdis dynt, *sword's*
 Wynn þe crosse and gete the lose. *praise*
 Now, frendis, whatt es now ʒoure purpos? *intention*
- 1395 Will ʒe wende? Sayse ʒea or naye!'
 Erles, barouns, knyghtis, & alle þat maye,
 Pay seid: 'We bene at one accorde, *are agreed* f.133va
 With the to goo, als *with* oure ownn lorde.'
 Now quod Kyng Richerd: 'Frendis, grante mercy, *To go with you*
 It es to vs alle honoure, & lystenys for why: *many thanks*
- 1400 The Kyng of Fraunce es went forthe; *has already departed*
 I rede þat este, weste, southe, and northe, *advise*
 Thorowte alle Englande we do cry, *make a proclamation*
 And make a full playne croysery.' *true crusade*
- 1405 Ful mekill folke the crosse þer has nome,
 To Kyng Richerde [t]hen þay were come, *Many men took the cross*
 One horse and fote, full wele enparelde. *came*
 Two hondrethe schippes there bene vitayled: *equipped*
With whete, hawberkes, swerdis & knyfes, *hundred / supplied*
 1410 And thirttene schippes ladyn *with* beehyves. *wheat / mail shirts / swords*
 Of tymbir grete & schydes full lange *loaded*
 He garte make a towre full strange, *very long beams*
 That qwaynte engynours to hym made; *made / [siege]tower / strong*
 Þerewith thre schippes weryn ylade. *clever engineers*
 1415 And anothir gynn was laide in ʒitt, *loaded*
 þat men callede apere Robynett, *siege machine*
 And also Kyng Richerdes manngonelle, *war engine*
With alle þe takill that there to felle. *catapult*
 And when þay were thus dighte alle there, *catapulting equipment*
- 1420 Forthe of the hauen for to fare, *harbour*
 Jhesu sent theym wynde wele gude,
 þat bare þam ouer þe salte flode. *carried / sea*
- K**ying Richerd seid þan to his schipmen:
 'Frendis, dose now als I ʒow ken. *do now as / tell you*
- 1425 And, maister Alane Trenchemere,
 Whare þat ʒe come, owthire ferre or nere, *Wherever / either far*
 And ʒe mete by the see strandis *If you meet / shores*
 Schippes of any oþer landes,
 Cristen men one lyfe, I saye, latis ga; *alive / let go*
- 1430 Loke þat ʒe na gudes take þam fra. *no booty you take from them*
 And gif þat ʒe the Sarażenes mete, *But if*
 Lokes þat one lyfe þat ʒe nane lete. *you let none alive*
 Catelle, dromounde, or galaye, *Large ship / fast ship*

- 1435 Alle þat 3e may gete, I giffe 3ow to 3our pay. *as a reward* f.133vb
 Bot at the cite of Mercille, *And / Marseille*
 There byhouys to byde a while, *you need to wait*
 One cabille and ankire there to ryde, *wait on board ship*
 Me and myn ostes there to habyde. *there wait for me and my army*
- 1440 Will wende thurgheowte Almany *go through Germany*
 To speke there with Moderde, þe kyng,
 To wyete why & for what thyng *know*
 þat he me in presoun helde.
- 1445 And he my tresoure agayne 3elde – *If / returns*
 þat he toke of me with falssede – *treacherousness*
 Reghte there I schall qwitt hym his mede.’ *requite him his gift*
 And thus Kyng Richerd, als 3e may here, *hear*
 Bycome Goddes palmere *Became / God's pilgrim*
 Agaynes alle his wethirwyns. *Against his [i.e. God's] enemies*
- 1450 The Erchbischoþ Bawdwyns, *Archbishop [of Canterbury] Baldwin*
 Bifore es went with knyghtis fyne, *has gone before*
 Bi Brawdiche and bi Costantyne, *Through Brindisi / Constantinople*
 And at the laste than aftirwarde,
 Come þe doughety Kyng Richerde. *Came*
- 1455 In thre ostes Kyng Richerd gan hym make, *hosts / made*
 To heythenesse, for Goddes sake, *heathen country*
 And in the firstewarde hymselfe will be,
 With full hardy men of grete pouste. *great power*
- 1460 That oþer nexte hym ledis Sir Fuk Doly, *The next one / led*
 And Thomas of Multon ledis þe thride wittirly. *the third / certainly*
 And euer ane oste gan with þam lede, *every host*
 Fourty thowsande gude men at nede.
 And none there was bot men of myghte,
 þat were proued men in werre & fighte. *war*
- 1465 **N**ow es Kyng Richerd passede þe se, *has crossed*
 Full sone he dalte his oste in thre. *divided*
 For he wolde noghte þe folkes anoye, *did not wish to provoke the inhabitants*
 Ne their gudis noghte distroye, *Or / goods*
 Ne nothyng take withowtten paye. *take anything without paying*
- 1470 The kyng comande, als I 3ow saye:
 Euerilke oste to wende fra othir ten mile, *to go / from the other*
 Thus he ordeyned in that while,
 And in the midwarde hymselfe to ryde
 And his ostes one ayther syde.
- 1475 þan passede they forthe at þaire awenn will, *own*
 And na man ne dide theym noghte bot skille *nobody / nothing but right* f.134ra
 Till that they come into Almayne, *entered Germany*
 And a newe tydynges there herde pay seyne
- 1480 When þay come withowte enseyne *came / standard*
 Vnto þe cite of Coleyne. *Cologne*
 The heghe mayere of alle that cite, *high mayor*
 Comande þan, alls I schall now telle the:

- No man to selle theym no manere of fowalle, *fowl*
 For nothyng that myghte avayle. *be profitable*
- 1485 The stiewarde tolde it to Richerd, our kyng, *steward*
 Righte sone onane of that tythyng, *Immediately / news*
 þat he ne myghte no fowalle by, *buy*
 Nowthir for lawe ne for hy. *Neither for low nor high [prices]*
 ‘And thus hase defended Modarde, þe kyng; *forbidden*
- 1490 For he 3ow hatys ouer alle oper thyng, *hates you*
 For wele he wate þat 3e hafe sworne *he knows well*
 That [þ]at 3e take, that 3e will paye forne. *That whatever / beforehand*
 And that 3e will noghte take by maystry, *by force*
 And therefore he wenys, full sekirly, *believes*
- 1495 þat 3e schall hafe mete righte none, *you will have no food*
 And thus he wenys thi men to slone.’ *hopes to slay your men*
 Kyng Richerd than hym vmbythoghte, *pondered*
 & seide: ‘þat schull lett vs righte noghte.
- 1500 Sir Stiewarde,’ he seide, ‘I comande the, *Steward / order you*
 Too by vs vessell þat bene made of tree, *To buy / made of wood*
 Disches, dubbler, coppis & sawsers, *plates / cups*
 Bolles, ladills, and platirs, *Goblets / ladles / platters*
 Fates, touwnys, and costrells, *Barrels / casks / bottles*
 And makes oure mete for oughte ells, *meal for everybody*
- 1505 And whare þat 3e will takes oure brede, *even if / food*
 And alle þe pure men, so God 3ow rede, *poor / advises you*
 þat 3e may fynde in alle the toun,
 Prey þam to þe mete at my somoun.’ *Invite them to the meal*
 And when þe mete was graythed & dighte, *cooked / ready*
- 1510 þe kyng comande than a knyghte,
 Aftir the mayere þan for to wende, *mayor / to go*
 And alle þe burgesse gude & hende. *townspeople / well-bred*
 Than they come alle, als I hafe seid, *Then*
 And bordis & clothes weryn redy leide; *tables / laid*
- 1515 And sone þay ware to bordis sett, *soon / were / sitting*
 And full faire seruyce byfore þam fett. *brought*
 þay waren alle full glad & blythe, *joyful* f. 134rb
 Of riche pyment & wyne full swith. *sweet spiced wine / promptly*
 Kyng Richerd asked þam one hethyng, *disdainfully*
- 1520 ‘Sir Maier,’ he seid, ‘wher es þi lorde, the kyng?’
 ‘Sir,’ he seis, ‘he ligges at Gumery,
 Sertane sothe for owttten lye. *dwells*
 And alswa dose my lady, þe qwene, *Certainly, without lying*
 þe thirde [day] hythyn 3e schall þam sene. *also*
- 1525 And Margery, his doughetir fre, *In three days’ time / see them*
 The third day hythen 3e schall hir see.’ *noble daughter*
 þay waschede þan, als was lawe of lande. *see her*
 A messangere ther come þan full faste rydande, *washed / custom of the land*
 Appon a stede als whitte als milke, *riding fast*
- 1530 Alle trapped he was with twyly silke, *clad / crimson silken clothes*
 With fyve hundrethe bellys ryngande, *ringing*
 Als I do 3ow to vndirstande. *As I tell you*

- And doun of his stede righte þan he ligthe *dismounted*
 And gret Kyng Richerd sone appon highte, *greeted / in a loud voice*
 1535 And so he dide þam euerilkone.
 And his message schewed anone: *proclaimed*
 'The kynges doughetir,' he seid, 'þat is so fre, *noble*
 Gretis þe wele, Sir Kyng, by mee; *Greets you*
 And with fyve hundrethe knyghtis & ma, *more*
 1540 Scho comes to the or þou to bed gaa.'
 And þe kyng es glade of that tythyng; *She / to you / before / go*
 'Scho es welcome,' he says, 'ouer alle thyng.' *news*
 He welcomed full fayre the messangere,
 With glad semblande & mery chere, *courteousness*
 1545 And gaffe hym a clothe of golde,
 For he was to his lady full holde. *loyal*
 Þay come to hym þat ilke nyghte, *came*
 þe knyghtis and the lady brighte.
 And when Kyng Richerd hir myghte see,
 1550 'Welcome,' he seide, 'my lady fre.'
 And þan full sone aythir gan oþer kysse, *kissed each other*
 And made full mekill joye & blysse,
 And there they duelled to the daye; *stayed until it was day*
 Att morne þay went appon þaire waye.
 1555 And at þe mydday bifore þe none, *noon*
 Þay come to a cite full sone, *came / soon*
 þe name was called Marberett.
 Ther the kyng hym wolde ett, *wished to eat*
 His marschall full swythe come hym to *came to him*
 1560 'Sir,' he seide, 'what schall we do?
 Swilke fowelle als I gatt 3isterdaye,
 For no catelle now gete I ne maye.'
 Than Kyng Richerde spak wordis fre,
 'Of frwyte,' he seid, 'þer es full grete plente; *fruit / plenty*
 1565 Fyges and raysyns in frayelle, *in baskets*
 And nuttis also, & þay may vs serue wele.
 And waxe somdelle castes in therto, *put a little wax in too*
 And talowe and grese amang also. *fat / grease*
 Thus 3e may oure metis make, *meal*
 1570 Sen 3e may no noþer fowelle gete ne take.' *Since you may neither buy nor take any poultry*
 And ther they duelled alle þat nyghte.
 And at morne to wende þay hafe þam dighte *got ready to go*
 To þe cite of Carpentrace, *?Carpentras*
 There als the Kyng Moderde in was –
 1575 For thethyn myghte he fle righte noghte – *thence he could not flee further*
 Thurgh þe londe he hase hym soghte.
 Kyng Richerd there his inns gan take; *lodging*
 For therby gan his firste wrake, *began / trouble*
 With full grete wrang & agayne þe righte, *wrong / against*
 1580 For the gose þat þay had dighte. *goose / prepared*
 The Kyng Modard wote þat Kyng Richerd es commyn, *knew / had come*
 And wele he wenys to be nomyn, *expected / captured*

- And in preson ay for to be, *for ever be*
 Bot my doughetir now helpe me. *Unless / helps*
 1585 And righte so come his doghetir *with that,* *came*
 Scho seid: 'Wannowe, fadir, now what?' *She / What now*
 'Now certis, dere doghtir, I drede I gett gret blame,
 And bot thow me helpe, I ga alle to schame.' *Unless you help me, I will fall into disgrace*
 'Sir,'scho seid till hym righte than,
 1590 'Als I am trew gentill woman,
 Giffe þat [3ow] wille be mylde of mode, *If / be meek*
 Kyng Richerd will do noghte bot gude.
 Bot profers to do *with* righte gud will, *And offer*
 What he will saye to fullfill;
 1595 And do alle in his mercy,
 And 3e schall kysse & be frendis, be oure lady. *by our lady [i.e. Mary]*
 And 3e þat so longe hase bene so wrothe, *angry*
 Full wele now schall 3e bene accordide bothe, *in agreement*
 And also my lady & my modir, þe qwene;
 1600 Gud frendis nowe for euer schall 3e bene.' *be*
 Than scho toke hir fadir and *with* hym 3ode *went*
 Vnto Kyng Richerd righte ther he stode. *where* f.134vb
 And, *with* þam, erles & barouns many and mo,
 And ane hundrethe knyghtis, *withowtten* tho. *indeed*
 1605 And Kyng Richerd seese than how it 3ede, *saw then / proceeded*
 And full faire agaynes þam he gan hym spede. *towards*
 Kyng Moderde than one knees hym sett,
 And full hendely than Kyng Richerd he grett, *nobly / greeted*
 And seid: 'Sir, I am at 3oure will.'
 1610 And quod Kyng Richerd: 'I ne will noghte bot skille: *said / only what is right*
 So that thou 3elde agayne my tresoure, *if / return*
 I schall be thi frende for euermore,
 And loue the trawly & be thi frende.' *love you truly*
 Now quod Kyng Modarde: 'My son so hende, *noble son*
 1615 I sall the swere appon a boke *swear to you / book [i.e the Bible]*
 þat [is] redy þat I of the toke, *which I took from you*
 Ful redy is now alle thi tresoure;
 And 3if þou will, als mekill more, *as much more*
 I will the giffe my pese to make.' *peace*
 1620 Bot than Kyng Richerde gan hym in armes take, *And / took hym in his arms*
 And kissed hym full fele sythe; *many times*
 Than were þay frendis [&] made þay blithe. *rejoiced*
- T**hat ilke daye Kyng Modarde
 Ete *with* Kyng Richerde,
 1625 And aftir mete, full sone & swythe,
 Kyng Richerde spak, *with* chere full blithe,
 To þe kyng that satt hym by:
 'Now welcome are 3e, Sir, full sekirly, *certainly*
 For my loue now, I prey the *pray you*
 1630 þat þou gete helpe now to wende *with* me *go*
 To heythynnesse, *withowtten* faile, *heathen country*

- For Goddes loue to gyffe baytaile.’
 Kyng Modard seid: ‘I command alle *in girthe*,
 Alle my landis folkes to wend the withe *in peace*
 And myselfe, *Sir*, eke therto.’ *to go with you*
 1635 Kyng Richerd seid: ‘*Sir*, I ne will noghte so, *also*
 Thou art to alde to bekir in fighte; *do not wish so*
 Bot I prey the, *Sir*, that thou me dighte *You are too old / engage*
 Ane hundrethe knyghtis, styffe to stande, *get ready for me*
- 1640 Of þe beste of alle thi lande –
 And of alle vetayle þat it be done, *supplies*
 For alle a 3ere redy bownn – *prepared*
 And sqwyers also þat fallis þam to.’ *as befits them*
 1645 The kyng seid: ‘*Sir*, certis it sall be do, *done*
 And anothir thyng I schall the giffe, *give you* f.135ra
 That may þe helpe whils þou may lyfe: *help you / live*
 Two riche rynges þat bene of golde. *are*
 The stonys in theym, be þou bolde, *you may be sure*
 Fro hennes vnto the lande of Ynde, *From here / India*
- 1650 Swilke sall þou none fynde,
 And wha that haues þat one stone, *You shall not find such [stones]*
 Watir ne schall hym drowne none. *whoever / possesses one*
 Þat othere who so dose it bere, *shall never drown him*
 Thefe ne schall hym none dere.’ *Whoever has the other*
 1655 Quod Kyng Richerd: ‘*Sir*, grant mercy!’ *no thief shall harm him*
 By than his knyghtis weryn alle redy; *thank you*
 Sergeauntes of armes, & sqwyeres, *were*
 Stedis charged, and desters *Steads packed / noble horses*
 With tresoure, armys, and vytaile. *provisions*
- 1660 Þan come Kyng Richerd forthe *with* his paraile, *host*
 To Marceley þan gan þay ryde, *Marseille / rode*
 And his ostis one aythire syde: *hosts on either side*
 Fuk Doly, and Thomas Multoun,
 Erles, dukes, & mony a bolde baroun. *many*
- 1665 Kyng Richerd, maister Robert of Leycestre –
 In alle Ynglande ne was his bettire – *no one*
 With hym, Robert of Thorne;
 Grete Ynglys people *with* þam came.
 And alle redy þay fande their flete, *found / fleet*
- 1670 Charged *with* armours, drynke, & mette. *Stocked / food*
 Þay schipped armes, men, & stedis, *horses*
 And stored wele þaire folke *with* fode to fede. *food / feed*
 Þay schipped alle by þe see strande, *shore*
 To wend into the Holy Lande. *go*
- 1675 Þe wynd was bothe gude & kene,
 And drofe þam into Messene. *Messina*
 Byfore þe 3ate of the Greffoun, *gates / Greek [the people of Messina]*
 Kyng Richerd pighte his pauelyoun. *pitched / pavilion*
 Þe Kyng of Fraunce righte there he fande, *found*
- 1680 In pauelyouns þer als þay gan stande.
 And ayther of þam ther than kyssed oþer, *both / each other*

- And bycome righte there sworne brethire
 To wende into the Holy Londe
 To wreke Jhesu, I vndirstonde,
 1685 And to werrey one his enemys,
 And for to wyn þam heuenns blyse.
- B**ot a treson thocht þe Kyng of Fraunce,
 To do to Kyng Richerd a distance;
 To Kyng Tanker he sent a writt,
 1690 þat tornede sythyn to littill witt:
 þat Kyng Richerd, *with strengthe of hande,*
 Wolde drife hym owte of alle his lande.
 Tanker, kyng of alle Poyle was,
 And for this writt he seid, allas!
- 1695 And sone he sent his messangere
 To his sone þat highte Rogere,
 That was Kyng of Sesille lande,
 þat he sold come vntill his hande,
 And also bothe erle and barouns,
- 1700 And alle other lordis þat were of grete renoun.
 And when þay were comyn euerilkane,
 þe kyng seid to theym onane,
 And tolde þam how þat þe Kyng of Fraunce
 Hade warned hym of a distaunce.
- 1705 Kyng Rogere smote pese *with his gloue,*
 And bygane to speke firste aboue:
 ‘Mercy, my dere fadir, now at this tyme,
 Kyng Richerd es a pilgrym
 Crossed into the Holy Londe.
- 1710 þat writt lyes, I vnderstonde.
 I dere wele for Kyng Richerd swere,
 þat he ne thoghte 3ow neuer to dere.
 And sendis to hym 3our messangere,
 þat he come righte to 3ow here.
- 1715 And he will come to 3ow full fayne
 Forsothe, *Sir,* als I 3ow seyne.’
 þe kyng was payed of his consaile,
 And swythe sent aftir hym, saunce faile.
 And one þe morne he come to hym, ywysse,
- 1720 Into his ownn cite of Pys.
 Kyng Tankerde he fande righte in þe haulle,
 Amanges his erles & barouns alle.
 þan ayther of theym gret oper full faire,
 With full mylde wordes and debonaire.
- 1725 þan seid Kyng Tankerde to Kyng Richerde:
 ‘Loo, *Sir* Kyng, be Saynte Lenarde,
 Me es done nowe for to wete
 Of frendis by full gude writte,
 þat þou arte comen with thi powere
- 1730 For to byrefe me my landis here.
- became / brothers*
- avenge*
make war
- f. 135rb
- cause KR trouble*
Tancred / letter
Which turned [out to be] a poor stratagem
by force
Intended to drive
Apulia
- was called*
Sicily
to him
- every one*
at once
- quarrel*
demanded silence
- letter*
dare / swear
will never challenge you
send your messenger to him
- willingly*
Truthfully / tell you
pleased with / advice
immediately / certainly
in the morning / he [i.e. KR]
?Reggio
hall
- gentleness* f.135va
- Certainly*
It has come to my knowledge
authority
have come
rob me of

- And þou were wele fairere to be a pilgryme,
 For to slee in heythynesse faste of þe blode of þe panym,
 þan for to grefe a Cristyn kyng,
 þat neuer mysdide the nonekyns thyngel'
- 1735 Kyng Richerde wexe þan somwhate aschamed
 And at his wordis somwhate agramede.
 And seid: 'Tankere, þou arte mystaughte,
 For to hafe of me slyke a thoghte;
 And swilke owtrage appon me to bere
- 1740 þat I scholde the with armes dere,
 And slike tresoun appon me dose
 Parde! I bere appon my flesche þe crose.
 And I will duele here bot a day,
 To morne will I wende my way.
- 1745 And I will prey the, Tankere kyng,
 Prokir me none euyll tythyngel.
 For many man wenys to grefe oþer,
 And one his ownn hede falles alle þe fothire;
 For who þat wayttes me *with* dispite,
- 1750 Hymselfe ne schall noghte passe all qwitt.'
 Quod Kyng Tanker: 'Be noghte wrothe for this,
 Loo, here þe *lettir* thereof ywisse
 þat þe Kyng of Fraunce me sent
 þis othire daye, here in present.'
- 1755 Kyng Richerde sees that & vndirstode
 þat þe Kyng of Fraunce wolde hym no gude
 Kyng Richerd and Kyng Tankere kyste,
 And euer aftir were frendis ay *with* þe beste
 þat euer myghte [be] in any lande;
- 1760 Blissede be Jhesu Criste sande!
 Kyng Richerde þan went agayne ful stille,
 And suffrede þe Fraunce kyng do his will.
 And he vndide his tresoure,
 And boughte bestis to his store,
- 1765 And lete theym bothe salte and sla –
 Thre thowsande oxen an somdale ma,
 Schepe, and swyne so many also
 þat no man couthe tellen alle tho.
 Whete and benys, twenty thowsande
- 1770 Quarters he boughte, als þat I fynde.
 Off fisches, and foulles, and venysoun,
 I ne kan noghte acownnte the *somme*.
 þe Kyng of Fraunce, *withowten* wene,
 Laye in a cite þat highte Messen.
- 1775 And Kyng Richerde withowtten walle,
 Vndere ane house of the Hospitale.
 þe Ynglys men went into þe towne to þe chepyngel,
 And there ofte hent þay full harde knockkyng;
 þe Fraunce men & þe Griffouns, at alle rightis,
- 1780 Slewe there fasteoure Ynglis knyghtis.
- slay / pagan
grieve
did you any wrong
became
annoyed
misinformed
such
such indignity / bear
challenge you
such treason
By God! / flesh / cross
stay / only
Tomorrow / I will go*
- Speak me no evil
think of
on / head / weight
whoever plots malice against me
unpunished
Said / Do not be angry
Look / certainly*
- here present
saw / understood
wished
kissed
again*
- Christ's providence
peaceably
tolerated
unlocked
beasts*
- f.135vb
slaughter and be salted
some more
Sheep
could tell
Wheat / beans
560,000 lbs*
- cannot / sum
doubt
Messina
outside the walls
Beside a house / [order of the] Hospital
market
received
Frenchmen / Greek*

- And when þat Kyng Richerd herde of þat distance,
 He wente & pleynede to þe Kyng of Fraunce;
 And he ansuerde þat he helde littil wardis
 Of his Ynglys tayllyardis.
 1785 He seide: 'Chasty þe Griffouns, gif þou myghte,
 For of my men getis þou na righte.'
 'Now,' quod Kyng Richerd, 'sen it is so,
 þan wate I whate I hafe to do:
 I sall me of þam swagates wreke,
 1790 þat alle þe werlde sall of me speke.'
 Cristynmesse, that feste, þan was neste,
 And Kyng Richerd honowrede þat riche feste;
 And alle his erles and his barouns
 Weren sett in theire pauylyouns,
 1795 And weren yseruede *with* alle plente
 Of metis and drynkes of grete deynte.
 Bot þan come therin a knyghte belyue,
 Also faste als he myghte dryve;
 And felle one knes & thus he saide:
 1800 'Mercy, Kyng Richerde, for Mary mayde!
 For *with* þe Fraunce men & *with* the Griffoun,
 Mi brothire lyes slayne in the townn,
 And *with* hym there ligges other fyvetene,
 1805 Of thi knyghtis gude and kene.
 This daye and 3istirday, I tolde one rawe,
 þat sex and thritty knyghtis ther was yslawe;
 Full faste now fallys 3oure Inglise to were.
 Now, lufly lorde, now takes 3oure gere,
 And wreke vs *Sir*, now manly,
 1810 Or ells we sall reghte hastily
 Fle *perills* als þat, I vndirstande,
 And wende agayne till Inglande.'
 þan Kyng Richerd righte ther he stode,
 He loked als þoghe [he] were wode;
 1815 And the table *with* his fote he smate,
 þat it flowe into the flore fote-hate.
 And sware he wolde be wreken in haste,
 He wolde noghte lett for Cristis feste,
 The heghe daye of Cristynmesse.
 1820 þay armed theym bothe more and lesse,
 And byfore þam went Kyng Richerd,
 And þe Erle of Salisbery þan aftirwarde,
 That was called that ilke daye
 Sir Willyam Longspey.
 1825 And Sir Fuk Doly,
 And *Sir* Thomas of Multon, sekerly.
 þe Erle of Leycestre & þe Erle of Hertheforthe
 Ful stutly than pursuyt forthe.
 And many erles and barouns & stowte sqwyers,
 1830 Bowmen, speremen, & alblasterers,

heard / quarrel

complained

cared little

tailed Englishmen

chastise / if

you have no

since

I know what

in such a way avenge

Christmas / coming

were sitting / pavilions

served / abundance

dignity

quickly

As fast as

on his knees

lie fifteen others

your good and keen

in truth

f. 136ra

thirty-six / were slain

fall / fighting

gracious / armour

avenge

Flee

back to

as though / mad

foot

smashed onto / immediately

swore / avenged

not forbear though it were Christmas

high holiday

the greater and the lesser

in front of them

at that time

indeed

Hereford

boldly / pursued

Archers, spearmen / crossbow-men

- With Kyng Richerd ful faste gan rayke, *hastened*
 One Fraunce men & Griffouns to bene wreke. *be avenged*
 Þe folke of þe cite aspyede full rathe, *spied / shortly*
 þat the Ynglys men wolde do þam skathe; *harm*
 1835 And full hastely þay schette þe 3atis *shut / gates*
 With barres þat þay fande therat.
 And sythen þay rane vp appon þe walles, *after that*
 And schott *with* bowes & *with* spryngalles. *shot / bow-like engines*
 And called to oure men, saunce faile,
 1840 And seid: 'Gose home dogges *with* 3our taylles! *Go*
 For for alle 3oure boste & 3our pride, *arrogance*
 Righte þer sall men garre 3ow habide!' *make you face battle*
 And thus þay mysdide & foule myssaide *did wrong / insulted*
 Alle that day to Kyng Richerd;
 1845 And oure kyng þat day, for no mede *by no means*
 In batelle myghte he nanegates spede. *achieve anything at all*
- f. 136rb
- B**ot at þe nyghte, Kyng Richerd & his barouns
 Went vnto þaire paulyouns. *pavilions*
 Bot who so slepe or who so woke, *And some slept / some were awake*
 1850 Kyng Richerde þat nyghte no riste ne toke. *took no rest*
 At morne he sent to his conselers, *In the morning*
 And of the see to his maryners; *fighting sailors*
 'Lordings,' he seid, '3e bene with me,
 Oure conselle awe to be pryve. *meeting ought to be secret*
 1855 And alle we sall vs vengen so,
 With qwayntyse and *with* craftis mo, *ingenuity / skill*
 One the Fraunche men & one þe Griffounes
 That hafe thus dissypsed oure nacyouns. *insulted / nation*
 I hafe a castelle, I vndirstande, *siege tower*
 1860 Was made of tymbir of Ynglande, *[Which] was*
 With sere stages full of torells, *many platforms / small towers*
 Full wele floreste *with* many kirnells. *decorated / battlements*
 þer I & many another knyghte,
 Agaynes þe Fraunce me[n] sall take þe fighte.
 1865 The castell sall highte a surnownn, *be given a name*
 For it sall hat Matte Griffoun. *shall be called Griffoun-killer*
 My maryners, lukes 3e arme wele 3our schippis, *look that*
 And haldis vp wele oure manchippys. *keep up our spirits*
 By þe watir 3e schall þam assaylle, *assault*
 1870 And we bi þe lande, saunce faile;
 For certis, joye *commys* neuer vnto me,
 Or þat I avenged be!' *Until*
 Þerto dide ilke a man to cry:
 'Helpe God and Seynt Mary!'
 1875 Bot than the maryners theym gan hy, *And then / sailors / hastened*
 Bothe with schippes & with galy, *galleys*
 With are, and sprete, and saile also, *oars / poles / sails*
 And to þe cite þan gan they go.
 The wrightis þan framyde þe tre castelle, *carpenters / joined the siege tower*

- 1880 Bifore þe cite appon ane hill. *on a hill*
 And that it sees the Kyng of Fraunce, *saw*
 And seid: 'Hafe 3e no dowtaunce, *no fear*
 Of all thies Inglys cowardes; *these*
 For þay ne are noghtis bot mossardes. *nothing but wretches*
- 1885 Do drisses now 3oure mawngonelle, *Set / catapult*
 And castis into the tre castelle, *throw [stones] at the siege tower* f.136va
 And schottis at þam with alblaste, *shoot / crossbows*
 The tailed dogges to agaste!' *wretches / frighten*
 Bot herkyns now of Richerd oure kyng, *listen*
- 1890 How he lete bere, in the dawnnynge, *ordered to be sent / at dawn*
 Targis and hurdas to his folkes alle *Shields / palisades*
 Righte bifore the cite walle.
 And his folke he garte at anes crye, *cried at once*
 þat men myghte hafe harde into þe skye: *heard*
- 1895 'Late see come forthe, thou Fraunce moserde, *Let / you wretched French*
 And giffe bataille to þe Ynglys tailerde.' *fight with the tailed English*
 Bot than the Fraunce men armed þam alle, *And*
 And rane in haste vpon the walle, *assault*
- 1900 And faste defendide þe Ynglis assaile. *assault*
 And there bygan a full stronge bataylle;
 þe Ynglis drewe *with* alblastire and bowe, *crossbow*
 And many Franche men & Grifouns þay slewe.
 þe galays come than to the cite, *galleys*
 And hade nerhande wonn the entre. *almost / entrance*
- 1905 þay hade so mynede vndire þe walle, *undermined*
 þat full many Griffouns down gan falle. *fell*
 With hoked arowes and quarells *hooked arrows / bolts*
 þay felle down thikke of heghe torells, *in great numbers / high towers*
 And brake bakkes, legges and arme, *broke [their] backs, legs and arms*
- 1910 And also þaire nekkes it was na harme.
 þe Franche men come into þe stowre, *battle*
 And keste wilde fire oute of þe heghe towre. *cast / Greek fire*
 And þerwith I wote, forsothe ywisse, *I know, for certain*
 þay brynte & slewe many Ynglys. *burned*
- 1915 þe Ynglys men defendide þam wele,
 With full gud swerdis made of stele;
 And slewe of þam so grete chepis, *large numbers*
 þat many of þam lay one hepis. *in heaps*
 And one the lande helde Kyng Richerd
- 1920 His assawte ay ylyke harde, *always hard*
 And so manfully þan toke he one,
 þat of alle his men loste he noghte one. *lost not even one*
 þan loked he besyde & sawe, one houe, *at a distance* f.136vb
 A knyghte þat wayvede *with* a gloue. *gauntlet*
- 1925 Kyng Richerde come & he hym talde: *came / told*
 'Takes Ynglys *with* 3ow,' he seid, 'stowte & balde, *bold*
 For lo, Sir, I hafe asspyed now righte, *found out*
 A thyng þat makes myn hert now lighte; *heart*
 [Here] besyde es a gate one *there is a*

- 1930 Pat wardeynes in it es neuer one; *without a warden*
 þe folkes are roune to þe Watire Towre, *have run*
 For to do þam there socoure. *take refuge*
 And ther we may, *withowtten dynt,*
 Entire in nowe, verrament.' *without [striking a] blow*
in truth
- 1935 Pan blythe therof was Kyng Richerde,
 And hastely wente he thedirwarde.
 And many a knyghte, doughty of dede, *deed*
 Aftire hym prekede appon þaire stede. *spurred on*
 Kyng Richerd than entrede, *withowtten drede,*
- 1940 & ther hym folowed a grete felawrede. *company*
 His banere one þe walle was fechid full righte, *put up*
 Monsir Griffoun it gerte there be pighte. *The Greek raised it there*
 As grewhounde strekede owte of þe lese, *greyhound / rushed / leash*
 Kyng Richerde passede emange þe prese, *crowd*
- 1945 And seuen chynes *with* his suerde *chains*
 Oure kyng smate *insonder in* þe mydwerde, *cut in two / middle*
 Pat were drawen þere for dowte, *there/ fear*
Within þe 3atis and *withowte.* *gates*
 Portecolys & barreres vp he wanne, *Portcullis / raised*
- 1950 And lete come in alle his men.
 Pan myghte men see bothe strete & lane, *Then / [in] street*
 Franche men & Griffouns tholed schame; *suffered*
 Some into howsses þan rane full faste,
 And dores & wyndose barrede in haste. *windows*
- 1955 Bot þe Ynglysmen rane to *with* leuours, *bars*
 And brake þam vp *with* grete vi[g]ours. *broke [doors & windows] / strength*
 And alle þat gan agayne þam stande, *stood against them*
 Passed thorowe þe dynt of hande; *through the blows [dealt by their weapons]*
 Þay [br]ake cofirs and toke tresoure, *broke [open] chests / treasures*
- 1960 Golde, and siluere, and couertoure, *rich textiles*
 Full fyne stonys, and spycery, *precious stones / spices*
 And alle that they fand in tresorye. *found in the vault*
 Þer was nane of the Ynglys blode,
 Bot þat ne he had als so mekill gude, *never had as much booty*
- 1965 Als þat þay myghte bothe drawe & bere *they could draw and carry*
 To schipp and paulyoun, I 3ow swere. *[their] ships and pavilions*
 And euere cryed Kyng Richerd:
 'Sla downn-righte the Franche cowarde;
 And kythes thaym in 3oure batayle,
- 1970 Pat 3e ne haue no manere of tayle!' *Slay*
show them
you have no kind of tail
- T**he Kyng of Fraunce com þan prikyng,
 Vnto Richerd, oure noble kyng, *came / spurring*
 And felle one knees doun of his horse, *on his knees*
 And cryed mercy – for Goddes crosse,
 And for þe crownn, and for the loue *the crown [of thorns]*
 Of Jhesu Criste, the kyng aboue,
 And for þe viage & þe croun of thorne, þe cros of tre – *pilgrimage*
 Pat he solde graunte girthe & peesse to be, *truce and peace*

1980	And þat he wolde one hande take That they solde amenden alle þe wrake þat þay had vnto hym or his Don or seyde or oughte amys. Kyng Richerde þan of hym he had pite Of þe Kyng of Fraunce þat so satt one knee,	<i>take on himself</i> <i>they [i.e. the French] would amend / hostility</i> <i>Done /said / wrongfully</i> <i>took pity on him</i>	
1985	And lighte doun, so says the boke, And in his armes vp he hym toke And seid, it schall be pes and still, And 3elde þe townn all at his will. And bad agrefe hym noghte tho,	<i>dismounted</i> <i>took [Philip] in his arms</i> <i>peace</i> <i>gave up</i> <i>bade him not to harrass</i>	
1990	Those he had venged hym on his fo þat had his gud knyghtis quelled, And also disspitte of hym telled. þe Kyng of Fraunce bigan to preche, And preyed Kyng Richerd be his saule leche.	<i>killed</i> <i>insulted him</i> <i>to speak</i> <i>confessor</i>	
1995	And the tresoure 3ede agayne thane þat he had taken fro many a mane, Or ells he myghte noghte in fay To Jerusalem take the way.	<i>gave back the treasure</i> <i>Otherwise / in faith</i>	
2000	Bot than Kyng Richerd seid: 'With thi tresoure, Mighte þou neuer amende the dishonoure þat þay hafe done to me & myn or this. And, <i>Sir</i> , also thiseluen dide omys, When þat þou sent to Tankere þe kyng To appairen me with thi lesynge.	<i>And</i> <i>before</i> <i>yourself did wrong</i> <i>sent [a letter] / Tancred</i> <i>slander / your lies</i>	f.137rb
2005	We hafe to Jerusalem þe way sworne; Wha so brekes oure pilgremage es forlorne, Or wha so makes any werre or medlaye Bitwene vs in this ilke waye.'	<i>Whoever</i> <i>war / dispute</i>	
2010	And when abated was this distaunce, þan come þer forthe twa justice of Fraunce, And appon two bay stedis gun þay ryde, And to Kyng Richerd faste gan þay chide. þe tane was called Margaryte, And þe toþer highte Hewe of Pympotit;	<i>ended / discord</i> <i>two judges</i> <i>they rode</i> <i>quarrelled</i> <i>one</i> <i>the other was called</i>	
2015	And swithe sore þay hym tenyd & trayede, And called hym vile, foule tayliarde. Bot Kyng Richerd held <i>in</i> his hand a troncheoun toug[he] And to thase two justice full nere he droughe. And <i>Sir</i> Margarit he gaffe a dynt than	<i>soon / harrassed / annoyed</i> <i>tailed</i> <i>tough club</i> <i>came close to the two judges</i> <i>then</i>	
2020	Abownn þe eghe appon þe herne-panne, þat þe bacenett braste with the dynt, And þe reghte eghe flowe owte & awaye went, And dede he felle doun also faste. This Hewe of Pympetyt was agaste,	<i>Above / eye / brainpan</i> <i>helmet shattered</i> <i>right eye flew</i> <i>dead</i> <i>frightened</i>	
2025	And prikked awaye, <i>withowtten</i> faile, And Kyng Richerd was sone at his tayle, & gaffe hym a strake appon þe croun, þat dede he felle to þe erthe adoun,	<i>spurred</i> <i>soon</i> <i>he fell dead</i>	

2030	Strakes ynewe he gaffe hym sere, And seid: 'Thus schall men the lere To myssay any lordyng. Go nowe & plene the to the Franche kyng.' Ane erchebischope þan come ful sone, And felle one knees and asked a bone,	<i>anew / a great number learn from you slander appeal to archbishop begged for a favour</i>	
2035	Of Kyng Richerd he asked mercy For Jhesu lufe, & for þe lufe of myld Mary. And Kyng Richerd granted hym thane, And drafe to þaire pauylyons alle his men; And to this day there men may here speke	<i>sent / their hear</i>	f.137va
2040	How wele þat Kyng Richerde gan hym wreke. And so alle þe while aftir þat þay there ware, þay myghte go by there chafare; Ther was neuer none so hardy a man þat ane euyll worde dorste speke þam þan.	<i>avenged himself were could go / business an evil / spoke to them</i>	
2045	A nd thus Kyng Richerd in pesse & in reste Fro Cristynmesse, þat heghe feste, Duelte till þat it was aftir þe Lent, And than aftirwarde forthe he went. In Marce monethe, þe Kyng of Fraunce	<i>Christmas month of March</i>	
2050	Went vnto schippe, <i>withowtten</i> distaunce And when he was went, sone aftirwarde, Come the doughety Kyng Richerd. Foure schippes weryn charged, als I fynde, Towarde Cipirs, als <i>with</i> þe wynde,	<i>certainly gone Came loaded Cyprus</i>	
2055	Charged with tresoure euerilke dele. Bot sone a selcouthe case <i>þer</i> bifelle; A tempeste rase full sodeynly þat lastede fyue dayes forowtten ly. It brake þaire mastis and þaire ayre,	<i>every part strange event / happened arose suddenly without lying broke / oars</i>	
2060	And alle þaire cabills bothe lesse & mare, Ankere, bowespret, and rojere, Rapis, cordis, & alle othere, And were in poynte to synke down When þat þay come agayne Launson.	<i>ropes Anchor / bowsprit / oars Ropes on the point of sinking towards Limasol</i>	
2065	And thre of those schippes went onane And alle tobraste agayne a stane; Alle to peces þay 3oden in fere Vnnethes the folkes saued were. þe ferde schippe byhynde duelledede,	<i>at once burst open against a rock went together With difficulty fourth / stayed behind</i>	
2070	Vnnethes the maryners it helde. And þat schippe lefte righte in þe depe þat þe folkes one þe lande myghte wepe; For the Griffouns, at schorte wordes, Come <i>with</i> axes and <i>with</i> suerdis	<i>sailors [which was] / at the bottom [of the sea] For which / [England] / weep</i>	
2075	And grete slaughtire of oure Ynglys maked, And spoyled þe qwike alle naked. And sexten hundrethe þay broghte of lyve	<i>Came made stripped the survivors sixteen hundred / killed</i>	

	And into presoun þay keste hundrethes fyve.	<i>threw five hundred</i>	
	And also þay nakeden fourty score,	<i>stripped forty score [eight hundred]</i>	f.137vb
2080	Als þay were of theire modir ybore;	<i>[i.e. naked]</i>	
	Of these schippes brekyng was gret brite.	<i>wrecking of those ships / anger</i>	
	þe justice of Cipres rane full swythe	<i>immediately</i>	
	And drewe vp cofres full many folde:	<i>very many chests</i>	
	Ful of siluere, and of golde,		
2085	Disches, cowppes, broches, and rynges,	<i>cups / brooches</i>	
	Ful gud jewells, & oþer riche thynges;	<i>Very good</i>	
	No man bi southe ne zitt by northe	<i>either by south or by north [i.e. anywhere]</i>	
	Ne couthe acownte what they were worthe.	<i>could reckon up</i>	
	And alle was borne þat noble tresoure	<i>carried</i>	
2090	Thedir as wolde the emperoure.	<i>To the place / emperor [of Cyprus] ordered</i>	
	To þat it was thre dayes aftirwarde,	<i>Three days after that</i>	
	Come saylande aftir þam Kyng Richerd	<i>Came sailing</i>	
	With alle his grete nauys,	<i>fleet</i>	
	And alle his saylande galys,	<i>sailing galleys</i>	
2095	To the schippe þat stodyn in þe depe;	<i>stood at the bottom [of the sea]</i>	
	þe gentill men therin diden wepe.	<i>wept</i>	
	When þay sawe Richerde, þaire kyng,	<i>weeping / laughing</i>	
	þaire wepyng tordned than to laugheyng!	<i>worship</i>	
2100	þay welcomed hym <i>with</i> alle wirchippes,	<i>told him of / wrecking</i>	
	And talde hym þe brekyng of his schippes,		
	And alle the robbery of his tresoure,		
	And alle þat othere dishonoure.		
	Kyng Richerd than sware ane athe,	<i>swore an oath</i>	
	And for þe tydynges he wexe full wrahte:	<i>news / became furious</i>	
2105	'By Jhesu Criste,' he seid, 'oure sauyoure,	<i>saviour</i>	
	It salle forthynke the emperoure!'	<i>The emperor will regret this</i>	
	He calles Steuen & Sir Willyam		
	And Sir Robert of Thorname,		
	Thre gentill barouns of Ynglande,		
2110	Ful wyse of speche & doghety of hande:	<i>strong of hand</i>	
	'Gase.' he seid. '& says to þe emperoure	<i>Go / say</i>	
	þat he zelde agayne alle my tresoure	<i>returns</i>	
	Or I hym swere, by Seynte Denys,		
	þat I salle haue thre double of his.	<i>three times as much of his [treasure]</i>	
2115	And zelde me my men oute of presoun,	<i>[that he must] release</i>	
	And for þe dede paye raunsoun,	<i>for the dead</i>	
	And zelde agayne my robbery,	<i>return the stolen goods</i>	
	Or hastily he schall aby;	<i>pay</i>	
	Bothe with schelde and <i>with</i> launce,	<i>shield and lance [i.e. in battle]</i>	f. 138ra
2120	Oneane I sall take vengeaunce.'	<i>At once</i>	
	þe messangers þan oneane forthe went		
	To done þaire lordes comannment,	<i>carry out / their lord's order</i>	
	And hendely said þay theire message.	<i>in a noble way</i>	
	Bot the emperour bigan þan to waxe rage,	<i>to become furious</i>	
2125	And girnyde <i>with</i> his tethe, & faste he blew,	<i>ground his teeth / breathed heavily</i>	
	And a knyfe aftir Sir Robert he threwe.		
	And he blenked and awaye lepe,	<i>he [i.e. Sir Robert] dodged it / leapt</i>	

	It flowe into dore a spane depe.	<i>flew / a hand's breadth deep</i>	
	And sythen he cryed als vncortays:	<i>then / as [one who is] ignoble</i>	
2130	'Owte, tayliardes, owte of my place!	<i>tailed ones</i>	
	Gose and says 3oure taylede kyng	<i>Go / tell / tailed</i>	
	þat I ne awe hym righte nothyng!	<i>owe him</i>	
	I ame full glade of his losynge,	<i>am very glad / loss</i>	
	I will gyffe hym no nothire ansuerynge.	<i>no other answer</i>	
2135	He sall me fynde arely tomorowe	<i>early</i>	
	[At] þe hauen to do hym sorowe,	<i>harbour</i>	
	And wirke one hym als mekill wrake	<i>[I shall] work on / a great revenge</i>	
	Als one his men þat I hafe take.'	<i>As on / have taken</i>	
	þe messangers went one & raykede,	<i>rushed</i>	
2140	And were full fayne þay were so skaped.	<i>happy / escaped</i>	
	Bot þan þe emperour stiewarde, with honour,	<i>then / emperor's chamberlain</i>	
	Seid thus to the emperour:		
	'Sir,' he seid, 'þou hafe done vnrighte	<i>injustice</i>	
	þou hade almoste slayne a gentill knyghte		
2145	þat es a messangere fra a kyng –	<i>from</i>	
	þe beste vnder þe sone schynynge.	<i>shining sun [i.e. in the world]</i>	
	Thou hafe thiselfe tresoure enoghe,	<i>plenty of wealth</i>	
	3elde hym his tresour or þou getis grete woghe;	<i>Give back / will get / misery</i>	
	For he es crossede and a pilgryme,	<i>a crusader</i>	
2150	And alle þe men þat are with hym.	<i>[so are] all the men</i>	
	Late hym do his pilgrimage	<i>Let</i>	
	And schelde thiselfe, <i>sir</i> , fra damage.'	<i>shield yourself / from</i>	
	Bot than the eghne starede of the emperour	<i>eyes</i>	
	And smylede als a vile faytour.	<i>deceiver</i>	
2155	His knife he drewe oute of þe schethe,	<i>sheath</i>	
	Therewith he thoughte to do þe stiewarde skathe	<i>In response to that / harm</i>	
	And called to hym, <i>withowtten faile</i> ,		
	And seid he wolde tellen hym a consaile.	<i>wished to tell him a plan</i>	
	þe stiewarde on his kne hym sett down	<i>knelt</i>	
2160	With the emperour wende for to rownn.	<i>talk</i>	
	Bot the emperour than of full euyll triste,	<i>faithlessly</i>	f. 138rb
	Schare of his nese by the griste.	<i>Cut off / nose / gristle</i>	
	And seid: 'Traytour, thefe, þou false stiewarde!	<i>thief</i>	
	Go pleyne the nowe to þe Ynglys taylerde!	<i>Go and plead</i>	
2165	And giffe he come appon my lande,	<i>if / comes</i>	
	I sall make hym full euyll to stande.	<i>do him harm</i>	
	And alle his men I sall qwike flane!'	<i>flay alive</i>	
	Bot he in haste now torne agayne,	<i>And he [i.e. the chamberlain] / turned away</i>	
	þe stiewarde swyth his nese vp hent;	<i>immediately / held up his nose</i>	
2170	His visage than was all toschent.	<i>face / ruined</i>	
	And qwic oute of þe courte he rane –	<i>quickly</i>	
	He toke leue righte at no man –	<i>took leave of nobody</i>	
	And mercy to þe messangeres faste he cried.		
	He seid, for Mary lofe, in that tyde,	<i>at that moment</i>	
2175	þat þay scholde telle vnto þaire lorde	<i>they should tell their lord</i>	
	Of þe dishonour euerilke a worde.	<i>every word</i>	
	'And hy 3ow,' he seid, 'agayne to þe lande;	<i>hasten / towards the land</i>	

	For I sall cesse into 3oure hande	<i>shall give you possession of</i>
	Alle the keyes of euerilke a toure	<i>tower</i>
2180	þat he hase – 3one fekill emperour!	<i>that treacherous</i>
	And I schall bryng hym þis ilke nyghte,	<i>him [i.e. KR] / this very</i>
	þe emperour doghetir þat is so brighte.	<i>daughter</i>
	And alswa five hundrethe knyghtis,	<i>also</i>
	Stowte in armes & stronge in fightis,	<i>Bold in arms</i>
2185	Agaynes 3one fekill emperoure	<i>Against that treacherous</i>
	þat thus hase done me this dishonour.’	
	þe messangers þan þam hied full harde	<i>hastened</i>
	To þat þay come at Kyng Richerde.	<i>Until / came to</i>
	þay fand Kyng Richerd sitting to playe	<i>found / playing</i>
2190	At the chesse in his galaye,	<i>chess / galley</i>
	And þe Erle of Richmonde with hym played,	
	And Kyng Richerd wan alle þat he layde.	<i>won / bet</i>
	And the messangers talde alle þe dishonour	<i>told him</i>
	þat þam had done þe emperour,	
2195	And þe dispite þat he dide his awenn stiewarde,	<i>own chamberlain</i>
	In þe dispite of Kyng Richerde.	
	And also þe stiewarde presentyng	<i>presenting [the offering]</i>
	Of his biheste and his helpyng.	<i>promise</i>
	And alle togedir how þay had ferde	<i>fares</i>
2200	And ay satte þe kyng full still & herde.	<i>all the time / listened</i>
	T hane ansuerde Kyng Richerd –	
	In dedis as a lyoun in thoghte as a leberde –	<i>deeds like a lion / leopard</i>
	‘Of 3our sawes I am full blythe,	<i>accounts / glad</i>
	Now settis vs to lande & that swythe!’	<i>Let us set / swiftly</i>
2205	Bot than a grete cry rase fote-hate,	<i>And / rose immediately</i>
	And owte was schotte full many a bate.	<i>launched / boat</i>
	The bowemen and the alblastererys	<i>archers / crossbowmen</i>
	Armed þam one sere maners,	<i>in diverse manners</i>
	And schotte faste quarells, & many a flone,	<i>bolts / an arrow</i>
2210	Als thik als falles þe hayle-stone.	<i>As thick as</i>
	The folkes of the cite þan þam gan hy,	<i>hastened</i>
	And were full fayne to þe wode to fly.	<i>[only] too happy / to flee to the woods</i>
	þe barouns and þe gude knyghtis	
	Armed þam at alle rightis,	<i>Armed themselves completely</i>
2215	With their lorde the Kyng Richerd,	
	þat neuer was founden no cowarde.	<i>found cowardly</i>
	The Kyng Richerde, als I vndirstande,	
	Or he went owte of Ynglande,	<i>Before</i>
	Lete make hym ane axe, for þe nonys,	<i>Ordered to make</i>
2220	For to clefe with the Sarazenes bones;	<i>break up</i>
	þe hede was wroghte full noble & wele,	<i>head / crafted</i>
	þerin was twenty pownde of stele.	<i>In it</i>
	When he come into Cypres lande,	<i>he [i.e. KR] came</i>
	þat axe he toke righte in his hande;	
2225	Alle that he hitte, he tofrappede.	<i>shattered</i>
	þe Griffouns faste away fro hym raykede,	<i>rushed</i>

f.138va

- To þe nauyll full many he cleuede,
 And alle þaire vnthanes righte þer he releuede.
 And the presone, when he come to,
 2230 With his axe he smate righte so,
 þat þe dores & þe barreres & þe iryn chynes
 Flow insondire & his men – þat were in pynys –
 He delyuerde owte, whosoeuer was wrothe,
 And garte delyuere þam bothe mete & clothe,
 2235 And sware his athe, by Saynte Sauoure,
 It solde forthynke the emperour.
 And alle þe burgesse of þat townn
 Kyng Richerde lete sla *withowte* rawnsoun;
 And alle their tresoure & þaire jewells
 2240 He sesyde als his awenn catelle.
 Bot than the tydynges [come] to the emperour
 þat Kyng Richerd was in Lamasour,
 And hade alle his burgesse to þe dede ydo;
 No wonder than thoghe hym were woo.
 2245 He sente anone, withoutten fayle,
 Faste aftir alle his consayle
 þat þay solde come to hym in hy
 To wreke hym of his enemy.
 His oste was comyn at mydnyghte,
 2250 And redy at morne for to fighte.
 Bot herkenys now of the stiewarde,
 How he come at þe nyghte to Kyng Richerde:
 þe emperour dogheter he broghte hym withe
 And gret Kyng Richerd *with pesse & grythe*.
 2255 He felle one knees and gan to wepe,
 And seid: 'Kyng Richerd, God the kepe!
 Loo, how I am schente for þe lufe of the; *Look / have been disfigured / being loyal to you*
 Now, gentill lorde, now wreke þou mee,
 The emperour doughter, þat is so bryghte,
 2260 I betake the þat gentill wighte.
 And als wa alle þe keys I betake þe here
 Of euerilke castelle in his powere,
 And five hundrethe knyghtis, I 3ow [bi]hete,
 And loo thaym here redy at 3oure fete;
 2265 That sall full wele lede and socoure
 Agaynes 3one fekill & false emperour!
 And þou sall be bothe lorde and syre,
 Or tomorne at þe euynn, of his empire.
 And leue *sir*, *withowtten* fayle,
 2270 3itt byhoues the haue my consayle,
 And I salle the lede this nyghte, bi a coste,
 Full preualy appon his oste.
 And in his paulyone 3e schall hym take
 And thynke þan appon þe mekill wrake
 2275 þat he hase done to the or this;
 þoghe 3e hym slaa, noo force it es.'
- navel / cut open*
ill-will / rewarded
prison
struck so [hard]
barriers / iron chains
Flew into pieces / imprisoned
released / angry
ordered them to be given / food
swore / oath / Saviour
The emperor should regret this
townspeople
ordered to slay / ransom
wealth
seized / own property
news came
Limasol
put to death
he was upset
at once f.138vb
council
should come in haste
avenge
host / came
ready to fight in the morning
listen
came
emperor's daughter / with him
peace and good will
wept
may God preserve you
avenge me
hand over to you / creature
I give you
every castle
promise you
look at them / feet
lead / help
Against / that treacherous
lord and master
Before tomorrow evening
allow me
It is necessary for you / advice
lead you tonight / by the coast
secretly / army
pavilion / capture him
great injury
to you before
Though you slay him, it does not matter

	Bot mekill it gladide þe Kyng Richerd	<i>And much / cheered</i>	
	þe noble consaile of the stiewarde,	<i>chamberlain</i>	
	And sware by Jhesu, oure saueoure,	<i>swore / saviour</i>	
2280	þat his nese sall be boughte full soure.	<i>nose / bought at a very high price</i>	
	Bot than ten hundrethe stedis gud & sure	<i>And / steeds</i>	
	Kyng Richerd garte ordeyne in trappoure,	<i>made ready / in armour</i>	
	And one euerilkane lepe ane Ynglys knight –	<i>on every one leapt an</i>	
	Stowte in armours & stronge in fighte –	<i>Bold in arms</i>	
2285	And also þat stiewarde, I 3ow plichte,	<i>I assure you</i>	
	Led thaym, by the mone lighte,	<i>them / moonlight</i>	
	So nere the emperours pauylyoun	<i>So near</i>	
	That of the trompis þay herde þe sownn.	<i>horns / sound</i>	f.139ra
	It was a littill byfore the dawnnynge,	<i>dawn</i>	
2290	þe stiewarde seid to Richerde, oure kyng,		
	‘Late se, Sir Kyng, assaylle nowe 3erne	<i>Look now / attack / without delay</i>	
	þe pauylyoun <i>with</i> the giltyn ern;	<i>gilded eagle</i>	
	For therin lyes the emperour.	<i>is encamped</i>	
	Awreke now, Sir Kyng, this dishonour.’	<i>Avenge</i>	
2295	Bot than was Kyng Richerd als ferse to fighte	<i>And / as fierce</i>	
	Als euer was fawkon to the flighte.	<i>hawk to fly</i>	
	And preked forthe appon his stede,	<i>spurred on / horse</i>	
	þere folowed hym a grete forhede,	<i>company</i>	
	His axe he helde in his hande drawenn		
2300	þat many a Griffoun hase yslawenn.	<i>slain</i>	
	þe wayttes of that oste gan see	<i>sentinels / saw [them]</i>	
	And lowde þay bigan for to cry:	<i>loudly</i>	
	‘As armes, lordynges, alle & some!	<i>To arms / everyone</i>	
	We bene bytrapped and bynommen!	<i>have been entrapped / seized</i>	
2305	In euyll tyme oure emperour		
	Robbede Kyng Richerd tresoure.	<i>Richard’s</i>	
	For he es now amanges vs	<i>is / among us</i>	
	And slaes dounreghte, bi swete Jhesu.’	<i>slays</i>	
	þe Ynglys knyghtis, for the nonys,	<i>then</i>	
2310	Tohewe þe Griffouns, bothe bodies & bones,	<i>Struck</i>	
	þay smate þe cordis insondre, & felled down	<i>cut the ropes in two</i>	
	Full many a riche pauylyoun.	<i>rich pavilion</i>	
	And euer cried bothe sqwyere & knyghte:		
	‘Smytt! Laye one! Sla dounrighte!	<i>Strike / Deal blows / Slay</i>	
2315	3eldis the tresoure now agaynwarde	<i>Give back</i>	
	þat 3e toke fra Kyng Richerde!	<i>from</i>	
	3e are worthy to hafe slyke mede,	<i>You / such retribution</i>	
	With grymly wondis to ly & blede!’	<i>wounds / lie / bleed</i>	
	At the emperours pauylyoun, Kyng Richerd		
2320	Lighted, so dide the stiewarde;	<i>dismounted</i>	
	And hymselfe was fled awaye,	<i>But himself [i.e. the emperor] had fled</i>	
	Hym allane, or it was daye.	<i>alone / before dawn</i>	
	Fled was that vile cowarde,		
	And narowe soughte hym Kyng Richerd.	<i>eagerly KR sought him out</i>	
2325	He fand his clothis & his tresoure,	<i>found</i>	
	Bot he was fled, þat vile traytoure.		

- Lange or þe day bigan to dawe, *Long before / dawn*
 Twenty thowsande Griffouns was yslawe. *were slain*
 Of silke, & sendelle, & syclatoun *rich silken material / fabric woven with gold*
 2330 Was the emperours pauylyoun; *f.139rb*
 In alle this worlde ne was none slyke, *there was none such*
 Ne bi mekill thyng it lyke. *much / like it*
 Kyng Richerd did þam grete wirchippes, *them [i.e. the riches found] great honour*
 He garte them lede into his schippes; *had them taken*
 2335 And sythyn at Acres ne was none founde *since / there was no*
 Pauylyoun of so mekil mounde, *great value*
 Cowppes of golde, bothe grete & smale, *Cups*
 He hade there, withowtten tale, *without lying*
 And full many a cofre, smalle & grete, *chest*
 2340 He fande ther filled and full ybette. *there [i.e. the emperor's camp] / ornamented*
 And two stedis fonde there Kyng Richerd, *steeds*
 The one highte Fawuelle, þe toþer highte Lyarde; *called Favel / the other called*
 In alle the werlde was noghte their pere, *they had no equal*
 Noper dromounde ne 3it dextere, *Neither dromedary / nor noble steed*
 2345 Stede rabet ne camelle, *Arabian horse nor*
 That rane so swythe, withowtten fayle. *fast*
 For a thowsande pownde of golde telde *counted gold*
 Solde the tone of them be selde. *Should one / sold*
 And alle that his men þat are lorne, *were kept [in prison]*
 2350 Seuen dowble þay hade therforne. *Seven times / on account of that*
- T**han tythyng to þe emperour es comen *news came to*
 How that his doghetir was nommen, *captured*
 And that his heghe-stiewarde *chamberlain*
 Hir had delyuered to Kyng Richerde. *had brought her to*
 2355 And by that he wiste full wele, ywysse, *knew well*
 þat he had wroghten alle of mys, *done wrong*
 And messangers than he called anone *at once*
 And bade þam to Kyng Richerde gone, *told them to go to KR*
 And þat '3our emperour and 3oure kyng,
 2360 Sende hym feythe and gud gretyng.
 And homage ilke a 3ere I will hym 3elde,
 And alle my landes of hym helde;
 So þat he will, pur charite,
 In pese euer aftir late me bee.'
 2365 þe messangers bylyue forthe went
 For to do þaire lordis comandement.
 And Kyng Richerd graunted therto:
 'I will, lordynges,' he seid, 'þat it be so.
 Gase and seys to 3oure emperour
 2370 þat he hase done grete dissaynour,
 þat he has robbide pilgrymes
 þat ware towarde þe Sarazenes;
 Says hym buse a3ene my tresour ilk a dele,
 3efe he will bene my specyell.
 2375 And alswa says 3oure emperour *Go / say*
dishonour
robbed pilgrims
were [going]
[he] must give back / every part
If / wishes to be / friend
tell *f.139va*

	That he amende the dishonour	<i>[must] amend</i>	
	þat he dide to his stiewarde	<i>chamberlain</i>	
	In the dispite of Kyng Richerde.		
	And that he come arely tomorowe,	<i>[must] come early</i>	
2380	And crye here mercy, <i>with</i> grete sorowe,		
	And homage to me 3eld or bere,	<i>pay homage</i>	
	And ells, be my crown I swere,	<i>Or else / by</i>	
	He sall noghte hafe a fote of lande		
	Neuer mare oute of my hande.'	<i>more from</i>	
2385	þe messangers þan, by one accorde,	<i>unanimously</i>	
	Tolde thus to þe emperour, þaire lorde.		
	þe emperour was than full wo	<i>distressed</i>	
	þat he this dede nedis scholden do.	<i>needed to do this deed</i>	
	Bot to Kyng Richerd he come at morow,	<i>And / came in the morning</i>	
2390	In his hert was mekill sorowe;	<i>heart / much</i>	
	He felle one knees, so says the boke,	<i>fell on [his]</i>	
	And Kyng Richerde by bathe þe fete he toke,	<i>took both KR's feet</i>	
	And cryed mercy with gude entent,	<i>without reservation</i>	
	And he forgaffe his maletalent,	<i>gave up his hatred</i>	
2395	And there he dide hym homage	<i>paid homage</i>	
	Byfore alle his baronage.		
	þat daye þay were at one accorde,	<i>in harmony</i>	
	And ete togedir at one borde;	<i>ate / one table</i>	
2400	In grete solace and mery playe	<i>merry</i>	
	þay were togedir alle that daye.		
	And when it drewe vnto þe eue,	<i>evening</i>	
	þe emperour than toke his leue		
	And went than to his ostelle;	<i>residence</i>	
	In hert hym lykede nothyng welle,	<i>In [his] heart / did not like</i>	
2405	He helde hymselfe a vile foule cowerde	<i>regarded</i>	
	þat he dide homage to Kyng Richerde.		
	And thoghte how that he awreke hym myghte,	<i>might avenge himself</i>	
	And forthe he went anone ryghte	<i>went forth immediately</i>	
	Vnto a cite þat highte Bonevent,	<i>city called Buffavento</i>	
2410	He come thedir by daye, verrayment,	<i>came to that place / certainly</i>	
	And there he fand many a full grete sire,	<i>great barons</i>	
	And the richeste of alle his empire.		
	To theym thane pleynede þe emperour	<i>complained</i>	
	And of þe schame & of the disshonoure	<i>About</i>	
2415	þat to hym hade done Kynge Richerd		
	Thorowe þe helpe of his heghe-stiewarde.	<i>Through / chamberlain</i>	f.139vb
	þan vpe ther stode a noble baroun,	<i>Then stood up</i>	
	Full riche of catelle & of townn,	<i>Very rich in property</i>	
	þe stiewarde eme, I hope he was,	<i>chamberlain's uncle / I think</i>	
2420	þat þe emperour schent in the face.	<i>injured</i>	
	'Sir,' he seide, 'I ame vmbythoghte	<i>It is clear to me</i>	
	þat þou arte alwas abowte noghte;	<i>are always up to no good</i>	
	Withowtten enchesoun or juggement,	<i>cause / justice</i>	
	Thi gude stiewarde þou hafe schent –	<i>Your / injured</i>	
2425	þat solde also, als I wele knawe,	<i>That could [the chamberlain]</i>	

	Hafe vs holpen and sauede nowe.	<i>Have helped and saved us</i>
	Thurghe thy wylle malycyous	<i>Through / malicious will</i>
	Reghte þou wolde seruen vs.	<i>you wish to serve us</i>
	And I the saye, <i>with</i> wordes balde,	<i>I tell you / bold words</i>
2430	With slyke a lorde kepe I noghte holde	<i>such / I would not stay</i>
	To fighte agayne Richerde, þe kyng,	<i>against</i>
	The beste vnder þe sonne schynynge.	<i>[i.e. in the world]</i>
	Nor neuer one of my baronage	<i>not one</i>
	Sall neuer do the homage.'	<i>Shall ever pay homage to you</i>
2435	And alle these other lordes seyden att one worde	<i>the other / said in unison</i>
	þat þay wolde holde Kyng Richerd for lorde,	
	And þat þe emperour for his velany	<i>villainy</i>
	Weren worthy pleynly for to dy.	<i>plainly deserved to die</i>
	And then þe emperour sees & vndirstode	<i>saw / understood</i>
2440	þat his barouns wolde done hym no gude.	<i>intended him no good</i>
	And to anoper town he flyes & holdes hym there,	<i>fled / stayed</i>
	For in his hert was full mekill care.	<i>[there] was much sorrow</i>
	T hat ilke tyme þe heghe-stiewarde	<i>At the same time</i>
	Conseiled full faste Kyng Richerd,	<i>Advised</i>
2445	And seid þat hym forthoghte full sore	<i>sorely regretted</i>
	þat þe emperour was so forlore.	<i>had escaped</i>
	And than they soughte hym faste one alle wies	<i>then / in every way</i>
	And fande hym in þe cite of Pyse.	<i>found</i>
	Bot certanly than the Kyng gud Richerd	<i>And</i>
2450	Ne wolde noghte loke vnto hym ward,	<i>Did not wish to look at him</i>
	For cause that he had broken his trouthe.	<i>his oath</i>
	Kyng Richerd hade of hym no rowthe;	<i>mercy</i>
	Bot lete a sergeand hym bynde	<i>ordered a sargeant to bind him</i>
	Both his handis faste hym byhynde,	
2455	And keste hym into a galy	<i>threw / galley</i>
	And ledd hym <i>with</i> hym into Surrye,	<i>took him to Syria</i>
	And sware by hym þat made mone & sterne,	<i>swore / the moon / stars</i>
	þat agayne þe Sarazenes he solde werne.	<i>against / should make war</i>
	And þane when alle this werre abated was,	<i>war [in Cyprus] / had ended</i>
2460	Kyng Richerde sett þat lande in pesse;	<i>pacified the land</i>
	þe Erle of Leycestre, full sodeynly,	<i>at once</i>
	Thurghe þe conselle of þe barounry,	<i>advice of his barons</i>
	He made hym stiewarde of þat lande,	<i>governor</i>
	And bitoke the reme into his hande;	<i>granted / realm</i>
2465	And grete festes þan helde he aftirwarde.	<i>great feasts</i>
	His schippes lete he dighte þan þis Kyng Richerd	<i>made ready</i>
	For towarde Acris than passe he wolde,	<i>would go</i>
	With full mekill store of siluere & golde,	<i>great treasure</i>
	With seuen score schippes, als we fynde,	<i>[i.e. one hundred and forty]</i>
2470	Saylande forthe rigthe <i>with</i> the wynde.	<i>Sailing</i>
	And aftir thaym fifty galays,	<i>galleys [i.e. fast ships]</i>
	For to kepe wele alle his nauys.	<i>To protect / fleet</i>
	And als the doughty Kyng Richerd	
	Come saylande vnto Acres warde,	<i>Came / towards</i>

- 2475 And had saylede *with* þe wynde at will
 Ten dayes full faire and still, *in good weather*
 Þe laste day þay sayled in tempest,
 Þat nyghte ne daye þay hade no reste. *[neither] at night nor / any rest*
 And als þay were there in aventure, *as / in danger*
- 2480 Þay sawe a dromounde *withowtten* mesure;
 Þe dromounde was so heuy fraughte, *an enormous ship*
 Vnnethes myghte it sayllen oughthe. *heavily loaded*
 It was towarde þe Sarazenes *[That]it could hardly sail*
 Charged with cornes and *with* wynes, *was [going]*
 2485 With wilde foulle, and othere vitale. *Loaded with*
 And Kyng Richerde sees it, saunce fayle, *supplies*
 He bade one hastynge Trenchemere *When / saw it / without doubt*
 In a galaye to wynede þam nere, *hastily*
 And aske of theym whethyn þat þay ere, *to approach them*
 2490 And what thynges þay hafe in chafere. *from what place / are*
 And one fote stode than the latymere *store*
 And ansuerde Alane Trenchemere: *stood / interpreter*
 ‘With the Kyng of Fraunce we duelle, sance faile, *we are with*
 Fra Poyell we bryngen þis vitaylle, *From Apulia / brought supplies*
- 2495 And a monethe hafe we ligger in the see, *month / been / sea* f. 140rb
 And at Acris wolde we bee.’ *wish to go*
 ‘Wynde vp thi sayle!’ quod Alane, ‘swythe,
 And saile we forthe with wyndes lythe.’ *your sail / said / at once*
 ‘Nay, Sir!’ quod he, ‘by Sayne Thomas of Ynde, *[Let us] sail / gentle winds*
 Vs byhoues nedlynges come byhynde; *he [i.e. the interpreter]*
 2500 For that we bene so heuy fraghte, *It is necessary for us to*
 Vnnethes may we saylen oughthe.’ *are so heavily loaded*
 Þan sayde Alane sone onone: *Hardly can we sail*
 ‘I here none speke of 3owe bot one, *immediately*
 2505 Late see, stande vp now alle 3our fere *hear*
 Þat we myghte maa of þam now here *Look here / companions*
 And knawe 3our tunges aftir than; *[So] that / we may hear more of them*
 For I ne will noghte leue a man.’ *recognise / tongues [i.e. languages]*
 ‘Certis,’ þan quod the latymere, *will not trust*
 2510 ‘Þou spekes nowe with no mo here; *Certainly / said*
 Þay weren greued tonyghte *with* tempest *You will speak with no one else*
 þam buse lygge still, & take þaire riste.’ *They must lie / rest*
 ‘And certis,’ þan quod Trenchemere Alane,
 ‘To Kynge Richerd, þan will I seyne, *I will tell KR*
- 2515 þat 3ee bene alle Sarazenes *you are*
 Charged with corne and *with* wynes!’
 Bot than the Sarazenes stert vp alle preste *And / rushed up / ready*
 And seyde: ‘Felowe, goo doo thi beste; *go [and] do your*
 For Kynge Richerde and his galys,
 2520 Sett we noghte at twa flyes!’ *We value / not two flies [i.e. worthless]*
 Alan Trenchemere gan rowe full harde *rowed*
 Vntill he come to Kyng Richerde, *came to*
 And swore to hym, by Seynte John,
 þat þay [were] Sarazenes euerilkon. *all of them*

- 2525 þan spake oure kyng of renoun, *good fame*
 þat highte Richerde Qeure de Lyoun: *called / Lionheart*
 ‘Of ʒoure sawes now ame I full blythe, *words / I am glad*
 Late sees, ilke a man goo arme hym swythe! *Look here, every / arm himself at once*
 Stere thou my galy, Alan Trenchemere, *Steer*
- 2530 And I schall assaye [thase] pautynere. *attack those villains*
 And with myn [axe] I schall þam frape, *strike them*
 þat neuer ane of þam ne schalle aschappe!’ *not one / shall escape*
 Than his auxe als tite was to hym broghte, *Then / axe right away*
 His othere armour forgatte he noghte. *did not forget*
- 2535 And to hym þer come maryners ynowe, *many sailors came*
 And Kyng Richerde bad þam faste rowe: *ordered them to row fast* f.140va
 ‘Rowes one faste,’ he seid, ‘& makes ʒow bownn, *arm yourselves*
 And goo we to ʒone dromoun!’ *towards that ship*
 þay rowed full faste and layed into, *laid [the oars] into [the water]*
 And hauē: ‘Owe, lowe, rombylowe!’ *cried*
- 2540 þe galy ʒeden also faste *went as fast*
 Als quarelle owte of alblaste – *As [a] bolt shot from a crossbow*
 And als wa the dromounde come with þe wynde, *so too the large ship came*
 A lange qwartere þam byhynde, *a whole quarter [of an hour] behind them*
- 2545 þe galy rent with the brande *tore [the water] with its bow*
 In the see, als I vnderstande. *sea*
 þan ware þe Sarazenes armed wele, *the Saracens were*
 Bothe in iryn and in stele, *iron / steel*
 And stode one borde, and faughte full harde *stood / fought*
- 2550 Agayne the doughty Kyng Richerd. *Against*
 And Kyng Richerde and his knyghtis
 Slewe the Sarazenes dounrightis.
 And als þat þay gan wirke þam woo, *caused them injuries*
 Ay stod þay vp moo and moo *Again and again / stood up / more*
- 2555 And rapped one þam, for the nonys, *smote on them [i.e. KR & his men]*
 Ful steryn strokes with full grete stonys *Very strong / stones*
 Owte of the topcastell so hye, *From the topcastle / swiftly*
 þat Kyng Richerd was neuer his dede so nye. *so close to his death*
- 2560 þan come seue galays at their hande *seven*
 To the dromounde full faste saylande, *sailing fast*
 And stode one borde bothe baroun & knyghte *on board stood*
 To help Kyng Richerd for to fighte.
 A full stronge batayle þan there bygan *battle / began*
 Bytwene þam and the heythyn men; *heathen*
- 2565 With suerdis, sperys and dartys kene, *swords, spears / darts*
 And flones and qwarells ay flowe bitwene *arrows / bolts / flew continuously*
 Also thikke, withowtten stynte, *As thick / pause*
 Als hayle aftere thonour dynt. *As hail / [a] thunderbolt*
- 2570 And in that bekerryng þat was so harde, *fighting*
 Into the dromound wane Kyng Richerde, *KR managed to get access*
 And when þat he was wonn in alle in haste, *had got [on board]*
 He drissed his rygg reghte to the maste. *put his back against the mast*
 And with his axe, þat he reche myghte, *[all] that he could reach*
 Full hastily to the dede he þam dighte. *brought to death*

- 2575 And some he hitt appon the bacenett, *on the helmet*
 Pat he clafe hym euen into the nekke, *cut open*
 And some into the girdill-stede, *waist*
 And some vnto the schippes borde, *to the ship's deck*
 And some appon þe halse hitt he *he hit on the neck*
 2580 þat helme and hede flewe into þe see. *helmet / head* f.140vb
 Þe Sarazenes þan, als I 3ow telle,
 Sayd he was the deuyll of helle.
 And ouer the borde þan lepped thay *they leapt*
 And drownned þamselfe, als I 3ow say. *themselves*
 2585 Sextene hundrethe he ther quellede, *he killed there*
 Bot thritty appon lyfe he helde *he kept alive*
 þat þay solde bere wisse
 Of this batelle at þe cite of Acris. *[So] that they should bear*
 He fande þan in the dromonde, sance fayle, *battle*
 2590 Full mekill store of noble vetayle, *found*
 And many a barelle of furroure Gregis, *much / supplies*
 And many a thowsande of bowes Tourkys, *many barrels / Greek fire*
 Hoked arowes, & quarells. *Turkish bows*
 Full full he fand many barells, *Hooked arrows / bolts*
 2595 And of whete full grete plente, *Quite full / found*
 Ynoughe of golde, & siluere, & of ilke daynte. *plenty of wheat*
 Of þe tresour hade he noghte þe sowme *Plenty of / precious things*
 þat in the dromounde was fownde; *he could not calculate the value*
 For it was drounede in the flode *sank / sea*
 2600 Or vnchargede was the gude. *Before the goods had been unloaded*
 Avawnced was alle Cristyante, *Advanced / the cause of*
 For had þe dromounde passede þe see *had the large ship / sea*
 And comen to Acris fro Kyng Richerde, *reached Acre [escaping] from KR*
 Ane hundrethe wyntter affirwarde, *One hundred winters [i.e. years]*
 2605 For alle the Cristyn men vnder þe sone, *All the Christians under the sun*
 Hadde noghte þe Cite of Acris bene wonn. *Would not have been able to win Acre*
- B**ot than Kyng Richerde anone righte *immediately*
 Towarde Acris he gan hym dighte. *proceeded*
 And als he sayled towarde Surry, *Syria*
 2610 He was warnede of a spy *by a spy*
 How þat þe folke of þe haythyn lawe, *heathen faith*
 A full grete cheyne had done drawe *chain*
 Ouere þe hauen of Acris fers, *harbour / boldly*
 And was festede to two pelers, *fastened / pillars*
 2615 þat no schippe solde in ther wyn *might gain access*
 Nor þay noghte owte þat is therein. *Nor those who were inside get out*
 Therefore seuen 3ere, & somedele mare, *somewhat longer*
 Alle Cristyn knyghtis þat laye there
 Ware stedde *with* grete hungre & soffrede myche pyn *Were afflicted by / much pain*
 2620 For lettyng of that ilke chyne. *hindering / same* f. 141ra
 Bot when Kynge Richerde herde þat tydyng,
 For joye his hert bygan to singe,
 And sware & seid in his thoghte: *swore*

- 'Alle that theym schall avayle righte noghte!'
 2625 A swythe strange galy than he toke, *will not help them*
 And Trenchemere, so says the booke, *very strong galley*
 He steryde the galy righte eyn *steered*
 Into the middis of the hauen. *middle of the harbour*
 And ware the maryners blythe or wrathe, *whether the sailors were glad or angry*
 2630 He garte þam saile and rowe bathe *made them both*
 þat the galy went alswa swyfte, *as fast*
 Als any foule by the lifte. *bird / air*
 And Kyng Richerde, þat was so gude,
 With his noble axe in the forschippe stode. *stood on the prow*
 2635 And when he come vnto the cheyne, *came*
 With his axe he smate it in twayne, *in two*
 þat alle the barouns, verrament, *certainly*
 Sayden it was ane hugge dynt. *Said / [made] a loud noise*
 And for joye of that ilke dede, *same deed*
 2640 The coppes full faste abowte zede *cups / went about*
 With gude wyne, pyment, & clarre, *sweetened, spiced wine / liquor*
 And saylede forthe to Acres, þe citee.
 Kyng Richerde owte of his galy
 Caste wilde fyre into the sky,
 2645 And fire Gregeys also into the see, *Greek fire*
 Als alle one fire brynte solde bee. *on fire / burned*
 The trompes zoden in his galy, *trumpeters proceeded [to blow]*
 þat men myghte þam here into þe sky. *hear*
 Gunnys he hade made one wondir wyes, *Siege engines / appearance*
 2650 Hedouse mangonells & of full grete prys, *Terrifying catapults / renown*
 Alblastirs, and bowes made with gyn *Crossbows / ingenuity*
 The Haly Lande alle for to wynn.
 Bot ouer alle other, full wittirly, *above all / truly*
 A milne he hade made of grete maistry *mill / wonderfully crafted work*
 2655 In middis a schipe for to stande; *In the middle*
 Swilke anothir ne sawe zit neuer no man in lande. *Such / no man ever saw*
 And foure sailes were ordeyned þerto:
 Zalowe, & rede, and grene, & bloo, *yellow / blue*
 With canvays were þay layde abowte, *fully covered*
 2660 Full sekire *within* & eke *withowte*. *securely*
 And alle *within* weren full of fire,
With torches made of waxe full clere,
 Ouerethrowte and also endlange. *pure wax* f. 141rb
 With strynges of wire weren wele hyngande *Crosswise / lengthwise*
 2665 Stonys that dide no noþer note, *were hanging*
 And grande þay noþer corne ne grote, *Stones / had no other function*
 Bot rubbyd, als þoghe þay were wode, *[the stones] ground / neither grain / nor meal*
 And owte at þe eghe rane there rede blode. *But ground / they [i.e. the stones] / mad*
 And byfore the trowghe there stode ane, *eye [i.e. the hole at the centre of a millstone]*
 2670 Alle bloody abowte he was bygane, *trough / stood one*
 And hornnes grete he hade appon his hede; *covered*
 þe Sarazenes weren of hym sore afferde, *big horns*
 For þat it was appon þe myrke nyghte, *afraid*
dark

- 2675 *perfore þay were alle awondrede of þat sighte:* *marvelled*
 His taile to þe erthe he droughe,
 þe Sarazenes had þan sorow ynoghe, *much sorrow*
 And saide þan it was þe fende of helle *the Devil*
 þat was comen þam alle to quelle; *kill*
 For þe robbynge of the stonys,
 2680 þay wende it hade bene mannes bones. *grinding*
 Bot a littill byfore the daye, *believed*
 Clenly alle was done awaye. *removed*
- K**ying Richerd, aftir that mervayle, *wonder*
 Went swithe to lande, sance faile.
- 2685 The Kying of France agayne hym went *toward*
 And in his armes he hym hent, *seized*
 And kissed hym *with* grete honoure,
 And so dide bothe kynges and emperoure.
 Alle þe kynges of Cristyndome
- 2690 Lay ther full lange or Kying Richerd come; *long before*
 þay laye there seuen 3ere, I vndirstande,
 Or Kying Richerde come to that lande.
 And ther the Erchbischope of Pys *Archbishop of Pisa*
 Did to Kying Richerde there his seruyce,
- 2695 And ledden hym, als 3e may see, *led*
 Into a pauelyoun full preualy, *pavilion privately*
 And talde hym a dolefull tale
 Of schrewede auntsours, *withowtten* faile. *dreadful misfortune*
- 2700 'Kying Richerde,' he sayde, 'herkyn nowe here, *listen*
 This segge has lastede þis seuen 3ere. *siege*
 It ne may noghte forthe, be þou bolde, *may not continue, you can be sure*
 For mekill is the sorowe þat we hafe tholed. *much / suffered* f.141va
 For we ne hade no maner of halde ne castelle, *hold or castle*
 Sothely, *sir*, als I the telle, *certainly*
- 2705 Bot a wyde dyke & a depe *ditch / a deep [one]*
 Was made al abowte vs in to kepe,
 With grete berbycanes, for þe nonnes, *fortifications*
 Full wele wroghte *with* harde stones. *built*
- 2710 And when þat dyke was alle wele made,
 Saladyn, the sowdane, was þan full glade *sultan*
 And come one vs *with* full grete rowte, *on / company*
 And vmbyssett vs alle abowte. *besieged*
 And with hym *Sir* Markys Mawferaunt, *Marquis of Montferrat*
 þat leuys one Mawhoun and Termagaunt. *believes in*
- 2715 He was a Cristyn kyng somwhile, *some time ago*
 Bot he dose till vs mare schame & gyle *does / more*
 þan dose the sowdane and alle his oste.
 Now the Fadir, & þe Sone, & þe Holy Goste
- 2720 Graunt hym grace of werldis schame, *Grant him the grace of world's shame*
Sir Markys Feraunt, by his name!
 Oure firste batelle now, sekirly, *certainly*
 Was welle strange and welle ded[1]y *strong / deadly*

	And wele faughte oure Cristyn knyghtis, And slewe the Sarazenes downnrightis.	<i>fought</i>	
2725	Oure Cristyn haden ther the maystry, And the Sarazenes fledde, <i>with wa & crye</i> ; For we slewe full many of þam thoo, And þay full fele of vs also.	<i>had / victory</i> <i>woe</i> <i>there</i> <i>very many</i>	
2730	And I sall telle the thorowe whatt case For to many a man felle sorowe, allas! Als that we dide the Sarazenes to dede, Byfelle that a noble stede Owte rane allane fro a paynyme, Our Cristyn faste folowede after hym.	<i>through / incident</i> <i>sorrow befell</i> <i>brought the S. to death</i> <i>It happened</i> <i>alone / heathen</i>	
2735	The Sarazenes sees þat þay come, And flowe one side, alle and some, And come one vs <i>with</i> stronge fighte, And slewe many Cristyn men downrighte.	<i>saw / were coming</i> <i>fled / all of them</i> <i>came on us</i>	
2740	And ther we loste, or we it wiste, The beste bodies vndir Criste: The Erle Ferres of Englande, Was noghte a doghetiere knyght of hande, And þe Emperour of Almayne, And Jeryn, þe Erle of alle Lawe Spayne,	<i>before we knew it</i> <i>men</i> <i>doughtier</i>	
2745	And elleuen thowsande of oure menze, There was slayne <i>with</i> grete pite. And thereof was þe sowdane full glade, And one þe morne a newe assawte he made; þay garte þan take alle þe corpes,	<i>Low Spain</i> <i>army</i> <i>were</i> <i>in the morning</i> <i>corpses</i>	f.141vb
2750	Bothe of dede men & of horse, And caste þam into þe watir of oure welle Vs for to poysoun & for to quelle. Dide he neuere no werse a dede To Cristyn men for nonekyns nede;	<i>To poison and kill us</i> <i>deed</i> <i>no kind of need</i>	
2755	For thurgh þat poysone & þat stynke, Fourty thousande was slayne, als I thynke. And aftirwarde nowe it es noghte to hide, þe thirde case vs gan betyde.	<i>incident / happened</i> <i>was coming</i> <i>plenty of wheat</i>	
2760	A schipe come saylande one the see, Charged <i>with</i> whete, full grete plente, <i>With</i> wilde fire, and arowes bryghte, To helpe þe Sarazenes for to fyghte. Oure Crystyn toke to rede, sance faile, þay wolde go to & it assaile;	<i>decided</i> <i>attack it</i>	
2765	And soo þay dide to þaire damage. þe wynde blewe full harde, & <i>with</i> grete rage, þe Sarazenes thane drewe vpe þaire saile, And ouersailede oure folkes, <i>withowtten</i> faile.	<i>they inflicted damage on themselves</i>	
2770	And there we loste fourty score Of the beste bodies þat euer were bore. This was þe bygynnyng of oure care, þat we hafe hadde seuen zere & mare.	<i>overwhelmed</i> <i>[i.e. eight hundred]</i> <i>men / born</i> <i>sorrow</i> <i>years / more</i>	

	And 3it, <i>Sir Kynge</i> , þou salle here mare þat vs hase greued wondir sare.	<i>hear more sorely</i>	
2775	One a Seynt John daye, verrament, þe Sarazenes owte of Acris went Wele a myle owte one syde, And pighte pauelyouns rownde & wyde, And sogeorunyde there a full longe while,	<i>[i.e. 24 June]</i>	
2780	And alle it was vs to begyle. Oure Cristyn men, þat weryn wighte, Erles, barouns, sqwyere, & knyghte. The Sarazenes weren prowde & hade reches, And we of alle gudes grete nede & distresse;	<i>pitched stayed deceive brave</i>	
2785	We thoghte to wynne vnto oure praye Off that tresoure and that noblaye. Thane fourty thowsande men armyd full wele, Bothe in iryn and in stele, Went thane forthe to batellynge;	<i>wealth</i>	
2790	And the Sarezenes sees of þaire commynge, And flede one syde full suythe faste. And oure men come one in haste, And gane to ryde with grete rawndoun To þay come to þaire pauelyoun	<i>booty wealth</i>	f. 142ra
2795	And þay fande þerin no manere of forehede, And þerfore þay wende þat þay hade fled for drede. And ther they fonde whete, brede, & wynes, Golde, and siluer, and bawdkyns. And vesselle of siluer, & cowppes of golde, 3a, mekill mare than they take wolde. And some stode, and oþer some satt þam doun, And ete, & dranke full grete foysoun. And aftir mete, their pauelyouns newe, With their suerdys doun þay hewe.	<i>the assault saw immediately came rode / speed Until / came / pavilions found / army thought</i>	
2800	And charged horses with vetayle, Als nyce men, withowtten faile, Gold and siluere and clothis white, And with their girdills togedir knytt. When þat ilke man hade þaire chargynge, þan hame þay walde, withowtten taryynge.	<i>rich textiles</i>	
2805	The Sarazenes one þaire wendynge, [And comen afftyr faste flyngyng,] ² At schorte wordis, a full grete rowte, And vmbyssett oure Cristyn alle abowte.	<i>Indeed, much more some others sat plenty the meal, their [i.e. the Saracens'] swords / cut packed / provisions foolish</i>	
2810	And thane some thaire malys doun caste, And with the Sarazenes faughte full faste. And there we loste fourty thowsande Ful noble men and hardy of hande. And this case greuede vs so sare,	<i>belts / fastened every man / burden would [come] home / delay their [i.e. the Christian's] departure came running fast Briefly, a great horde surrounded bags / threw fought</i>	f. 142rb
2815		<i>incident / grieved / bitterly</i>	

² Missing in B, supplied from C p. 30^b. Thornton, or his exemplar, must have failed to copy the line, which is necessary to make the passage intelligible.

- 2820 We wende ilkane haue bene forfare. *thought everything / destroyed*
 Bot God, þat is almyghty kyng,
 He sent vs sone socourynge: *soon sent us help*
 The doughety Erle of Champayne, *William of Champagne*
 And þe gud knyghttis of Bretayne, *Brittany*
- 2825 And *Sir* Raundolfe de Glamauylls, *Ranulf de Glanville*
 John the Nele, and his brodir Miles. *Jean de Neles*
 And Bawdewyne, a clerke full mery, *Baldwin*
 And the Ersbischope of Cantirbery, *Archbishop of Canterbury*
 And with hym come his eme nowe, *nephew*
- 2830 A b[a]roun of full grete vertue,
 Hubert Gawnntir of Ynglan[d]e, *Hubert Walter*
 Agayne the Sarazenes for to stande.
 And many a knyghte of Hungry, *Hungary*
 And othere full noble cheualry, *knights*
- 2835 þan helde we full strange batayle,
 Bot a full harde case vs felle, sance fayle. *fierce battles*
 At Michaelmes, as it myghte be talde, *event / happened to us / without doubt*
 þe whethire was waxen full swythe calde, *[i.e. 29 September] / told*
 And than it felle bothe rayne & hayle, *weather became very cold*
- 2840 And snawe fyue fote depe, sance fayle,
 Thownour, levynnyng, & whethir full toughe; *snow / five feet deep*
 For hungreoure folkes full faste it slough,
 For hungre we loste, & for calde wyndys, *Thunder, lightning / severe weather*
 Ofoure folkes sixty thowsandes. *killed*
- 2845 And thanoure noble horses we sloughe, *killed*
 Sethide, and ete the guttis toughe. *Boiled / guts*
 þe flesche was delte *with* grete deynte;
 þerof, iwysse, no man hade plente. *shared out with great ceremony*
 To peces, iwysse, þay kerued alle þe hede, *pieces / carved / heads*
- 2850 And one þe coles we garte theym sprede,
 And in the watir we boyled the blode; *charcoal*
 And that vs thoghte mete full gude. *We thought it was a good meal* f.142va
 A quarter of whete þan men vs saulde *wheat / sold*
 For lx pownde þan of penys taulde. *60 pounds / counted money*
- 2855 For fourty pounce men saulde ane oxe,
 And 3it was he bot of a littill waxe. *yet / stature*
 A swyne for a hundrethe floryne, *florins*
 A gose for halfe a marke of golde fyne. *goose / 3 lbs of pure gold*
 For ane hene, slyke tythyng, *a hen / such yielding*
- 2860 Men gafe of penys ten schelyng.
 And for ane ege penys elleuenn, *ten shillings of their money*
 And for a pere sex or seuenn. *egg / eleven pence*
 For ane appille penys sex; *pear*
 And thus biganeoure folke to vnwaxe, *apple / six pence*
 And died for wa & for hungre sare. *decrease in vigour*
- 2865 þe riche men þan toke þaire rede thare,
 A riche dale þat þay wolde dighte *woe / painful hunger*
 To barouns and to ilke poure knyghte. *advice*
 Twelue penys men gaffe to ilke pore knyghte, *alms distribution / get ready*
gave / every poor

- 2870 And sex penys to oþer þat were not so mekil of myghte, *great*
 And iiij penys to þe smalle wightis, *four pence / commoners*
 And thus the riche men þair dale dightis. *their alms*
 And therwith bothe the more & the lesse, *richer / poorer*
 Boghte theym flesche of horse & asse. *Bought / horse- and donkey-meat*
- 2875 Þay myghte hafe no noþer thyng, *[Neither] for French nor for English silver coins*
 For wheit tornys, ne sterlynge. *told you*
 Now hafe I taule the, *Sir Kyng*, full faire, *grief*
 Off oure folkes and alle oure care, *host*
 And alle the damage of Acris oste. *loved*
- 2880 There louyde now be the Holy Goste,
 And Mary that bare oure lord Jhesu,
 That thou arte nowe comyn amanges vs!
 For thurgh thi helpe we hope full snelle *are / among*
 The Sarazenes boste downn to felle. *through / very quickly*
 King Richerd than wepe *with* his eghne bothe, *pride*
 And sythen he seid thus: ‘*Sir*, forsothe, *wept / eyes*
 Sir Bischope,’ he said, ‘prey 3e for vs *then / in truth*
 þat we may hafe helpe of oure lorde Jhesu *pray*
 His fase alle clenly for to distroye, *foes / completely*
 þat þay na mare vs anoye!’ *no more*
- 2890 Kyng Richerde than lepe appon his stede, *leapt on*
 And prikked owte of that forehede. *spurred / company*
 And rode abowte the close dyke, *moat* f.142vb
 Towarde Acris, full sekiryke, *certainly*
- 2895 Till he come to the Hospitalle *Until he came*
 Of Seyne John, als I fynde in tale,
 And there he sett his paelyoun.
 And areryde his Mategriffoun;
 þat was a tre-castelle full fyn *set up / [i.e. his siege tower]*
 To assawte the prowde Saraþyne *siege tower / excellent*
 That he myghte see into þe cite of Acris, *assault*
 And he hade broghte twelue schippes ful of bees.
 When the castell was framyde wele, *joined*
 And sett therin a gud mawngonelle, *catapult*
- 2905 Thane he comande his men belyve, *quickly*
 To feche vp many bee-hyve, *fetch / bee-hives*
 And bette one tabrouns & trompes blawe *beat on / drums / blow horns*
 To assawte the cite in a thrawe. *quickly*
 Bot than Kyng Richerd into Acris cite *And*
- 2910 Keste those hyves full grete plente. *Threw*
 The whedir was hate in somers tyde, *weather / hot / summer time*
 Those bees braste owte one euery syde *burst*
 And were anoyed & full of grame, *furious*
 And dide those Sarazenes full mekill schame; *much damage*
- 2915 For þay þam tangede in the vesage, *stung / face*
 þat alle the Sarazenes were nere rage. *almost mad*
 þay saide: ‘Kyng Richerd was wele felle *wicked*
 When þat his flyes bitys so snelle.’ *bees / fiercely*
 And anoper thyng gane Kyng Richerd vp [sett]

- 2920 Pat men callede a Robynett;
 A strange gyn, for the nones, *strong machine*
 Pat keste into Acris full harde stonys. *threw*
 Bot than Kyng Richerd, þe Conquerour,
 Called in haste to hym his mynour, *miner*
- 2925 And bad hym myn vp to þe heghe toure *mine / high tower*
 þat is callede Maudit Colour; *Accursed Tower*
 And sware his athe, by Seynt Symoun: *oath*
 Bot it were broghte sone adoun, *Unless / soon down*
 By none, and also þe vttermaste walle, *noon / outermost*
- 2930 He solde hym hewe in pecys smalle. *cut / small pieces*
 þe mynours than bigan to myn full faste,
 And engynis grete stanys & bees into caste. *siege engines cast great stones / into [Acre]*
 þe Sarazenes than theym armed alle,
 And rane in haste vppon the walle.
- 2935 I[n] white schetis þay gane theym gise, *sheets / covered themselves*
 For the bityng of his flyes. *bees*
 And seid: 'This mane dose vs grete pyne,
 þat thus vs bothe thrawes & myne. *shoots and undermines*
 We ne saughe neuer no mane so bygyn, *saw*
- 2940 It is grete dowte he will vs wynn!' *great fear*
 Kyng Richerde stode in his Matgriffoun, *stood*
 And sawe alle their dedis in þe toun; *deeds*
 And whedirwardes the Sarazenes flewe, *in all directions / fled*
 And archers arowes amanges þam threwe, *threw arrows among them*
- 2945 And alblastereres garre ga full smerte, *crossbow-men went / fiercely*
 Thurgh legges, armes, hedis, & hert. *heads / heart*
 The Franche men, *with* grete noblaye, *nobility*
 Helpede to myn that ilke same daye;
 þaire vttermaste walle was doun ycaste, *mine [under the walls]*
 2950 And many Sarazenes died there in haste. *outermost wall / razed*
 þat day Kyng Richerd so spede there, *achieved so [much]*
 þat he was haldyn for a conquerere; *before noon*
 For bettir he spede þat daye or none
 Than alle othere in seuen 3ere hade done.
- 2955 The Sarazenes than no lengare myghte dure, *longer / hold out*
 Bot they flewe vp into the heghe toure, *fled / high tower*
 And lighted torches abowte þe walle *lit*
 þat men myghte it [sene] þe contre ouer alle. *all over the region*
 The torches keste so grete a lighte,
- 2960 For that bytakenyde a newe fighte *indicated / attack*
 þat was comyn fro Ynglande,
 þat þay ne mygthe noghte agayn stande *they could not stand against*
 Bot giffe that Saladyn, the sowdane, *Unless*
 Come þam to helpe with many mo men. *Came to help them*
- 2965 And Saladyn was ten myle thethyn, *from there*
 And sees the torches so bryghte bryne.
 Bot than he gedirde folkes togedir,
 Als thik als rayne in wate wedire. *And then / gathered*
 And they assembled appon a playne, *as rain in wet weather*

f.143ra

- 2970 Besyde Acres, one a mountayne:
Sexti thowsande fotemen, als I fynde. *foot soldiers*
And kneches of haye he garte þam bynde, *bundles / made them bind*
And go byfore full hastilyke
For to fill þe Cristynmens dyke. *ditch*
- 2975 And righte there þay token to rede, *decided*
To do alle Crystyn-men to þe dede. *put all Christians to death*
And aftir þam come barouns & knyghtis, *came* f.143rb
Ane hundrethe thowsande full strong *in* fightis.
By ordre þay come in þaire maners, *In order / as was their custom*
- 2980 And of rede sendale weren þaire baners *red silken fabric*
With thre griffouns [depaintede] wele,
And of azure a grete bendelle. *blue / stripe*
And sone aftir þam com also many *came*
Of barouns þam aftir *in* gentill company;
- 2985 þaire consyance & þaire pensels *emblems / pennons*
Weren wroghte alle of grene sendelle, *woven / green silken fabric*
And on euerilkon a dragoun, *each one*
Als þoghe he faughte *with* a lyoun. *As though / were fighting*
þe firste was rede, & this was grene, *& the second*
- 2990 þan come the thirde aftir byhynde
With fyve & sixty thowsande knyghtis,
In ynde armede at alle rightis. *In indigo*
And aftir þam, als whitte als snawe, *white as snow*
Come fifty thowsande, one a rawe, *all told*
- 2995 And theym amange was *Sir* Saladyn, *among them*
And his eme also, *Sir* Rabolyne. *nephew*
þaire baners were whyte, *withowtten* fable, *in truth*
With thre Sarazene hedis the consyable, *heads as the emblem*
þat weren yschapede full noble & large, *portrayed*
- 3000 Of balain both schelde and targe, *whalebone / shield and buckler*
Noo manne ne couthen telle the rowtte *Nobody could count the army*
þat þan bysett the Cristyne al abowte. *surrounded*
- T**he fotemen keste in knechis of haye *foot soldiers / threw in [the ditch] bundles*
To make þe horsemen redy waye, *a way across for the horsemen*
- 3005 And fillide þe dyke alle vp righte,
þat þe horsemen wele entyre myghte. *[So] that / enter*
The Sarazenes hade nerehande entred in, *almost gained access*
Warne God of heuen had to þam seene. *Had not God taken care of them*
- 3010 The crye rase þan amanges the Cristyn, *rose*
And knyghttis hafe þaire armours takyn,
And sayden: 'Bot if we haue þe bettir socoure,
We be forlorne by Saynte Sauour!' *said / Unless / help*
And ther myghte men see many wighte man *will be destroyed*
þat hastily to þaire armours wane, *brave men*
got to
- 3015 And went full qwikly to the dyke
And defendide it full manlyke; *manly*
Bot there was many a gentill heuede, *noble head*
Full hastily fra þaire bodies wevede. *severed*

- 3020 Scheldis felle & schuldurs in twaa,
And many stedis stekide als wa,
And many a knyghte lese his armys,
And many a stede drewe after þam þaire tharmes,
And many a doughty man, sance faile,
There was slayne in that batayle.
- 3025 Bot Kyng Richerde laye full seke thane,
And that alle Cristyndome myghte banne.
He ne myghte noghte owte of his bedde stirre,
And therefore þay made alle full heuy chere.
And therefore þe Kyng of Frawnce lete crye
- 3030 Amanges alle Cristyn company
þat none ne scholde, for dedis dowte,
Noghte ne passe the dike withowtte,
Bot halde þam alle it withinn,
þat þe Sarazenes ne scholde þam wynn.
- 3035 And þay þat were in comyn
Of the Sarazenes þat were nommen,
þat hastily þat þay were done to dede;
For þam þat noþer go rawnsone ne mede.³
Bot why þat Kyng Richerd so seke laye,
- 3040 Herkenys þe skille and I will saye:
It was for þe trauelle he haued had one þe see,
And also for the stronge ayere of þe contree,
And also for the unkindly calde & hote,
And metis & drynkis þat were noghte swete
- 3045 To his complexyouns þat he þer fande
Als he was wounte in Ynglande.
þan Kyng Richerd bade his folke sold seche
Somwhare aftir some gude wyse leche,
Whethir þat he were Cristyn or Sarazyne,
- 3050 And þay gane loke one his vryn,
And ilkane sayd ther to his avyse,
Bot þer ne was nane of þam so wyse
þat myghte garre his sorowes sesse,
Nor of his paynes to hafe relese.
- 3055 Bot than full sary weren oure Cristyn Ynglis,
For þat þair lorde laye in so grete anguys,
And so weryn alle þe Cristyn men eke
For þat Kyng Richerd laye so sare seke.
One knes þan preyed þe Cristyn oste
- 3060 To God þe Fadir, & þe Sone, & þe Holy Goste,
By nyghte & daye in gude atent:
'Send to Kyng Richerd a gud amendement!'
And so thurgh preyere of lady dere,
Hir dere sone graunted for hir preyere,
- 3065 That thurgh his grace & heghe vertu
He torned owte of his agu.

shoulders / two f.143va
horses were killed
lost their weapons
entrails

But then / sick
curse

they were all very sorrowful
proclaimed

fear of death

hold
should not

captured
put to death

sick

Listen / reason
rigours of the sea-journey
air / region

unnatural cold & heat
food & drink / not agreeable
humours / found there
was accustomed

to seek out
physician

No matter if he were
inspected his urine

everyone / gave his opinion
there was none

make / end
release him from his pains

And / sorrowful
anguish

too

painfully sick

On their knees / host

faithfully
recovery

through / dear lady [i.e. Mary] f.143vb
son

high virtue
came out / fever

³ Neither ransom nor payment will be accepted for them.

	To mete had he haued no sauour, To wyne ne to watir ne to no lycoure. Bot aftir porke hym sore langede, 3070 And giff þat his [men] solde bene hangede, þay ne myghte, in that contree, For golde ne siluere, nere no monee, No porke fynde, noþer take ne gete, þat Kyng Richerd myghte of ete. 3075 Bot ane alde knyghte was <i>with</i> Richerd þe kyng, And when he wiste of that tythyng, Full wele he wiste þat Kyng Richerd manners wer [slyke]: ⁴ To þe stiewarde he spake full preualyke, 3080 'Oure lorde ligges full sore seke, ywysse, And aftir porke hym sore langes or this, And 3e ne may none fynde to selle Bot lokes þat no man be so hardy hym to telle. And giff þat 3e do, he will dy this daye! And 3ow buse do als I 3owe saye, 3085 þat no man ne wiete noghte of that: Take a Sarazyne, 3onge and fatt, And in haste the thefe be slayne here, þat he þerof may ete his dynere. And lokes þat 3e sethe it full hastily, 3090 With powdir righte gude, & spysorye, And also <i>with</i> saferonne of gude coloure. And when þat Kyng Richerd felis þat sauour, Owte of his agu & he be went. He sall therto hafe full gud talent 3095 When he hase therof wele ytaste, And also etyn a full gud repaste, And suppes of the brothe a sope, Thane slepe he schall full wele, I hope. And by Goddes myghte, & my consayle, 3100 Ful sone he schall be sounde & hale.' Bot the sothe to saye at wordis fewe, Full sodeynly slayne was þat heythyn schrewe, And bifore Kyng Richerd þan was he broghte. Now quod his folkes: 'Loo, <i>Sir</i> , we hafe porke soghte, 3105 Etis nowe, and suppis þeroffe a souppe, And thurghe Cristys myghte it schall be thi bote.' [Beffore Kyng Rychar, karf a kny3te, He eet faster þan he kerue my3te. þe kyng eet þe flesch & gnew þe bones, 3110 & drank wel afftyr, for þe nones. And whene he hadde eeten inow3, Hys folk hem tournyd away & low3. He lay styllle, & drow3 <i>in</i> hys arme, Hys chaumbyrlayn hym wrappyd warme.	<i>He had no appetite for food Or wine longed Even if / were to be hanged could not / region [Neither] for / money Find any pork eat an old knew / news privately lies very ill has longed / before to buy so brave to tell him It seems / if you do that Therefore you must knows young rascal [must] be killed [So] that he [i.e.KR] / dinner boil it pepper / spices saffron tastes He will recover from his fever shall / appetite tasted eaten / meal swallowed a mouthful / soup he shall sleep healthy to tell the truth Immediately / heathen devil Eat / sip through / your cure a knight was carving He [i.e.KR] ate / [the knight] could carve had eaten plenty turned away / laughed drew in his arm [i.e. fell asleep]</i>	
		C p.35a	
		C p.35b	

⁴ He knew very well what Richard's circumstances were.

- 3115 He lay & slepte & swette a stounde, *sweated for a while*
 And become hool & sounde. *became healthy*
 Kyn Richard cladde hym & aros, *dressed himself*
 And walkyd abouten *in* þe clos.
 To alle folk he hym schewyd, *showed himself*
- 3120 Glad was boþe leryd & lewyd, *both learned & lay*
 And þankyð Jhesu & Marye, *thanked*
 þat he was out off his maladye. *illness*
 þe Sarezynes spedde day & nyzt *night*
 þe dyke to wynne *with* here myzt. *To win the ditch / their might*
- 3125 þe barbycanes þey felden adoun, *fortified bridge / felled down*
 And hadden nyzt entryd *in* þe comoun. *had almost entered*
 Whenne Kyng Richard þeroff herde, *heard that*
 As a wood man he spak & ferde: *mad / spoke & behaved*
 ‘Armes me *in* myn armure, *Arm me*
- 3130 For loue off Cryst, oure creature, *creator*
 To fyzte I haue gret delyte *fight / desire*
 Wip houndes þat wil vs do despyte. *houndes [i.e. infidels] / insult us*
 Now I me fynde hool & lyzt, *I find myself healthy & free of pain*
 þis day schal I proue my myzt
- 3135 3iff I be strong as I was wone, *If / I am as / used to be*
 And 3iff I strokes dele cone, *I can deal strokes*
 As I was wunt *in* Yngeland, *accustomed*
 Haue I myn ax *in* myn hand, *Having my axe*
 Al þat I mete schal me fele, *shall fell all that I meet*
- 3140 And swylk dole I schal hem dele, *such pain / them*
 þat euere for loue off here Mahoun *their god*
 þey schole haue here warysoun.’ *their reward*
 He was armyd to alle ryztes, *armed completely*
 And hys footemen, squyers, & knyzttes, *And [so did] his footsoldiers*
- 3145 And þe Crystene alle bedene; *one and all*
 Wondyr was þat hoost to sene. *see that army*
 þe soþe to say & nouzt to hele, *To tell the truth / nothing to hide*
 þe heþene were twoo so fele. *heathen / twice as fierce*
- O**ure kyng among þe Sarezynes ryt, *cut through*
- 3150 And some to þe sadyl he slyt, *he cut in half to the saddle*
 A kyng he hytte aboue þe scheeld, *head & helmet flew / field*
 þat hed & helm fleyzt into þe feeld, *[such] a stroke dealt*
 Anoper he had a strok ibrouzt *did not help him*
 þat al hys armure halp hym nouzt, *cut open / fourth*
- 3155 Into þe sadyl he cleff þe ferþe, *flew / to the ground*
 Al þat he smot it fleyzt to þe erþe. *the Christian community was glad*
 Blyþe was þe Crystene felawrede, *deeds*
 Off Kyng Richard & off hys dede,
 For non armour wipstood hys ax,
- 3160 No more þan a knyff dos *in* þe wax. *No more than wax withstands a knife*
 Whenne þe sawdon seyzt hym so strong, *sultan saw*
 He sayde þe deuyl was hem among; *among them*
 For Kyng Richard ryzt doun slowzt. *slew [Saracens] right to the ground*

- 3165 Wip al hys hoost he hym *withdrow3*
 And fley3 quyk *with* hys barounnage
 Into a toun men calles Gage,
 But sertes, al þe rerewarde
 Was islayn wip Kyng Rycharde.
 þe Sarezynys þat *in* Acres ware,
 3170 Were anoyyd & full off care,
 Whene þey sey3en þe sawdon flee
 And Kyng Richard dounry3t slee.
 þus al þe day tyl it was ny3t
 þey & þe Crystene heeld þe fy3t.
 3175 At euen, whenne þe sunne was set,
 Euery man drow3 to hys recet.
 þe Crystene, boþe pore & ryche,
 Wente *withinne* þe clos dyche
 To reste for þey were wery.
 3180 Kyng Richard leet make a cry
 Trusty folk þat ny3t þe paleys to kepe,
 Whyl þat opere lay & slepe.
 þe Sarezynys þat were *withouten*,
 Off Kyng Richard so sore hem douten
 3185 For he hadde þe prys iwunne,
 Away þay ryden & swyþe runne
 þat ny3t to fle & to hyde,
 þat non off hem durste hym abyde
 þe mountenaunce off ten myle.
 3190 When Kyng Richard hadde restyd a whyle,
 A kny3t hys armes gan vnlace;
 Hym to counfforte & solace,
 Hym was brou3t a sop *in* wyn.
 ‘þe hed off þat ylke swyn
 3195 þat I off eet,’ þe cook he bad,
 ‘For feble I am, feynt & mad.
 Off myn euyl now I am fere,
 Serue me þerwith at my soper.’
 Quod þe cook: ‘þat hed I ne haue.’
 3200 þerne sayde þe kyng: ‘So God me saue,
 But I see þe hed off þat swyn,
 Forsoþe, þou schalt lese þyn!’
 þe cook sey3 non opir may bee,
 He fette þe hed & leet hym see,
 3205 He fel on knees, & made a cry:
 ‘Loo here þe hed, my lord, mercy!’
 Hys swarte vys whenne þe kyng seep,
 Hys blake berd & hys whyte teep,
 Hou hys lypys grennyd wyde:
 3210 ‘What deuyl is þis?’ þe kyng cryde,
 And gan to law3e as he were wood.
 ‘What, is Sarezynys flesch þus good
 & neuere erst I nou3t wyste?
- he [i.e. the sultan] retreated
 fled quickly*
*certainly / rear-guard
 slain by KR
 were
 grieved / sorrow
 saw
 slaying [Saracens] to the ground*
*They [i.e. the Saracens] / kept the fight going
 In the evening / sun
 drew / refuge
 both poor
 the moat*
*gave an order
 to watch the palisade
 While the others
 outside
 were very afraid of KR
 had won the battle
 [That] rode away / ran fast*
*dared to remain
 Within ten miles of him*
*loosened the laces of his armour
 To comfort & ease him
 a piece of bread soaked in wine
 head / same swine
 ate before / ordered*
*my illness / afraid
 supper
 Said / do not have*
*Unless
 Certainly, you shall lose yours
 saw that he could not do otherwise
 fetched
 He [i.e. the cook] / cried
 Behold
 dark face / saw
 black beard
 lips / grinned*
*laughed / mad
 before / I knew [it]*
- C p.36b
C p.37a

- 3215 By Goddys deþ & hys vpryste,
 Schole we neuere dye for defawte
 Whyl we may, *in any assawte*,
 Slee Sarezynys, þe flesch mowe taken,
 Seþen & roste hem & doo hem baken,
 Gnawen here flesch to þe bones.
 3220 Now I haue it prouyd ones,
 For hungyr ar I be woo,
 I & my folk schole eete moo!’
 On þe morwe, *withouten fayle*,
 þe cyte þey gunne for to assayle.
 3225 þe Sarezynes myzte nouzt endour,
 þey fledde into þe heyze tour
 And cryeden: ‘Trewes & parlement!’
 To Kyng Richard, þat was so gent,
 And alsoo to þe Kyng off Fraunce,
 3230 & bad mercy, *withoff here dystaunse*;
 Anon stood vp here latymer
 And cryede lowde wip voys cler:
 ‘Heris,’ he sayde, ‘gentyllordynges,
 I 3ow brynge goode tydynges
 3235 þat Saladyn 3ow sent by me:
 He wole þat Acres 3olde bee,
 And Jerusalem into 3oure hand,
 And off Surry al þe land
 To flum Jordan, þe water clere,
 3240 For ten þousand besauntes be 3ere.
 And 3yff þat 3e wole nouzt soo,
 3e schole haue pes for eueremoo,
 So þat 3e make Kyng off Surry
 Markes Feraunt off gret maystry;
 3245 For he is strengeste man, ywis,
 Off Crystyndom & off heþenys.’
 Þene answeyrd Kyng Richard:
 ‘þou lyes,’ he sayde, ‘fyle coward
 In ylke gaderyng & in ylke a pres
 3250 Markes is fals, traytour & les,
 He has whytyd Saladynys hand
 To be Kyng off Surrye-land.
 And be þe kyng in Trynyte,
 þat traytour schal it neuere bee!
 3255 He was Crystene be my fadyr day,
 And sippen he has renayyd his lay,
 And is becomen a Sarezyn.
 þat God geue hym wel euele fyn,
 He is wurs þan an hound!
 3260 He robbyd syxty þousand pound
 Out off þe Hospytelers hand,
 þat my fadyr sente into þis land –
 þat was callyd Kyng Henry –

death / resurrection
We should / die / lack [of food]
attack
Slay / take [their] flesh
Boil / roast them / bake them
[And] Gnaw their
tasted once
Before I am afflicted by hunger
shall eat more
The next day
began to attack
could not hold out
high tower
cried / Truce / parley
begged / without delay
their interpreter
clear voice
Listen
news
has sent you
wishes / [should] be surrendered
Syria
As far as the river Jordan
silver coins per year
if you do not want it this way
You will / peace
As long as / King of Jerusalem
Marquis of Montferrat / mastery
the strongest / certainly
the heathen world
Then
You lie / wretched
every company / battle
&[a] liar
bribed Saladin
King of Jerusalem
by the King of Trinity
never be [king]
a Christian / in my father's time
since then / renounced / his faith
has become
May God give him an evil end
worse / a dog

C p.37b

[Knights] Hospitallers'

3265	Crystene men to gouerny. I hote hym goo out off þis hoost, For I swere be þe Holy Gost, And be Marye þat bare Jhesus, Fynde I þat traytour among vs, Oþer be nyzt, oþer be dawe, 3270 Wiþ wylde hors he schal be drawe! bene answeryd þe Kyng off Fraunce To Kyng Richard, wiþouten destauce: 'A suffre, sere, bele amys, þou hast wrong, sere, be Seynt Denys, 3275 þat þou þretyst þat markis þat ye neuere 3it dede amis. 3yff he haue ony þyng don ylle He schal amende it at þy wylle. I am hys borw3: Loo, here þe gloue, 3280 Tak it, leue sere, for my loue! 'Nay,' quod Kyng Richard, 'be God my lord, Ne schal I neuere wiþ hym acord! Ne hadde neuere be lost Acres toun, Ne hadde ben þorw3 hys tresoun. 3285 3yff he zelde agayn my faderis tresour, And Jerusalem wiþ gret honour, þenne my wrapþe I hym forgeue, And neuere ellys whyl þat I leue.' Kyng Phylp was woo þerfore, 3290 But he durste speke no more, For euere he dredde off dentys hard To styrte vndyr off Kyng Richard. And whenne þe latymer herde þis, þat þe kyng louyd nouzt þe markys, 3295 'Heres,' he sayde, 'goode lordynges, I 3ow brynge oþir tydynges þat mekyl more is to 3oure wylle: þat oure folk may passe styлле Wiþ lyff & leme, hand & arme, 3300 þat non off hem haue ony harme, And we wole zelde 3ow þis toun, And þe Holy Croys with gret renoun, And syxty þousand presouns þerto, And an hundrid þousand besauntes & moo. 3305 And haue 3e schole alsoo herinne Ryche tresore & mekyl wynne Helmes & hawberkes syxty þousynd, And oþer ryhchesse I may 3ow fynde: Whete inow3 & oþir tresore, 3310 To al 3oure hoost seuene 3er & more. And 3iff 3e wole nouzt þis fonge, We may kepe 3ow out ful longe And euere to fynde on off oures	<i>to rule the Christians order / to leave this army by bore Should I find C p.38a Either at night or at dawn drawn certainly Ah, patience, sire, noble friend you have [done] wrong threaten / marquis never did you any harm If he has done anything wrong your will surety / Here is my glove dear sire said / by Acre would have never been lost had it not been through If / gives back / father's treasure And [surrenders] I [shall] forgive him Otherwise never as long as I live upset dared speak was afraid of hard blows [He might] receive at KR's hands interpreter did not approve of Listen other news much / your liking leave in peace life and limb C p.38b none of them / any we would surrender to you of great renown prisoners silver coins you will have in here many riches helmets & mail shirts plenty of wheat To [keep] your host seven years should you not take this keep you out [of the walls] always / one of ours</i>
------	--	--

- 3315 For to slen ten of 3oures; *to slay*
 For we haue herinne, *withouten* fab[le], *here / without lying*
 Syxty þousand men fensable. *armed men*
 And we praye for þe loue of God,
 þat 3e wolden taken oure bode: *you would take our offer*
 Takes þe tresore more & lasse, *Take / all*
 3320 And lat vs quyt away passe.' *let us / leave without impediment*
 þenne answeyrd Kyng Richard:
 'In myn halff, I graunte þe foreward *For my part, I grant the agreement*
 So þat 3e lete vs in come, *you let us*
 It schal be don al & some.'
 3325 þey leten hem in come anon, *[the Saracens] let them / at once*
 þey token hem into hostage ylkon, *[KR's men] took each of [the Saracens]*
 And into presoun toke hem 3are. *at once*
 Olde & 3onge, lesse & mare *young / common & noble*
 Moste non out off Acres toun, *[were] unable to leave*
 3330 Tyl þat payde were here raunsoun, *their ransom was paid*
 And þe holy croys þerwiþ, *with it the true cross*
 Ar þey moste haue pes or griþ. *Before / might have / peace / truce*
 þere was founde catel strong, *[in Acre] / treasure*
 þat was delyd þe knyȝtes among; *shared out among the knights*
 3335 Cuntek was at þe in-comyng, *Quarrelling / entry [into Acre]*
 þe beste tresore hadde Richard oure kyng.
 Crystene presouns in Acres toun, *[To the] Christian prisoners*
 He gaff hem clopis gret foysoun, *gave clothes / in great abundance*
 Mete & drynk & armes bryȝte, *Food / bright armour*
 3340 And made hem fel for to fyȝte, *ready to fight*
 And took hem into hys partyes *host*
 To venge God off hys enemyes.
- K**ying Richard in Acres hadde nome *captured*
 Of Sareȝynys þat were þedir icome,
 3345 þat were hys strengeste enemys *strongest*
 Hardy knyȝtes & off most prys, *Brave knights / renown*
 Off heþenese cheff lordynges, *lords of the heathen world*
 Prynces, dukes sones, & kynges,
 Amyrallys, & many sawdan – *Emirs / sultans*
 3350 Here names nouȝt telle I can – *Their / I cannot tell*
 In presoun þey lay bounden faste. *prison / bound*
 To þe sawdon þey sente in haste:
 'We bere so manye grete cheynes,
 & þere men do vs so grete peynes,
 3355 þat we may neȝer sytte ne lye,
 But 3e vs out off presoun bye,
 And wiþ raunsoun vs helpe & borwe,
 We schole dye or þe þrydde morwe.'
 þe ryche sawdon was woo þerfore, *distressed*
 3360 Prynces, eerles, weel twoo score, *earls / [i.e. forty]*
 Amyrall, sawdon, & many lord
 Seyden: 'We rede, make acord *advise you*

C p.39a

C p.39b

- Wiþ Kyng Richard, þat is so stoute,
 For to delyuere oure chyldren oute,
 3365 þat þey ne be hongyd, ne to drawe;
 Off tresore Kyng *Richard* wole be fawe,
 þat oure chyldren may come hom hayl.
 Charges mules & hors, be oure counsayl,
 Off brende gold & off bawdekyn,
 3370 For oure heyres to make fyn,
 Men saye Englyssche loue weel gyffte.
 Off gold weel twenty mennys lyffte
 Were layd on mule & rabyte;
 Ten eerles, alle clad in samyte,
 3375 Alle olde, hore, & nouzt zungge,
 þat were weel avysy off tungge,
 To Kyng Richard þe tresore brouzte.
 On knees off grace hym besouzte:
 'þe sawdon sendiþ þe þis tresore –
 3380 & wole be þy frend for eueremore –
 For þe presouns þat þou dest neme,
 Let hem goo wiþ lyff & leme,
 Out off presoun þat þou hem lete,
 þat no man hem slee ne bete;
 3385 For alle þey are douzty vassales,
 Kynges sones, & amyrales,
 At þis tyme þe beste doande
 þat be in alle Sarezyn lande,
 And oure hoost most trustes too.
 3390 Saladyn loues hem wel alsoo,
 Lese non off hem he wolde
 Nouzt for a þousand pound off golde.'
 Kyng Richard spak *with* wurdis mylde:
 'þe gold to take, God me schylde;
 3395 Among 3ow partes euery charge.
 I brouzte in schyppes & in barge
 More gold & syluyr wiþ me
 þen has 3oure lord & swylke þree.
 To hys tresore haue I no nede,
 3400 But, for my loue, I 3ow bede
 To mete wiþ me þat 3e dwelle,
 And afftyrward I schal 3ow telle,
 þorw3 counsayl I schal 3ow answeze
 What bode 3e schal 3oure lord bere;'
 3405 þey grauntyd hym wiþ good wylle.
 Kyng Richard callyd hys marchal styлле,
 And in counsayl took hym anon,
 'I schal 3e tell what þou schal don:
 Stylly goo you to þe presoun,
 3410 þe Sarezynys off most renoun
 þat be comen off þe ryhcheste kynne,
 Priuily lat slee hem withinne,
- be neither hanged nor drawn
 would be glad
 unharmed
 Pack / by our advice
 With pure gold / silken cloths
 heirs / payment
 [Because] / love gifts very much
 The weight of twenty men in gold
 Was packed / & Arab horses
 dressed in silken clothes
 grey-haired / not young
 very prudent of speech
 [they] begged
 sultan sends you
 wishes to be your friend
 prisoners / have captured
 them go safe and sound
 prison
 slay or beat them
 all of them
 emirs
 most accomplished [warriors]
 the most trusted of our host
 them so much [that]
 he would not lose any of them
 Not even
 spoke / gently
 God forbid I take the gold
 yourselves divide / load
 silver
 & three like him
 Of his
 ask you
 To have dinner / you stay
 tell you
 With the help of [my] council
 request you shall carry to
 steward in secret
 at once
 tell you what you must do
 Covertly
 [And] The S.
 come from the richest families
 Secretly / slay them*
- C p.40a

- And ar þe hedes off þou smyte,
 Looke euery mannys name þou wryte
 3415 Upon a scrowe off parchemyn.
 And bere þe hedes to þe kechyn,
 And in a cawdroun þou hem caste,
 And bydde þe cook seþe hem faste,
 And loke þat he þe her off strypppe
 3420 Off hed, off berd, & eke off lyppe.
 Whenne we schole sytte & eete,
 Loke þat ze nouzt forgete
 To serue hem here *within* þis manere:
 Lay euery hed on a platerre,
 3425 Bryng it hoot forþ al in þyn hand,
 Vpward hys vys, þe teeþ grennand,
 And loke þat þey be nouzt rowe.
 Hys name faste aboue hys browe,
 What he hyzte, & off what kyn bor[n],
 3430 An hoot hed bryng me befor[n],
 As I were weel apayde wiþal;
 Ete þeroff ryzt faste I schal,
 As it were a tendyr chyke,
 To se hou þe oþere wyl lyke.’
 3435 þe styward, so says þe jeste,
 Anon dede þe kynges byheste.
 At noon a lauer þe waytes blewe;
 þe messangerys nouzt ne knewe
 Richardis lawe ne hys custome.
 3440 Sayde þe kyng: ‘Frendes, ze are welco[me],
 To hem he was cumpanyable.
 þey were set a syde table,
 Salt was set on but no bred,
 No watyr ne wyn, whyt ne red.
 3445 þe Sarezynes saten & gunne to stare
 & þouzten: ‘Allas, hou schal we fare?’
 Kyng Richard was set on des,
 Wiþ dukes & eerles prowde in pres.
 Fro kechene com þe fyrste cours,
 3450 Wiþ pypes, & trumpes, & tabours.
 þe styward took ryzt good zeme
 To serue Kyng *Richard* to queme,
 Lest afftir mete hym tydde harm.
 A Sarezynys hed also warme
 3455 [He] brouzte oure kyng, was it nouzt cleued,
 [H]ys name was wreten in hys forhed.
 [þ]e messangerys were seruyd soo:
 [E]uere an hed betwyxe twoo,
 [O]n þe forhed wreten hys name,
 3460 [þer]off þouzte hem but lytyl game.
 [W]hat þey were whenne þey seyen,
 [þ]e teres ran out off here eyen,

before you cut their heads off
Look that you write every man's name
a scroll of parchment
carry / kitchen
cauldron / throw them
order / to boil them
look / he [i.e. the cook] strips off the hair
head / beard / also / lip
sit & eat
do not forget
in this manner

C p.40b

Serve it up hot
face upwards / teeth grinning
they are not raw
fix his name on his forehead
he is called / family born
A hot head / in front of me
As [if] / thoroughly pleased
I shall eat
As [if] / chick
the others
steward / story
At once obeyed / order
to wash / retainers called
did not know
or his customary practice

them / friendly
sat at a

sat / stared
thought / proceed
sitting / high table
a noble company

From the kitchen came
horns / drums

care
properly
any harm befall [the steward]
very hot

it was not cut
written on his forehead
also

C p.41a

One head [to share] between two

Of that they / little delight
When they saw what they were
tears / their eyes

- [A]nd whenne þey þe lettre redde,
To be slayn ful sore þey dredde.
- 3465 **K**ying *Richard* hys eyen on hem þrewe,
Hou þey begunne to chaunge here hewe;
Fore here frendes þey sy3yd sore
þat þey hadde lost for eueremore –
Off here kynde blood þey were.
- 3470 þenne þey my3te weel forbere
For to pleye & for to ley3e,
Non off hem wolde hys mes ney3e,
Ne þeroff eeten on morsel;
þe kyng sat & beheeld fol wel.
- 3475 þe kny3t þat scholde þe kyng serue,
Wiþ a scharp knyff þe hed gan kerue,
Kying *Richard* eet wiþ herte good,
þe Sare3ynes wenden he hade be wood.
Euery man sat styll & pokyd oþir,
- 3480 þey sayden: ‘þis is þe deuelys brodir,
þat sles oure men & þus hem eetes.’
Kying *Richard* þoo nou3t forgetes
Abouten hym gan loke ful 3erne,
Wiþ wrapful semblaunt & eyen sterne;
- 3485 þe messangers þoo he bad:
‘For my loue, bes alle glad
And lokes 3e be weel at eese.
Why kerue 3e nou3t off 3oure mese,
And eetes faste as I doo?’
- 3490 Tel me why 3e louren soo?’
þey seten styll & sore quook,
þey durste neyþer speke ne look,
In þe erþe þey wolde haue crope,
To be slayn fol weel þey hope –
- 3495 þere was non answeyrd a word.
Quod *Kying Richard*: ‘Beres fro þe bord
þe mete þat 3e before hem sette,
And oþer mete before hem fette!’
Men brou3ten bred withouten bost,
- 3500 Venysoun, cranes, & good rost,
Pyment, clarre, & drynkes lype;
Kying *Richard* bad hem alle be blyþe.
Was non off hem þat eete lyste,
Kying *Richard* here þou3te wel wyste,
- 3505 And sayde: ‘Frendes, beþ nou3t squoumous,
þis is þe maner off myn hous:
To be seruyd ferst, God it woot,
Wiþ Sare3ynys hedes abouten al hoot,
But 3oure maner I ne kewe.
- 3510 As I am kyng, Crysten & trewe,
3e schole be þeroff sertayn

*read the letters [i.e. the names]
they feared*

cast

their complexion

sighed sorely

They [i.e. the heads] were of their family

refrain

laugh

wanted to be near his dish

Nor of it / one

very well

carved

ate / good heart

believed / mad

poked each other

devil's brother

slays / eats them

did not ignore those [who]

Looked at him eagerly

face / stern eyes

then he asked

be

C p.41b

do you not carve your food

you frown

sat / trembled violently

dared

wished the ground would swallow them up

they expected

Carry away / table

you set before them

bring

brought

roast

spiced wines / pleasant drinks

bade them all to be happy

wished to eat

knew well

do not be squeamish

custom of my court

first / God knows

hot

I did not know

certain

	In saff cundynt to wende agayn;	<i>safe-conduct / go</i>	
	For I ne wolde, for nobyng,	<i>do not wish</i>	
	þat wurd off me in þe world scholde spryng,	<i>word / spread</i>	
3515	I were so euyl off maneres	<i>[That] I was / bad mannered</i>	
	þat I wolde mysdoo messangeres.'	<i>would do wrong to</i>	C p.42a
	Whenne þey hadde eaten [&] þe cloþ was folde,	<i>tablecloth / folded</i>	
	Kyng <i>Richard</i> gan hem to beholde:	<i>stared at them</i>	
	On knees þey askyd leue to gon.	<i>leave to go</i>	
3520	But off hem alle was þer nouzt on,	<i>there was not one</i>	
	þat in message was þedyr come,	<i>had come to that place</i>	
	þat hym hadde leuere haue ben at home	<i>had preferred to have been</i>	
	Wip wyff, frendes & here kynde,	<i>their family</i>	
	þenne al þe good þat was in Ynde.	<i>Than [to have] / India</i>	
3525	Kyng Rychard spak to an old man:	<i>spoke</i>	
	'Wendes hom, to 3oure sawdan,	<i>Go / sultan</i>	
	Hys malycoly þat 3e abate,	<i>melancholy / you end</i>	
	And says þat 3e come to late.	<i>tell him / you came too late</i>	
	To slowly was 3oure terme igessyd,	<i>Too / your terms considered</i>	
3530	Or 3e come þe flesch was dressyd	<i>Before / came / prepared</i>	
	þat men scholden serue wip me	<i>serve me</i>	
	þus at noon, & my meyne.	<i>men</i>	
	Say hym it schal hym nouzt avayle,	<i>Tell him</i>	
	þou3 he forbarre oure vytayle:	<i>Though / blocked our access to / provisions</i>	
3535	Bred & wyn, fysch, flesch, samoun & cungir,	<i>salmon & eel</i>	
	Off vs non schal dye for hungry	<i>None of us / die of hunger</i>	
	Whyl we may wenden to fyzt	<i>go to fight</i>	
	And slee þe Sare3ynes dounryzt,	<i>slay / right to the ground</i>	
	Wassche þe flesch, & roste þe hede.	<i>Wash / roast the head</i>	
3540	Wip oo Sare3yn I may wel fede	<i>one / feed</i>	
	Wel a nyne or a ten		
	Off my goode Crystene men.'		
	Kyng <i>Richard</i> sayd: 'I schal [you] waraunt,	<i>I assure you</i>	
	þer is no flesch so norysschant	<i>as nourishing</i>	
3545	Vnto an Ynglyssche man –	<i>For</i>	
	Partryk, plouer, heroun, ne swan,	<i>[Neither] partridge, water-fowl, heron</i>	C p.42b
	Cow ne oxe, scheep ne swyn –		
	As þe hed of a Sare3yn:		
	þere he is fat, & þerto tendre,	<i>tender</i>	
3550	And my men are lene & sclendre.	<i>lean / slender</i>	
	Whyl any Sare3yn quyk bee	<i>is alive</i>	
	Lyuande now in þis cuntree,	<i>Living / country</i>	
	For mete wole we nobyng care;	<i>food / would not</i>	
	Aboute faste we schole fare,	<i>We will busy ourselves [with killing Saracens]</i>	
3555	And euery day we schole eete	<i>eat</i>	
	Also manye as we may gete.	<i>As many</i>	
	To Yngelond wole we nouzt gon,	<i>would not go</i>	
	Tyl þay be eeten euerylkon.'	<i>everyone</i>	
	þe messangerys agayn hom tourne[d],		
3560	Beffore þe lord þey comen & mourn[ed].		
	þe eldeste tolde þe sawdan		

- Kyn[g] *Richard* was a noble man,
 And sayde: 'Lord, I þe werne,
 In þis world is non so sterne,
 3565 On knees we tolde hym oure tale,
 But vs ne gaynyd no gale.
 Off þy gold wolde he take non,
 He swor he hadde betere won
 Off ryche tresore þenne hast þou.
 3570 To vs he sayde: 'I geue it 3ow
 Tresore off syluyr, gold, & palle,
 Deles it among 3ow alle.'
 To mete he bad vs abyde;
 We were set at bord hym besyde,
 3575 Þat stood þe kyng [tables] negh,
 But non off vs before hym segh
 No bred brou3t forþ, whyt ne sour,
 But salt & non opir lycour.
 What mes fyrst before hym come,
 3580 Weel I beheld, good keep I nome:
 A kny3t brou3te fro þe kechyn
 An hed soden off a Sarezyn,
 Wipouten her, on a plater brode,
 Hys name beforh hys hed-schode
 3585 Was iwreten abouen hys y3e
 Me standes on awe for to lye.
 Whos hed it was, my feres aske,
 It was þe sawdones sone off Damaske.
 At borde as we saten in fere,
 3590 We were seruyd in þis manere:
 Euere an hed between tweye,
 For sorwe we wende for to deye.
 Þer come beffore my felaw & me,
 þe kynges sone off Nynyue,
 3595 Hys off Perce hym þat sat me by,
 þe þrydde hys off Samary,
 þe ferþe hys off Egypte,
 þoo ylkon off vs hys eyen wypte,
 þe fyffþe hys off Auffryke,
 3600 For sorwe þoo we gan to syke;
 Vs þou3te oure herte barst ry3 insunder.
 Lord, 3it þou my3t here a wundyr:
 Beffore þe kyng a kny3t, in haste,
 Karff off þe hed & he eet faste;
 3605 Wip teep he grond þe flesch ful harde,
 As a wood lyoun he farde,
 Wip hys eyen stepe and grym,
 And spak, & we behelde hym,]
 And for pore drede righte thane, in haste,
 3610 We wende to dy bot he bade: 'Ete faste
 And kerue 3oure mese,' & ete als he dide.
- warn you
 [there] is none
 we did not profit from talking
 your gold / would not
 treasure than you have
 give you
 fine cloths
 Divide
 bade us to stay for dinner
 at a table
 near
 saw
 [neither] white nor leavened
 C p.43a
 condiment
 dish / came
 I paid attention
 kitchen
 A boiled head
 hair
 in front of the crown of his head
 written / eyes
 I was held in fear
 companions asked
 Sultan of Damascus's son
 were sitting together
 one head between two
 sorrow / were going to die
 came
 King of Niniveh's son
 His [i.e. king's son] / Persia / [in front of] him
 third / Samaria
 fourth
 each one / wept
 fifth / Africa
 to moan
 We thought / would burst / in two
 yet you might hear a wonder
 Carved / he [i.e. KR] ate
 his teeth
 mad lion / behaved
 eyes glaring / fierce
 spoke
 C p.43b
 pure fear / then
 B f.144r
 expected to die / but
 carve / food

- Bot to Mawhoun þan, oure lorde, we bedde
 Fro dede that he be oure waraunde.
 And he sawe vs make so soure semblande,
 3615 And for drede thane how þat we gane quake
 He bad his men þan oure mese vp take,
 And other metes there byfore sett.
 Hate whitte brede þan þay bifore vs fett,
 Geese, swannes, & fatte venysoun,
 3620 Of fewlys and bestis full grete fuysoun.
 White wyne and rede, pyment & clarre,
 And full mekill oþer manere of gud fare.
 þe kyng said: 'Beese blythe if it be 3our will,
 Dose alle gladly and lykis noghte ille,
 3625 For I ne knewe nothyng 3oure gyse.
 In my courte, this is my seruyce:
 To bene serued firste, I & my hynys,
 Of hedes hate boylede of Sara3ynes.'
 And of hym and his we stodyn grete drede,
 3630 And to be gane vs stode grete need.
 Ther myghte nane ete a morsell of brede,
 Ne drynke no wyne, noþer white ne rede;
 So sore þan were we bysett *with* drede.
 And aftir þe mete we tooke oure leue
 3635 He spake to vs at wordis brefe:
 '[Now] laues and gange in safe condite
 Ne no man schall do 3ow no dispite.'
 He said the certayne ansuere,
 Or þat we myghte come here,
 3640 That the men of the richeste kynn were yslawe.
 He biddis that thou salle the withdrawe
 And hy the righte sone fra his oste;
 His men and he þay maken boste
 þat he salle lefe one lyue
 3645 In all thi lande neþer man ne wyfe,
 Bot slaa alle down that he may fynde,
 Sethe þe flesche and *with* teethe grynde.
 He saysse þaym schalle no hungre ayle,
 And into Ynglande will he noghte sayle
 3650 Till þat he hase made playne werke.'
 His clothes of golde vnto his serke
 Sir Saladyne brynte for verrey yre,
 And so diden kynges, & prynces, & many a sire,
 And saide allas, þat þay hade lorne
 3655 Theire ayeres of their bodies borne,
 þat weryn full wighte men & strange.
 'Waylayway,' þay seide, 'we life al to lange!
 Herde we neuer are of woundirs slyke,
 He es a deuyll & none erthely man lyke!'
 3660 And for sorowe þay fallen down in swoune,
 Dukes & erles & barouns, bathe vp & down,
- then / begged
 death / protector
 such a sad expression
 trembled
 clear away our dishes
 food
 Hot / brought
 fowl / other meat / plenty
 spiced and sweetened wine
 very many / good provisions
 Be glad
 Do / like
 did not know / customs
 the order of dishes
 be / my household
 With hot boiled heads
 were terrified
 we urgently needed to depart
 none [of us] ate
 Nor / neither
 briefly
 leave / go / safe-conduct
 Before / came
 slain
 you shall retreat
 hasten yourself / from / host
 brag about
 leave alive
 neither man nor woman
 slay
 Boil
 hunger shall not afflict them
 has finished his work
 shirt
 burnt / raging anger
 abandoned
 heirs
 brave / strong
 Alas / have lived too long
 before / such wonders
 [KR] is a devil
 a swoon
 everyone*
- f. 144rb

- Many a lady and many a quene;
 For þaire childre þat slayne thus bene,
 Fele full flatte doun appon þe flynte,
 3665 And for þe sorowe full nere þaire lyfes tynte.
 Owte of þaire swonnyng, when þay myghte ryse,
 Þan þaire god Mawhoun þay disspyse:
 Þay sipptede one hym and seyden, 'Fy!' –
 And one alle þaire oþer goddes, bothe by & by –
 3670 'Allas, Mawhoun, þat þou suffre wylte
 Oure childre thus for thi laye to be spilte.
 Of thi myghte, whatte es worthe to ʒelpe
 When þou ne will thy seruandes nothyng helpe?
 We prey to the bothe lowde and softe,
 3675 And dose to the full grete wirchipes & ofte,
 And honoures full heghely thyn holy name,
 Why soffre þou þam thus to done vs this schame?
 We prey the *with* full mylde bysekyng
 Of ʒone Kynge Richerd to take wrekyng:
 3680 Confounde hym, lorde, thorow thyn holy vertue,
 And also alle those þat leues appon þat Jhesu.
 Allas this were was euyll bygun!
 Nowe hase Kyng Richerd Acres wonne,
 And he hase men, may he goo forthe
 3685 To wynn este & weste, bothe southe & northe,
 And thusgates will ete oure childre & vs!
 A lorde, *Sir* Saladyne, we rede the thus:
 Sende to hym and beseke hym efte
 For þam þat are one lyfe lefte
 3690 And late þam gaa, giffe þat he wolde.
 Giff hym for þam gret *sommes* of siluer & golde,
 And riche jewells, for the nones,
 Of golde and of gud *precyous* stones
 Charged in harnays and in coffre.
 3695 And alswa that thou hym profre,
 For to lefe Jhesu and Marye,
 To gyffe hym landis, a grete *partye*,
 Þat he be in peese & lefe this were.
 And forthy that he es comen fro so ferre,
 3700 Will þou noghte þat he his *travelle* lese;
 Late hym come & *hymself* chese
 The landis þat hym lykis beste,
 And make hym sowdane allthir hegheste,
 And afir thyselfe the hegheste kynge,
 3705 Gyff it hym and his offespryng.
 And giffe he be payed for to do so,
 Sone in pese he come the to
 And alle ʒife he hase thi folkes spilte,
 Þe byhoues to forgiffe hym þat gilte,
 3710 And alls thi brothir hym loue & kisse.
 And he sall teche the, ywisse,

*had been slain**Fell / floor**almost / lives lost**swooning**insulted**spat / Fie**one after the other**should allow**faith / slain**boast**will not help your servants**pray to you**offer to you / worship**honour / your**do you allow them to do**supplication**that / revenge**your**believe in**war**thus / eat**Ah / advise you**beseech / again**those who are left alive**let them go / if / wishes**Give / for them / sums*

f.144va

*Packed in saddle bags / chests**also / offer**renounce**a great part**[So] that / peace / war**because / has come / far**wastes**Let / choose**he likes best**highest of all sultans**yourself**Give it to**if he is satisfied**Soon / peace / he [should] come to you**although / has slain your men**It is necessary / guilt**as your**teach you, certainly*

- Of alle þe werlde to wyn þe prys, *fame*
 And also in were to bee bolde & wysse, *war*
 Lyffe togedire & be gud frendys, *Live*
 3715 With vnto 3our lyffes endes.' *Until / the end of your lives*
- S**aladyn, be his sariandis, *by / envoys*
 Sent to Kyng Richerd thies tythandis, *this message*
 And bysoughte hym for his men *begged*
 þat he in ostage hade lyande thane. *lying in prison*
 3720 And giff he wolde Jhesu forsake, *if*
 And Sir Mahownn vnto his lorde take, *as his*
 Off Surrye he wolde hym kynge, *Syria / would [make] him*
 And of alle Egipte, þat riche thyng, *Cairo*
 Off Darras and of Babyloyne, *Cairo*
 3725 Off Arabie and of Sessoyne, *Africa*
 Off Aufrike and of Bogy, *Alexandria*
 And of alle þe lande of Alyxanedry, *Great Greece / Tyre*
 Of Grete Grees and of Tire, *other / empires*
 And of many ane oþer riche emperyre. *sultan at once* f.144vb
 3730 And make hym a riche sowdane onane,
 Fro the lande of Ynde vnto the lande of Prethir John.
 'Alle this he will the gyffe,
 Giffe that thou will one Mawhownn bylefe.' *give you*
If you / believe in
- K**ying Richerde answerde þe messangerse
 3735 And seyde: 'Fy appon 3ow vile lousengerse, *coward*
 One 3ow & on Saladyn, 3our lorde; *On you*
 The deuyll hange 3ow with a corde!
 Gase & says 3oure lorde Saladyn *Go / tell*
 þat he make tomorowe fyne *pay ransom tomorrow*
 3740 For alle his dogges þat leyen here in ostage, *lie in prison*
 Or pay sall dyen in euyll rage. *will die*
 And 3if I maye lyue thre 3ere, *if / live for three years*
 Of alle thies landys þat 3e nenyn here, *these / you mention*
 I sall noghte lefe hym halfe a fote. *leave*
 3745 So God send my soule god bote! *good fortune*
 I ne wolde noghte lose my lordes lufe, *would not / lord's [i.e. God's] love*
 For alle þe londis vndir heuen abofe.
 And bot 3if þat I hafe þe crosse tomorowe, *unless*
 His men sall dy with mekill sorowe.' *much pain*
- 3750 Bot þay ansuerde all þerto full sone onnone *And / at once*
 And seyde: 'We ne wate neuer where it es done.' *do not know where it [i.e. the cross] is*
 'Now,' quod Kyng Richerd, '& sen it es so, *since*
 I wote wele whate I hafe to do. *know well*
 3our sowdane ne es noghte so slee, *is not as sly*
 3755 So qweyntly for to blere myn eghe.' *As cleverly to delude me*
 He called his knyghtis sone onnane, *immediately*
 And bade þam into Acres gane *go*
 And take þe Sarazenes fyfty thowsande,
 And bynde their handis þam byhynde, *tie their hands behind them*

- 3760 And lede þam owte of the cite, *take*
 And hedis þam alle *withowtten* pite: *behead them*
 ‘And so salle lere *Sir Saladyne* *will learn*
 To garre me byleue one *Sir Appolyne.*’ *make me believe in Apollo [i.e. a Saracen god]*
- 3765 Saffe a twentty he helde to rawnsoun, *Except for / ransom*
 Pay weren ledde to a place full euenn, *flat place*
 And ther they herde ane angelle of heuenn *an angel from*
 þat cried: ‘Sayntours, tues, tues!’ *Gentlemen, kill*
 Sparis þam noghte, hedis alle thies!’ *Spare no one, behead all these*
- 3770 Kyng Richerd herde þat ilke voyce *same*
 And thankede God and þe Holy Croys;
 Pay weryn hedide full hastilike *were beheaded / speedily*
 [And casten into a foul dyke. *ditch* C p.45b
 þus Kyng Richard wan Acrys, *won*
 3775 God geue hys soule moche blys!
- M**erye is in þe tyme off May,
 Whenne foules synge in here lay, *birds / their song*
 Floures on appyl trees and perye, *apple and pear trees*
 Smale foules synge merye,]
- 3780 And thies ladyse strewes than their bourres *decorate / chambers* f.145ra
 With lelyes and with other floures, *lilies*
 Grete þan es in frythe & in lake; *[May] is welcomed / woodland*
 For bothe bestis & birdis playes þan *with þer* make. *make love with their mates*
 And thies damesells þan ledyn daunces, *then lead dances*
- 3785 And thies knyghtis pleyen *with swerdis & launce3,* *joust / lances*
 And to justis & in tornamentis rydis, *jousts / tournaments ride*
 And full many chaunces þan bytydis, *adventures then happen*
 Full many strayte case & chauce harde. *fierce incidents / hard battles*
 And swa byfelle þat Kyng Richerde *so happened*
- 3790 Kyng Philyp of Fraunce to þe feste bedde, *invited*
 And aftir þe mete, when þay were glade, *meal*
 Kyng Richerd gaffe giftis, full gude wone, *gave / in great quantities*
 Of siluer & golde and precyous stone,
 Horse and robys to bere his lose – *clothes / fame*
- 3795 Full wyde & ferre his renownn arosse, *far and wide*
 How he was gentill, curteyse, and fre – *courteous / generous*
 Full noble was þan þat semble, *assembly*
 Kyng Richerd gaffe castells & townnes *gave*
 To his erlys & to his barounes,
- 3800 To clerke & swayne þat weryn doghety of hand, *squires*
 To some he gaffe tresours, & to some he gaf land
 To haue vnto their sustynaunce. *livelihood*
 And Kyng Richerd bad þe Kyng of Fraunce: *bade*
- 3805 ‘Giff,’ he seid, ‘of þi golde & thi purchais *Give / your booty*
 To erles, barouns, knyghtis [&] seriauntis of mase, *officials bearing maces*
 & frely aqwite þou þam their trauayle *generously repay them / effort*
 þat þay swaunke for the in þe bataile. *toiled / for you / battle*
 & efte if þou hafe oughte for to done, *if you again have anything to do*

- 3810 Pay will be þe gladdere to trauelle eftsonne
 For to helpe the when þou hafe nede.
 [Kyng Phelyp took þeroff non hede
 But layde þertoo a deff eere,
 And gaff hym ryzt non answere;
 Kyng Richardes wordes he took *in* vayn.
- 3815 Richard began vnto hym sayn:
 ‘Among vs be pes & acord
 Graced be Jhesu Cryst, oure lord,
 þat gaff vs myzt þis toun to wynne.]
 To ride forthe [late vs] begynn,
- 3820 Saladyn þe sowdane to anoye,
 And alle the Sarazynes to distroye.
 And giff þat he skomfite vs in bekyre,
 And nede be we may be sekire,
 Gife þat God will graunte vs lyfe,
- 3825 And we maye wyn hedir *withowtten* stryfe,
 And wyn qwike *within* the walle –
 For Saladyn and for his folkes alle –
 And þe zates bene faste yschott,
 We may betriste þan of a strange ressett.’
- 3830 Bot Kyng Richerd bygane þan to Philip to telle,
 And seid: ‘I rede þat we no lengare tary ne duell,
 Bot ryde we forthe & this contre seche,
 And *in* þe name of God do þou als I sall þe teche:
 Myn oste I wil do parten in three,
- 3835 And, Kyng Philip, take þou thi menzee
 And departe thyn oste in twaye.
 My lefe broþer do now als I þe preye,
 And townn, cite, or castell, gif þou may wynn,
 Slaa alle þase þat þou fyndys þam in.
- 3840 And in Goddes worde, I the forbede,
 þat for siluere ne golde, ne na noþer mede
 þat þay may profre to þi plesaunce or giffe,
 Riche ne pore loke þat þou late nane lyfe,
 Nowþer housbande ne wyfe, mayden ne grome,
- 3845 Bot if þay will take Cristyndome.’
 Kyng Philippe thies wordis vndirstode,
 Bot hym vnbythoughte þam nothyng gude
 þat Kyng Richerde, at hys devyce,
 Sett hym & his men at so littill prysse.
- 3850 Bot Kyng Philippe to hym was compeynable
 [He gan to glose, & make fable,
 And þankyd hym wiþ glad semblaunt
 And sayde: ‘Broþir, I þe graunt
 To doo as þou sayst, sekyrly,
- 3855 For þou art wysere man þan I,
 And off werre canst wel more.’
 Neþeles he was agreuyd sore;
 For drede he & hys men so dede
- happier / second time
 help you
 of that / no heed
 deaf ear* C p.46a
- peace*
- let us* f.145rb.
- if / defeated / battle
 we needed to be safe
 If
 Then / reach this place easily
 get quickly
 From / from
 gates / shut fast
 trust then / strong refuge*
- And
 advise / longer delay
 search this region
 shall instruct you
 host / will divide into
 your army
 divide / into two
 dear / as I ask you
 if
 Slay all those you find
 forbid you*
- neither for / nor for any other reward
 offer or give to your liking
 nor poor / leave none alive*
- Unless / convert to Christianity
 these
 he thought them nothing good
 at his pleasure
 him [i.e. KP] / little value
 friendly
 spoke falsely
 graciously
 promise you
 certainly
 you are wiser
 of war you know
 Nevertheless* C p.46b
- C p.47a*

3860	As Kyng Richard hadde hem bede,] Lesse þat þer rasse na maner of distaunce Bytwene the Ynglys and the Fraunce, In awnnter þat þay hent knockes, He dalte his men in two flokkes. And than Kyng Richerd <i>with</i> his oste went awaye,	<i>them</i> <i>Lest / arise disagreement</i> <i>the French</i> <i>In case / received blows</i> <i>divided / groups</i> <i>host</i>	f.145va
3865	And Kyng Philip fra hym to wynn praye. With luffe þay departed insowndre. And now may 3e heryn a grete wonder, For Franche men are euer arghe & faynte, And the Sarazenes are full sley & qwaynt,	<i>booty</i> <i>love / separated</i> <i>you may hear / wonder</i> <i>always cowardly / deceitful</i> <i>skillful / clever</i>	
3870	And of þaire dedis full engynous, And also þe Franche men are somewhat couettous, And when þat þay are sett at þaire tauerne, þer þay aren full stowte and steryn, Full prowde wordes þer þan will þay crakke	<i>deeds / cunning</i> <i>greedy</i> <i>sitting / tavern</i> <i>bold and valiant</i> <i>then they will utter</i>	
3875	And of þaire dedis grete 3elpynge make. And oþerwhile full littill worthe þay are bot nyce prowde; ⁵ Fighte þay can with wordes lowde, And says þat nane may be þaire pere, When þat þay come to the mistere,	<i>boasting</i> <i>loud</i> <i>none / peer</i> <i>[But] when / action</i>	
3880	Bot ofte when þay see men strokes dele, Onenane þan will þay torne þaire hele, And for drede drawe in þaire homes, Als dose a snyle amange roughe thornes, And slake abore of their boste.	<i>And</i> <i>At once / turn on their heels</i> <i>for fear</i> <i>As a snail does among</i> <i>put an end to all their boasting</i>	
3885	Kyng Philip þan toke his oste, And a strange cite he bysett, þat was called [T]oborett. And <i>with</i> his oste he laide it abowte, þat þe Sarazenes ne dorste neuer nowre come owte.	<i>strong city / besieged</i> <i>surrounded it</i> <i>did not dare</i>	
3890	Bot at þe laste gif þat þay solde be alle tohewede, Appone þe walles þay þam schewede; Owte at þe towres and at þe kirmelles Sett owte many baners and pensells, And manly þay þam defende.	<i>cut to pieces</i> <i>showed themselves</i> <i>towers / battlements</i> <i>pennons</i>	
3895	Bot to dy righte þan þe Franche men wende, Trompys for boste full lowde þay blewe [But durste þey neyþer schete ne þrowe Wip bowe, slyng, ne arweblast, To make þe Sarezynes wip agast,	<i>And / thought</i> <i>dare neither shoot nor throw</i> <i>sling / or crossbow</i> <i>cause the S. to be frightened</i>	C p.47b
3900	Ne þe cyte for to assayle. But off the touz þe cheff amyraylle, Hys name was callyd Terryabaute: 'Lord, ar þou geue vs assaute,] Alle þe folke þat are in this townn	<i>attack</i> <i>And the chief emir of the town</i> <i>before you attack us</i>	
3905	Profers to gyffe the rawnsoun, And rewfully with one cry,	<i>Offer / give you ransom</i> <i>dolefully</i>	f.145vb

⁵ And sometimes they are worth very little and [are just] proud fools.

- Besekes the mekely of mercy.
 The townn also they will the zelde,
 With alle þe gudes þat þay haue in welde.
 3910 Mane & woman, and euerilke Sarazyne
 Profers the, of golde full fyn,
 Euerilke one a faire besaunt,
 To the in swylke a couenaunt,
 þat þou graunte þat that þay craue:
 3915 þaire lyfe & þaire lymmes for to haue,
 Bestis, catelle, and tresoure,
 And þat they will for euermore,
 Of the & thyn ayers halde this townn.’
 And Kyng Philip graunted & of þam toke raunson;
 3920 For mede righte ther he sparede his faase.
 And thus at ane *with* theym he was,
 He bade his folke, one lyfe & dede,
 Nane be so hardy take in that stede,
 Mete ne drynke, catelle ne clothe.
 3925 To hym þay sware alle ane othe:
 To bene his men alle that there ware,
 And his banere sett vp one rere
 One a schafte one þe hegheste towre,
 With flour de lyce gold and azure.
 3930 And when þay had this townn þus wonn,
 To breke þe sege þay haue bygun,
 þay charged one somere & one carte,
 Tresours, armours, scheldis & darte.
 Kyng, erle, barouns, knyghtes & sqwyers,
 3935 þay ryde wele armed one þaire dextirs,
 þe fotemen helde forthe one þaire fete,
 And righte swa þay helden þe heghe street
 þat trompid vp and baners displeyen⁶
 Of silke & of sendale, & many faire fane.
 3940 Full righte þay wente to þe city of Archane,
 And Kyng Philip of þam also hase raunsone tane,
 Euen als he dide at the toþer townn;
 And lete þam lyue so forthe in peese,
 And so for the lesse, the more he lese.
 3945 **B**ot Kyng Richerde *with* hys oste vnryde,
 Went forthe by anoþer syde,
 With full many ane erle & baroun
 Borne of Ynglys nacyoun.
 Alle hardy men & stronge, for þe nones,
 3950 And full wele armed appon þaire bones,
 þay satt appon stedis lyghte and stronge,
 And many a Gascoyne was þam amonge,

*Beseech you humbly
 surrender the town to you
 in possession
 each*

*Offers you / of pure gold
 Each one / a coin
 such an agreement
 grant that which they request
 to keep their lives*

From you / your heirs / [they will] hold

*material reward / foes
 reconciled
 for no reason
 None / rash*

*[Neither] food nor
 they [the S.] / swore an oath
 To be / all those [who] were there
 raised his banner aloft
 On / highest tower
 fleur-de-lis / blue*

*packed on packhorses / carts
 spears*

*steeds
 foot soldiers followed closely
 occupied the main street
 trumpets [went] up / were displayed
 rich silken fabric / standards*

*accepted ransom f. 146ra
 Just as*

for the less, the more he lost

And / host in great numbers

in the English nation

*noble horses
 Gascon*

⁶ Either Thornton or his exemplar missed a line before or after l. 3938, which would complete the couplet. Between 3937 and 3938, C p. 48a: *þat þey turne nouzt ne outrage.*

- And also þer was of þe men of Lumbardye,
 Gud knyghtis full stalworthe & hardy. *strong & fearless*
- 3955 And also folkes of the coste of Almayne, *country of Germany*
 And his eme, Henry of Champayne, *his [i.e. KR's] nephew*
 And also his mayster, Robert of Leycestre – *high official*
 In alle Ynglande was noghte his bettir –
- 3960 And *Sir Fuk Doly* and *Sir Thomas* of Multon, *were always accustomed / used to*
 That euer 3itt weren acostome & wonn *offer themselves*
 In fighte þam firste for to bede,
 To helpe Kyng Richerd at his nede.
 Of þe coste of Braundis he toke a man full wighte, *region of Brindisi*
- 3965 And his clergy and his freres, *was called*
 And of the Temple [&] his Hospetulers, *friars*
 Þe *nommere* was, by ryghte assent: *[Knights] Templar / Hospitaller*
 Folkes one horse, ane hundrethe thowsande, *number / fully agreed*
 And 3itt one fote folkes slyke ten *on horseback / one*
 3970 Of Gascoynes, Lumbardes, & Ynglys men *on foot ten times as many*
 In full gud armours and in sure.
 Bot the Ynglys men bowes & arowes gan bere, *carried*
 And thase oþer bare scheldys & sperys, *others / shields / spears*
 And also ther was gud staffe-slyngers ⁷
- 3975 Of Ynglys men wele a five hundrethe;
 And for to see theym it was grete wondre. *wonder*
 Alle was hyde bothe feldis and pleynes, *covered / fields / plains*
 With men one fote, knyghtis, and swaynes. *squires*
 Kyng Richerde houede and þam byholde, *waited / beheld*
 3980 And deuysed his folkes in the felde. *organised*
 And to his consayle he seyden than thus: *advisers / said*
 ‘Men ynewe, blyssed be God, we hafe *with vs*, *A great number of men*
 I rede þat we departen theym in three, *advise / divide*
 And ane parte salle wenden *with mee*. *one / shall go*
- 3985 And anoþer parte, for alkyns case, *by all means*
 Lede schall Moltoun *Sir Thomas*, *shall be led by*
 And *Sir Fuke Doly* schall ledyn the thirde. *f. 146rb*
 One lyfe and lymmes, I 3ow forbidde, *On pain of loss of life & limb*
 Gyffe that 3e wynne any townn, *If*
- 3990 Takes of theym no maner of rawnsoun,
 Bot slaas the folkes & takes þaire gude, *slay / take / goods*
 Bot 3if þay grawnte, *with mylde mode*, *Unless*
 To bene Cristenyde in the fownte-stane, *become Christian / baptismal font*
 And elles one lyfe 3e lefe neuer ane.’ *Otherwise / alive / leave none*
- 3995 And than Kyng Richerd, *with hys companye*,
 Went hym forthe to þe cite of Sowdane Turry,
 And *Sir Thomas*, a knyghte full engynous,
 Went with hys oste to Orgolyus,
 And with his oste þan rade forthe *Sir Fuk Doly*
 4000 Vnto the cite of Ebedye. *rode*
?Ibelin

⁷ And also there were good soldiers armed with slings attached to their staffs.

	Thane ilkane laye his townn abowte, þat þe Saraʒenes ne dorste neuer noure come owte; For those segges weryn stronge & harde.	<i>each one / laid siege did not dare to come out besiegers</i>
4005	þat Sowdane Turry vmbylayde. þe Saraʒenes, at the firste brayde, þaire brigges þay wande vp in haste, And þair ʒatis þay schott full faste þam to defende, als I ʒow saye.	<i>besieged move bridges / drew up gates / shut to defend themselves</i>
4010	Bot thane Kyng Richerd his banere gan displaye And when þe Saraʒenes sawe it arerede, þan þay weryn full sore afferde; And for drede righte þan full faste þay qwake. þe wardaynes hafe þaire conselle ytake,	<i>lifted afraid trembled city officials / taken</i>
4015	Ane þat was called Grawndary, In the townn he garte þan make a cry, To ilke man þat may armes bere, Gaa to þe walles þe townn to were. þe Saraʒenes þan, alle enarmede, forthe þay leppe	<i>One made a summons every / wield a weapon Go / to defend armed / lept</i>
4020	Appon þe walles þe townn to kepe. þay stoden in torettes & in hurdasse, And Kyng Richerd gart bende arblasters of devyce, ⁸ And schotte þam to a towre full euynn, And smate thurghowte Saraʒenes seuynn	<i>defend small towers / palisades directly struck / seven Saracens</i>
4025	þat starke dede downn felle, þase dogges vyle. Now lystenys of a qwaynte gyle: Kyng Richerd garte his folkes apparelle One þat halfe þe townn to assayle, And the townn folkes drewen to þat syde,	<i>stiff dead / those vile dogs clever stratagem made ready to attack one side of the town draw</i>
4030	And Kyng Richerd sent to his folkes in þat tyde, Of qwaynte styes to gane in – þat weryn wroghte of full qwaynte gyn With iryn hokes, gude and stronge – And one þe walles þay gane þam honge	<i>at that moment With special ladders / go in ingeniously devised iron hooks</i>
4035	þat men myghte gane in seuen one brede, And thus men ouer þe walles ʒede – Thre thowsande – or þe Saraʒenes wende And þan þay gane þe townn defende. þe Ynglys men come in or þay wistyne,	<i>them [i.e. the ladders] hung [So] that / seven abreast went before / realized began to defend</i>
4040	þay schotte to þam and full hard þay smytten; Grete nombire of þaire folkes onane down felle. Bot þe constable, when he herd þat telle, þat þe Ynglys men weryn in wonnenn, A ten thowsande þan hase he taken	<i>had come in / before they [i.e. the S.] knew shot / struck number / at once</i>
4045	And alle oþer he bade solde kepe þe townn; 'For þer schalle gaa no rawnsoun, Gaynys þam no mercy to craffe. Kyng Richerde ne sall þam neuer saffe,	<i>had gained entry took the others / they should there shall be no ransom To beg [shall] gain them no mercy shall never save them</i>

⁸ Richard bent crossbows drawn by mechanical devices.

- Oneane righte now schall þay dy!' *At once / die*
 4050 And when Kyng Richerd herde þat cry,
 For sorowe he gane sighe full schille. *sighed loudly*
 He bad his folkes: 'Bese of gud wylle, *bade / Be*
 And proue we faste this townn to wynn, *prove ourselves strong*
 And rescowe oure folkes þat are therinn.' *rescue / inside*
 4055 [þe] Saraþenes ther ful strongly kyd þer myghte *showed*
 To slaa þe Cristen men – in that fighte – *slay*
 þat were comen in ouer þe walle. *had come*
 Bot oure men euer helde þam togedir alle,
 And arowes & quarells to þam þay throwe; *arrows & bolts / threw*
 4060 Alle þase þay hitt onane þay slewe. *All those [who] / at once*
 And with full egre mayne þam bekire, *fiercely they fought*
 For of gud helpe þay were full sekire: *certain*
 Of gud Kyng Richerd þat was withowte. *outside*
 þe Ynglys men rane faste abowte,
 4065 And some to þe 3atis threwe *gates*
 Alle þat þay fande downn þay hewe, *found / cut down*
 And threwe þam owte ouer þe towre, *threw*
 And cryed: 'Kyng Richerd, do vs socowre! *help us*
 For sauely sall þou in thrynge *Safely / rush in*
 4070 In littill stownde, by heuenes kyng!' *Soon*
 And þaire lorde, Kyng Richerd, þay gane grete *greeted*
 And þe drawebrygges downn þay lete, *they let the drawbridges down*
 And sett the 3atis vp one brade. *opened wide*
 And Kyng Richerde was þe firste þat in rade, *rode in*
 4075 And nexte hym *Sir* Robert Thorname,
Sir Robert Laycestre and Bertrame,
 And thus rydis in alle þe vawarde, *rode in / vanguard*
 And to sla thase houndes righte nane þay sparede. *slay those / none*
 Kyng Richerd his axe in hande þan hent, *took* f.146vb
 4080 And gaffe þe Saraþenes þan many a dynt.
 And swilke *pardone* he thaym delte, *showed them such forgiveness*
 Alle þat he hitt oneane þay swelte. *at once / died*
 þay slewe downn clenly euerilke Saraþyne, *every*
 And þe temple of Apolyne
 4085 þay brynte, and fellid downn Mahoun. *burnt down / felled [the idol of] M.*
 And alle þe tresoures of the townn,
 He gaffe knyghttes, sqwyers & knafe, *gave to / pages*
 Hymselfe ne wolde righte nane hafe. *He did not wish anything for himself*
 Saraþene neuer one on lyfe þay lefte, *They did not leave one S. alive*
 4090 And in the prys toure an heghe [schafte] þay sett *[most] splendid tower*
 Kyng Richerd righte thare did sett his banere;
 And wane the townn appon this manere. *won / in this way*
- N**ow beese in peese, & listenys þis case, *be*
 And herkenys nowe of *Sir* Thomas, *listen*
 4095 þe noble barownn of Multoun,
 þat laye *with* many a modir sone
 At Orglyus, a full stronge castelle. *laid [siege] / many men*

- Now listenys what chaunce þat hym byfelle:
 þe Sarazenes are euer full of felonye,
 4100 Full stillyly sent þay forthe a spy
 þat hade bene Cristenyde *in* his 3outhe –
 Many eueyll wrenche & wyle he couthe –
 His Cristyndome he hade forsakyn
 And to þe Sarazene lawe he had hym taken.
 4105 He come to *Sir* Thomas, forsothe to saye,
 And proued hym thus for to bytraye:
 To sla hym and his folke to þe dede to lede.
 He come to *Sir* Thomas and thus hym rede:
 ‘*Sir*,’ he seyde, ‘I am a Cristyn man,
 4110 I brake þaire presone & owte I wanne.
 Trayste righte wele vnto my speche,
 And gyff þou will do als I sall the teche,
 þou sall wynn thaim *within* a qwhile.
 In alle the townn þer es no gyle,
 4115 þe sothe to the als I hafe talde.’
 Quod *Sir* Thomas: ‘Puttis hym in halde
 For tresoun he es *commen* hedir,
 It es glosynge alle togedir;
 For alle es lyes þat þe thefe saythe.
 4120 He es of the Sarazene faythe,
 þay sent hym vs to byswyke,
 His comynge sall hym full ill lyke,
 And þerfore salle suffre he dedis dayes.
 Alle quyke hastily gose and hym flaes,
 4125 S[t]ryke hym insondre and layes hym in salte,’
 þe Sarazene quoke and hym byhalte,
 ‘And puttis owte,’ he bad ‘þe thefes eghe,
 And so men shall lere hym for to lye,
 And his eres in twoo slittis,
 4130 One bothe his fete a rape dose knyttis,
 And hanges hym vp tomorowe daye.’
 Quod the Sarazyne: ‘Mercy, I praye
 To none euyll dede þat 3ee me dothe,
 And of alle þat I ken, I schall say 3ow þe sothe.
 4135 And 3if 3e me fynd with any falsehede,
 Owthir in worde or ells in dede,
 þat any man kan saye or wete,
 Onenane myn hede 3e gare of smytte.
 Forsothely, I was sente to bytraye 3owe,
 4140 I schall 3ow telle and lystenys how:
 A brigge es bifore 3owe in 3our waye –
 Lystenys nowe whatte I schall saye –
 And in the midwarde es a gile
 Couerde full close & joynede full wele,
 4145 And vndirnethe þer es ane hespe
 Schote *with* a stapill and a claspe,
 A pyn es putt in the stapile.
- adventure he had*
villainy
covertly
a Christian / youth
tricks / knew

faith
came / in truth
proved himself false
slay / lead his men to death
came / explained

broke out of / escaped
Trust / my word
if / instruct you
short time
stratagem [to defend it]
I have told you the whole truth
Put him in prison
has come here
deceitful talk
thief says

to deceive us
will regret that he came
the day of death
go / flay him
 f. 147ra
in two / put him in
trembled / beheld
put out / eyes
teach him
slit his ears
Around / rope / tie

Said
Do not give me an evil death
know / tell you the truth
if you find in me / falsehood
Either / deed
can say / know
At once you can cut off my head
Certainly

bridge

middle there is a trap
securely covered / tightly joined
underneath / there is a hinged clasp
Shut / iron staple
secured by a bolt

- I warne 3owe leue it, giffe 3e wille, if
 I warne 3owe wele what so bytydes: happens
 4150 And 3ee and 3our folkes weryn in þe myddis If you
 And þe pyn smettyn owte ware, bolt were to be knocked out
 Euen downn þan scholde 3e falle reghte thare Straight down / you would fall
 Into a pitt of sixty fote depe. deep
 Þerof beese warre, & takes gude kepe beware of that
 4155 Pat 3e passen wele ouer that trappe,
 For many a man hase hadde euyll happe; bad fortune
 Be pays it closes to agayns, By weight / again
 Whare als þat no man may it sene.' Where no man may see it
 Thomas askede the Sarazene thare:
 4160 'Es slikke trappes any ma there, Are there any more such traps
 Vs to bytraye or to grefe?'
 'Nay, *sir*, forsothe þou may me lefe, in truth / believe me
 With any lyes gif þou me fynde, if you find any lies in me
 Bynd myn handes me byhynde,
 4165 And gare me be hangede & alswa drawenn.' have me hanged / drawn
 And of thies tydan[d]es Thomas was fayne: information / glad
 'Now Sarazene,' he saide, 'onane me rede, advise me
 Howe may I beste doo at þis ilke nede?' very time of peril
 'Sir,' sayd þe Sarazyne, 'þou hafe horse men & puta[ile], foot soldiers f. 147rb
 4170 Or þat thou this townn assaile, Before
 3e hafe also *with* 3ow gud engynes, siege machines
 And swilke ne knawes no Sarazynes; such as no Saracen knows
 Þi mawngonelle þou do arere, lift your catapult
 And swa þou schall þam huggely affere, so / frighten them
 4175 Into the [townn þou] slynge a stane grete. hurl / great stone
 And alswa swythe þou me lete also / swiftly / let me
 Passe into the townn agayne,
 And also sone þou schalle seene soon / see
 Þe townn þay schall 3elde the full sone. surrender
 4180 Bot I praye the of a bone: ask you a favour
 Gyff þat I garre the wyne þis townn, If / make you win
 þat þou gyffe me my warysoun.' give me my reward
 Quod *Sir* Thomas Multoun: 'þerto I graunte,'
 And þay departed one þat couenaunte. agreement
 4185 Þe engyne was sett & bente alle priste, prepared
 And a full grete stane *Sir* Thomas gart in caste threw in
 þat slewe many men, & howses doun bare, brought down
 Or any Sarazyne was þerof warre. Before / aware
 'We bene bot dede, now helpe Mahown!' ful fast þay crye, will be dead
 4190 And one euerilke syde ful faste þay fliede ran away
 To hyden þam for waa & drede. hide themselves / woe / fear
 And þe renaye than to þe town 3ede, renegade / went
 And talde þe wardane þer, *Sir* Orgalie: chief officer
 'We bene bot dede,' he said, 'withowtten fayle. will be dead / without doubt
 4195 He þat thies stanes to vs thrawes, these / throws
 Alle oure tresoun full wele he knawes: our treason [i.e. trap] / knows
 How oure brigge gase insondre, parts in two

- And alle þe gile þat es ther vndir,
 And how þat it gase agayne by payse.
 4200 Beware of hym euerilke burgays,
 Ne gaynes 3owe no 3atis to spere,
 Hym & his men owte for to were.
 Gyff þat 3e fighte and 3ow defende,
 Many mo stanys he will 3ow sende,
 4205 Schende 3owe and the townn betyn.
 And bettir it es þat 3e hym in latyn
 þan he 3ow alle hereinn spill,
 And 3eldis þe townn vnto his will;
 And than we may be traiste to lyffen.’
 4210 And when he had þis consaile giffen,
 þay grawnted to do alle als he rede.
 Bot thane ‘Mercy!’ to Thomas full lowde he criede,
 ‘Hafe here þe keyes of this cite,
 And do with tham whatte so thy wills bee.
 4215 Bot so that thou graunte oure lyffes,
 And oure childre, and oure wyffes.’
 Thomas Multoun the keyes did fange,
 And anothir stane in slange
 To *Sir Mawhownn* a full ruyde takylle,
 4220 And strake downn a strange penacle.
 Owte thane rane þaire wardane Orgalie,
 And ane hundreth knyghtis in his paraile,
 Barefote, vngirde, withowtten hode,
 And sayden: ‘Mercy, *sir*, spill noghte oure blode!
 4225 Takes now alle that we hafe,
 So that thou will oure lyffes saue,
 Late vs passe awaye, alle nakede.’
 ‘Brekis þe brigge,’ quod he, ‘þat 3e have makede,
 And with lyme & stane dose fillis the pitt,
 4230 Or by *Jhesu* that in heuen dose sitt,
 Alle þerin ells schalle 3e bryne
 þat nane schal noþer gange ne ryne,
 None of 3owe alle, nethir pure ne riche,
 Bot 3if that 3e fill reghte wele þat diche,
 4235 To the brigge that it do ryse
 þat we may entre alle in pese.’
 þe amyralle þerto was full blithe,
 And garte breke þe brygge also swythe,
 And lyme and stane throwe in the pitt;
 4240 It was fillede and that full tye.
 And vp to the brigge made alle pleyne
 Of brede & of lengthe, certayne,
 þat twenty ilkane othir besyde
 One armede stedis myghte in ryde
 4245 *Withowtten drede*, and hafe reghte gud entre;
 And thus they come intoo that cite.
 And the townn folkes agayne þam come,
- closes by weight*
every person in town
You will not profit by locking the gates
to keep away
If
more stones
Injure you / bombard
let him in
kill you all
surrender
then / trust / live
advised
And f.147va
your will
took
threw
sturdy bolt
struck / strong turret
company
[i.e. not dressed for combat]
Break / said / made
fill
is sitting
burn
none shall either walk or run
either poor or
Unless / ditch
[So] that / peace
emir / glad
had the bridge broken / swiftly
immediately
flat
width
one next to the other
On armour-clad horses
entrance
came
towards them came

- And full faire gane theym welcome,
 And criede mercy with lowde steuenn,
 4250 Bot agaynes a Cristyn man was seuenn *loud voice*
 In that royalle cite of Saražynes. *for every / there were seven*
 Of siluere & golde and bawdkyns *silken cloths*
 To *Sir* Thomas onenane þay offre, *at once / brought*
 And to hym *with* full gud will þay profre *offered*
 4255 Landes, howsses, and mekill riche tresoure, *very rich*
 And to halde of hym for euermore.
 And than byfore *Sir* Thomas come þe renaye *renegade*
 & seid: '*Sir* Thomas thynke one, I the praye, *pray you*
 For this townn that thou mee highte *what you promised me*
 4260 Now, als þou arte a trewe knyghte, *f.147vb*
 Bot no mare will I that thou me gyffe,
 Bot mete & drynke whills I may lyffe;
 For wollewarde, one my bare fete
 I schall gange in snawe and slete, *Except for food / live*
 4265 Me to amenden of my synn, *clad in wool*
 þe joye of heuen for to wynn, *go / snow / sleet*
 Than to a preste he schrafe hym clene. *to atone for*
 The couande þat was made thaym bytwene *confessed*
Sir Thomas grantede þerto *with* full gud will, *agreement*
 4270 And thus *with* *Sir* Thomas he bylefte alle still *stayed*
 In werre and pese, whare he gane wende, *war / peace / may go*
 Euer aftir vntill his lyues ende. *the end of his life*
- B**ot lordynges, lystenys now my playnte
 & heris now of a tresone qwaynte: *complaint*
 4275 How þat þe Saraženes hafe samen spoken *hear / cunning treason*
 One the Cristyne men to be wreken, *together*
 And howe that the heghe amyralle þam redde: *avenged*
 'When þat þe Cristyn men are gane to bedde, *high emir / advised them*
 When þay are in their firste slepe, *gone to bed*
 4280 We schall full preualye to þam crepe; *very quietly / creep*
 Ane sall duelle the town within *One*
 þe ʒatis to vnschote & vnþyn. *to unbar and open the gates*
 And stillyly for to vnschote þe loke, *silently / to open the lock*
 And þan sall come armede in a floke *shall come in an armed host*
 4285 And slaa we sall *Sir* Thomas of Multon, *slay*
 And *with* hym euerilke a modir sone *[i.e. every man]*
 þat he hase hedir *with* hym broghte.' *to this place*
 Bot here of *Sir* Thomas ne wiste righte noghte, *of [this] / knew nothing*
 þay sethe their flesche & roste & brede, *boiled / roasted / fried*
 4290 And at þe nyghte vnto the sopere þay ʒede, *went to supper*
 And plentethe þer was of brede & wyne, *bread*
 Of pyment, of clarre, bothe gude & fyne, *sweetened and spiced wines*
 Of cranys, of swannes, & of fatte venysoune, *cranes*
 Of partrikes, of plouers, & also the heroune, *partridges / water-fowls / heron*
 4295 Of lauerokes also & oþer smalle volantyne. *larks / birds*
 þe Saraženes dide it alle for gyle, *in deceit*

- And of þe richeste wynnnes gaffe þam to drynke, gave
 And þay weren wery & liste wele wynke, weary / wanted to sleep
 And oneane þay wente þam vnto þaire riste at once / rest
 4300 In beddis full esyly with the beste,
 Pay slepte tyte faste & heghe gane rowte. right away / snored loudly
 Þe Sarazynes wente þam þan *withowte*,
 And come alle armede vnto the zate. gate
 Þe renaye stode alle redy theratte, renegade f.148ra
 4305 Pay knokkede faste appon the wekett, small door
 Bot he lete it stande full stille schott, shut
 And rane & tolde *Sir Thomas* how þat he hade herde
 Of alle the tresone, & how it ferde. what it was happening
 Sir Thomas þeroffe no boste gane make, made no noise
 4310 Bot alle his folkes belyue he gane awake,
 For Goddes he thaym preyede and badde:
 ‘Dighttis zowe wele,’ he seide, ‘or ze bene dede!’ And / quickly / woke up
 And þay starte swithe vp & were affrayede, Prepare yourselves / you will die
 When þat þay wiste þat they were bytrayedede. swiftly
 4315 His folkes þam armed thane full zerne, knew
 And yschewede owte at a preue posterne, immediately
 Or any Sarazyne oughte of þam wiste. moved out / through / secret passage
 Þer whills þat þe Sarazenes houed and thriste Before / knew
 And with strengthe walde in hafe wonn, while / moved onward / forced their way
 4320 Bot ilke a [zate] þan þe Ynglys es ronn would have gained entry
 And schottes full faste, als I zowe saye. Except / to every gate / ran
 And by that tyme bygane þe sprynge of daye, shut
 Bowes & alblastirs þe Ynglys bent, began to dawn
 And thurgh euerilke a strete þe Ynglis went, crossbows
 4325 And schotten arowes and quarelle, bolts
 And alle þay hitte righte doun þay felle, all [that] they hit / they felled
 þay ne lefte in waye ne in howse either on the street or
 Noghte lyffande, in alle Orgolyous, Not alive
 Burgesse ne wyfe ne childe zonge. Man / woman / young child
 4330 And when þay hade made that rekkenynge, settled the accounts
 He gaffe þe folke, aftire þat toyle, He [i.e. Multon] gave / that battle
 Bestis, tresoure, and alle the dispoyle booty
 þat þay in þe toun fynde myghte, might find
 Amanges þam alle he bade schyfte it righte: share
 4335 Siluere & golde euerilke a grote, every coin
 Euerilke Cristyn man ther hade his lott, his share
 þat þer ne was nane so littill page none
 þat he ne hade to his wage
 Of golde and siluere & riche tresoure,
 4340 To be riche ynoghe þerone for euermore. very rich
 Thomas lete, or he went thane, before
 Owte of *presoun* to take euerilke Cristyn man,
 Euerilke pilgryme and palmere, pilgrim to the Holy Land
 And gaffe þam landis and renttis there;
 4345 And with þam he stablede þe toun, I saye. pacified
 Who so comes þerby may see in faye by that place / in truth

- In þe chefe hageste torett,
Of Kyng Richerde his armes was sett
Owte in a banere to his honour,
4350 In tokynyng þat he was þerof conquerour. *highest turret f. 148rb*
[a banner with] KR's arms
- N**ow lordynges, now haue 3e herde
Of thies two townnes how it ferde,
And how þat Kyng Richerd, with maistrye,
Wane þe townn of Sodayne Turrye,
4355 And Orgolyus wane Sir Thomas of Multon,
And slewe therin euery modir sone.
Of Ebody now will we speke,
þat harde hase theire 3atis ysteke,
When Sir Fuke Doly it bylaye,
4360 þat entire noghte he ne maye.
He and his folkes bylaide þe townn,
And loged thaym in pauelyoun.
þe cite was bothe stronge and stowtte,
And seuen mile vmgange it was abowte,
4365 And full prys towrres many ane by tale,
And in ilkane a chefe amyralle.
þe folkes of armes, by righte assent,
Were annomerde to xl thowsande,
Withowtten othir smalle pedaile –
4370 Als alde men & 3ong men & poueraylle –
þat na man couthe þe nommere accountte
How many þat þay wolde too amountte.
Sir Fuke broghte full gud engynes –
Slyke ne knewe ne Sarazynes –
4375 One euerilke halfe he garte arere,
His faamen a newe layke to lere.
His maungonelle þan lette he bende,
And to þe pris toure þan lete he sende
A full grete stane þerowtte flyes.
4380 And when the folke of þe toun þatt sees,
'Allas!' þay cryede, & hadde grete wonndere;
It rowttede als it hade bene þe thonndire.
And one þe chefe tour þe stane swaa hitt
þat twenty fotte awaye it smytte,
4385 And slew of Sarazenes full many þerin.
Bot Sir Fuke lete efte bende þat engyne,
And to ane othire towrre a stane he threwe
For to make þam þerwith ferde ynoghe.
And alle þe taa syde it smate awaye,
4390 And slewe of þase dogges of þe false laye.
þay bett doun þe towrres alle,
In þe townn and one þe walle.
A prys towre stode ouere þe 3ate,
He bende his engyne and threwe þeratte
4395 A grete stane þat full harde draffe,
- proof*
- these / what happened*
skill
Won
- every man*
- gates locked*
besieged it
could not enter
surrounded
encamped / pavilions
- in circumference*
splendid towers / according to accounts
each one / emir
complete agreement
numbered / 40 thousand
Excluding / foot soldiers
- poor*
could / reckon
amount to
siege machines
Such that the Saracens did not know
every side / erected [the machines]
to teach his enemies / [form of] attack
catapult / bent
strongest tower
- saw*
were greatly afraid
roared / thunder
stone hit so [hard]
it swept [the tower]
- And / again*
another
very afraid
one side / swept away
those / faith
beat
- noble / gate*
there
stone / plunged
- f.148va

- And þe walle in peces it alle toraffe – *tore apart*
 And alle barres & alle þe hurdasse – *palisade*
 þat þe ʒates brake, and þe portcolysse. *broke / portcullis*
 Þerto he gaffe anoþir strake
- 4400 And brake þe bemys þat weryn of ake, *beams / oak*
 And slewe þe folkes þat therin stode.
 And thase othere, for drede, wente nere wode *others / almost mad*
 And seide it was þe deuylles dynt, *the devil's blow*
 And sayde: 'Mawhownn, whatt so he ment, *does he intend*
- 4405 Þis Cristyn hounde þat highte Sir Fuke, *is called*
 He es no man, he es a puke *devil*
 þat owte of helle es awaye ystollyn. *has slipped out*
 With euyll sekenes myghte he bolne, *fatal illness / may he swell up*
 For this townn he bysegges so faste; *so intensively*
- 4410 Giffe he to vs maa stanes caste, *If / more stones*
 Alle the cite þan he will downn bete; *beat down*
 Howses for to stande, he will none lete.⁹ *he will not leave a house standing*
 Sir Fuke gane hym þan appayraille *made ready*
 With his folkes þe townn to assaylle.
- 4415 Bot or he þe townn *with* strengthe wane, *before / won*
 Þer was slayne full many a man.
 For þe townn dike, one euerilke a syde, *moat / every*
 It was bothe brade, depe & full wyde, *broad / deep*
 Full of gromme þat na man may swyme, *filth / nobody / swim*
- 4420 Þe walle was sett reghte appon þe bryme, *water*
 And bytwene myghte no man stande.
 Bot the archers of Ynglande *Although*
 Schott in full meryly their arowes smale,
 Þe townn folke lete þeroffe no tale. *paid no attention to that*
- 4425 And þe Sarazenes bendide appon þe walle *bent*
 Alblaster of vyce and grete spryngalle, *Crossbows / bow-like engines*
 And schott quarells & that full many, *bolts*
 And of oure folkes þay slewe grete companye
 And envenomede alle þaire takills was. *Because all their arrows were poisoned*
- 4430 And when Sir Fuke was warre of þat ilke case – *became aware*
 þat þay his men one this wiese slewe – *in this manner*
 Howsses withowtten downn þay drewe,⁹ *they pulled down the houses outside the wall*
 & broghte trees and many boughe abowte – *timber / branches*
 To do þaire will folkes broghte ynoghe. *plenty*
- 4435 And þe Cristyn men made þam targe *shields*
 Of dores and of wyndowes large. *From doors*
 Ilkone toke a wyndowe or ane heche *Each one / a lower part of a door*
 And broghten to tymbir and [þeche], *brought [them] to / straw*
 Grete schydis and also wodde, *planks / wood*
- 4440 And slange full faste into þe modde, *threw [them] / moat*
 And keste þe dore abownn oneane, *doors / above*
 þat þe Cristyn men myghte wele ouer gane *[So] that / go*

⁹ C *He bad hem to wipdrawe*; this is a more logical line than in B because it explains that the men withdrew from the assault before going for wood and timber.

- Euen to þe walle & stonde full sekire,
 And hande for hande to gyffe þam bekire.
 4445 A sorye b[e]uerage was there brewede,
 Quarells & arowes full thikke persuyde,
 [þe] Inglys slewe alle that they toke,
 No Sarazyne thane durste owte loke.
 þe staffe-slyngers full faste þay slynge,
 4450 And the kymnells downn þay dyng
 With flynttes and with stanes rownnde,
 þat many a Sarazene felle to þe grounde,
 þat ouer þe walle þay þam threwe.
 And þe Cristyn wilde fyre one þam blewe
 4455 þat many ane howse there onane righte
 Stode righte appone a leme full lighte,
 Full many a lane and many a strete.
 þe Sarazenes righte there, for hete,
 Drewe owte theirre goddes & faste fledde:
 4460 ‘Allas!’ & ‘Helpe, Mahoun!’, full lowde þay criede.
 Bot when þe Ynglysmen herde þat crye,
 Oneane þay wexe full hardye,
 To wynn þe townn oneane þay wende.
 Bot þay *within* dide þam ful harde defende:
 4465 Gyffe ane were dede & downn yfalle,
 Anoper sterte vp appon þe walle
 Into þe stede þer he in stode,
 And werid it *with* full egre mode,
 þat no Cristyn man myghte in wynn,
 4470 Bot þay were sone slayne or ells takyn.
 Amanges þe townn folkes þer was [no] gamen,
 To consaile þay gadirde samen,
 And þer þan saide thierr chefe amyralle:
 ‘Lordynges,’ he saide, ‘lystenys to my tale,
 4475 This segge es grete & this fire es strange,
 And this waa maye we noghte enduren lange.
 And to slaa vs *Sir* Fuke hase grete desire,
 And hase sett oure townn thusgates one fire.
 And peese till vs will he none graunte
 4480 Bot 3if it be one swilke a couenaunte:
 þat we oure god Mawhownn forsake,
 And Cristyndome vntill vs take,
 And lefe one Jhesu Criste and Marie.
 And that were dispite and velanye,
 4485 þat we scholde lefe one false laye;
 Gase & armes 3owe euerilke man, I saye,
 þat strange es wapyn for to bere,
 And gase to þe walles þe townn for to were.
 Of folkes we hafen swilke ten
 4490 Als *Sir* Fuke hase of the Cristyn men
 To feghte *with* vs now hedir broghte.
 Gase & beese nowe hardy & dredis þam noghte;
- stand / safely*
battle
bitter
flaw
dared to look out
hurled [missiles]
battlements / knocked down
rocks / round stones
Those [who] / threw themselves
Greek fire
immediately
flame
because of the heat
goods
And
At once / became strong
thought
defended themselves bravely
If one was killed and felled down
stood up
the place where the other had stood
fought / fiercely
gain access
Unless / seized
no joy
gathered together
their
siege / strong f.149ra
woe / we may not endure for long
slay
thus
Unless / such an agreement
convert to
believe in
would be an outrage / a crime
believe in / faith
Go and arm / everyone
is strong [enough] to bear weapons
to defend
men / ten times (as many)
As
here
Go & be strong / do not fear

	For better vs es owte for to rynn, þan in howsses als wreches to bryne	<i>it is better for us to run out as wretches to burn</i>
4495	And thus for fry in oure ownn gres! Thies Ynglys men are faynte & hertles, And of mete and drynke þay hafe defaute, And we sall slaa þam in assawte, And felle þam in the playne felde;	<i>to fry / own fat deceitful / heartless lack slay / assault open field</i>
4500	We ne will this townn zelde To no Cristyn hounde, whills we may leuen!’ And when he hade this consell giffen, Euerilke a man þan his armour one hym keste, And come to hym bothe ferse & preste	<i>will not surrender live put on came / fierce / ready</i>
4505	To feghte þan were þay alle full felle. And to their temple þay wente full snelle, And ilke a man one his beste gyse Knelyde doun there & made sacrafice To Mawhownn firste, & sythen to Jubiter,	<i>eager promptly every man / attire Knelt then</i>
4510	þat þay scholde helpe þam in that were. ‘For we hade neuer,’ þay seide, ‘nede or nowe, And here we maken oure avowe: þe pris this daye, and we may wynn, þat we ne schalle neuer sesse ne blyne	<i>war need before now vow if we win the day cease nor desist</i>
4515	To fyghte agayne the Cristyn faye, To we be slayne & owtrayed for aye.’ And in foure than they dalte their rowte, And at the foure 3atis þay yschewed owte. þe firste oste <i>Sir</i> Arkarde ledde,	<i>against / faith Until / are / annihilated / for ever divided / company through / gates / moved out host / was led by</i>
4520	And alle abowte there he hym sprede. And one <i>Sir</i> Cowdraye, he ledde anoper, And with hym was <i>Sir</i> Orphyas, his brothir. þe thride oste <i>with</i> hym gane lede One <i>Sir</i> Materbe, withowtten drede.	<i>one</i>
4525	One <i>Sir</i> Gargoile, he ledde þe ferde, Bot <i>withowtten</i> dowte alle þe erthe Vndir their fete full faste it quokke. <i>Sir</i> Fuk Doly gude kepe he toke; Their folkes ware rawnged in þe playne,	<i>fourth And trembled arranged on</i>
4530	Foure score hundrethe thowsande, in certayne, Off fote folkes, knyghtis & sqwyers, And of pris lordis with baners, Ther was sixty amyrralls, Of hardy knyghtis & doughty vassalls.	<i>[i.e. eight million] noble emirs</i>
4535	One stedis trapped wele armyde þay ryde Batelle appone þe felde thereto habyde. <i>Sir</i> Fuk þan gane his folkes ordayne Howe þat þay scholde þan theym demayne: þe forthirmaste he sett his alblasterreres,	<i>armour-clad steeds / rode to face battle on the field made ready control</i>
4540	And aftir þam his gud Ynglys archers, And nexte aftir þam his staffe-slyngers, And othir thane with sheldis and speris.	<i>First of all / crossbowmen soldiers armed with slings in their staffs others then</i>

- And he deuysede þan the thirde parte arrayed
 With swerde, knyffe, axes & darte,
 4545 þe men of armes come althir laste. men-at-arms / last of all
 ‘Now,’ quod *Sir Fuk*, ‘ne beese noghte agaste,
 Giff þat þay be mo þan are wee.’ Do not be frightened
 Þay blissede þam þan, & felle one knee:
 ‘Now, þe Fadir & þe Sone & þe Holy Goste,’ If they are more than we are
 4550 Quod *Sir Fuk*, ‘safe now þe Cristyn oste; crossed themselves
 Lady Mary, oure erande now þou byde, save / host
 þat thi dere sone helpe vs now at this nede, petition / plead
 And kepe oure honour nowe, we the praye, your dear son
 For priste we sall bene for the this daye, pray you
 4555 For his luffe þat diede appon the rode.’ ready / for you
 The Sarazenes þan, *with full egre mode*, the love of he who died on the cross
 Þair wapyns full faste þan gane þay grippe, angrily
 And bygane to trompe and to pype, Their weapons / gripped
 And to fechte þe Cristyn weren full swyfte. blow trumpets and pipes
- 4560 Ilke a lorde his banere lete lyfte,
 With the kynde armes of his awnn;
 For þat he scholde by þam be knawenn, Each / had his banner lifted
 For to folowe & for to habyde, the coat of arms of his own
 In that batelle þer als they ryde. known
- 4565 þe Sarazenes come þan *with full grete will*,
 Bot when þat þe Cristyn myghte come þam till, stay [with him]
 To schotte faste þe ablasterers þam drisses, towards them
 And Ynglys archers euen to þam gessis, f.149va
 Þay smate þam at euerilke schote crosbowmen took position
 4570 Thurghe sydis and thurgh throte. aimed at them
 And staffe-slyngers *with grete stanes*
 Slewe many of þam, for þe nanes, struck / every
 Off the vawarde a thowsande score; through / throat
 þe Cristyn men wexe þe baldere þerfore. vanguard / [i.e. twenty thousand]
- 4575 Fuke Doly lete lifte vp a standarde
 With the armes of Kyng Richerde, grew bolder
 Bot when the Sarazenes it gane sene, had a standard lifted
 Þay wenyd that Kyng Richerde þer had þan bene And / saw it
 Righte amanges þam, in the batelle þer, thought / was there
- 4580 And of hym þay weren adrade full sare. very much afraid
 Knyghtis and amyalls þat were prowde,
 ‘Lays one faste!’ þay cried full lowde, Strike fast
 ‘Brynge 3e the cite owte of care, grief
 Eyull mote he spede þat his faa will spare!’ Evil to him who spares his foe
- 4585 Sir Archarde toke a grete launce,
 And come prikande with euyl chauce came spurring / bad luck
 To *Sir Fuke Doly* he gane bere full faire, struck hard
 And he with anoþer mett hym alle 3are, [Doly] with another [blow] / ready
 And righte *with playne force in þe felde*
- 4590 *Sir Fuke* percede his brode schelde, pierced [the Saracen's]
 And reghte thorow þe hert full euen it schare; heart / cut
 And þe Sarazyne felle righte doun dede þer.

- With boste þan come *Sir Cowdraye* *pride / came*
 Agaynes a knyghte of oure laye, *faith*
 4595 And with a fawcheoun he gane hym smytte;
 He bare a swerde þat wolde wele byte, *broad sword / he [i.e. the S.] struck*
 And in þe nekke he hitt hym with alle, *He [the Christian] wielded / cut*
 Pat þe hede went offe als a balle. *all [his strength]*
like a ball
 Pan one a rabytt come *Sir Orphias*,
 4600 For boste prikkande a full grete pase, *on an Arab horse came*
 A grete schafte in his hande he bare:
 ‘Come feghte *with me*,’ he bade, ‘wha sa dare!’ *Proudly spurring / at top speed*
Sir John Doly, of *Sir Fukes kyn*,
 A ʒonge knyghte full of joye *within*,
 4605 In hande he toke a spere full lange, *very long spear*
 Þe poynte was scharpe, þe schafte was strange, *strong*
 And one his schelde he hitt hym swaa *in such a way*
 Pat it cleued euenn in twaa, *cut it straight in two*
 And slewe hym there full sekirly,
 4610 And sayd: ‘Heythyn doge, ly þer þou, ly *Heathen / lie / you*
 And ryste the there to domysdaye; *rest until*
 For nowe arte þou sekir of thy paye.’ *you are certain / your reward*
 Bot togedir when þat þe ostes mett, *armies*
 Fukes folke myghte no mare thane schotte, *could shoot no more*
 4615 Bot byhynde the armede men þay went *And*
 Pat na Sarazenes scholde þam schentte, *[So] that no S. / injure*
 Bot men of armes thane *with swerdis brayde*, *And / broad swords*
 Full faste appon the Sarazenyys layde *hit*
 With babills of stele and with mace *pikes*
 4620 Þay smate þam faste righte in the face, *struck*
 And slyke strakes þay þam lent *such blows*
 Pat helmys & bacenettis *insondre* went *helmets & neck protection / in pieces*
 Pat ouer þe scholdire felle the brayne. *So that brains spilt out over shoulders*
 Þe Cristyn folkes were egre of mayne: *bold / strength*
 4625 Þe fote folkes & symple knaues *infantry & honest footsoldiers*
 Faughte *with axes* and with staues, *spears*
 With pikes smate theym thurgh þe breste,
 And slewe alle þat was theym nexte. *near them*
 Was þer no Sarazyne in that floke *There was / group*
 4630 Fro he haffed hade anes a knoke, *[who] had had a blow from them once*
 With a grete staffe & wele bysett *well directed*
 One helme, one scholdre or one bacenett,
 Pat he ne ʒede downn topsayle, *That did not fall upside down*
 Ouere and ouere his horse tayle.
 4635 With staffes & axes þat wele wolde bytt, *cut*
 Horse & man righte downn þay smytt; *struck*
 And sone *within* a littill stownde, *soon / a while*
 Þe maste partye was broghte to þe grownde. *most*
 And the lordes sees how that they spedde, *saw / fared*
 4640 And faste awaye forsothe þay fledde, *certainly*
 And in þe townn þay wolde hafe bene. *they wished [they] had been*
 Bot *Sir Fukes folke* was þam bytwene,

- Pat passage to kepe & for to lett, hinder
 And one euerilke a syde þay were bysett [the Saracens] were surrounded
 4645 Pat nane of þam ne myghte aschape. none / could escape
 And þe Cristyn folke one þam gane frappe. struck
 When alle þe fote folkes weren yslawe, slain
 Grete lordes thane faste downn þay drawe –
 Pat satte one stedis & rabittes alle trappede – steeds & Arab horses / armour-clad
 4650 And oneane þaire hedis weren alle to rappede. at once / heads / struck off
 There Jhesu helpede & þat was wele sene;
 þaire faamen þay slewe þerfore alle bydene, foes / completely
 And striped þam nakede vnto þaire serke. undergarment
 And when þay had maked alle pleyne þat werke, done the work completely
 4655 Sir Fuk, þat noble man ywysse,
 With tromppettis thane lete blawe þe prys, blew / [for] victory
 And na man lete those dogges bery. no / bury
 þe Cristyn men ristede & made þam mery, rested
 And of gude wyne ilke a man dranke his fille. every man / in abundance
 4660 And when þat þay haffed hade þair herttis will, f.150ra
 Colyde þam wele & couerde thaire statte, Refreshed themselves / regained strength
 Oneane þay brake the townn 3ate. broke / gate
 And Sir Fuk there with his oste in rade, rode in
 Bot no heythyn man hym there abade. faced
 4665 And euerilke Sarazene that they mett,
 With ane euyll hayle þay hym grett gave them a vile welcome
 For þe luffe of their Mawhownn,
 By the scholdirs þay parede the crownn. cut off / head
 þe fote men þam come byhynde, came behind them
 4670 And slewe alle þat þay myghte fynde:
 Man and womane alle 3ode to the swerde, went to the sword [i.e. were killed]
 Bothe in howses and in 3erde. in the surrounding grounds
 þe Cristyn folke fand, als I 3ow saye, found
 Mare tresoure þan þay myghte lede awaye, More / could carry
 4675 Of siluere and golde in that cite.
 And to the Cristyn men þan, with hert full fre,
 And full curtaysly þan said Sir Fuke:
 ‘Ilke a man his wynnynge bruke, Each man / take
 Amanges 3ow 3e it dele & dighte, divide it / assign
 4680 For gudes vs es no nede to fyghte.’ We do not need to fight over goods
 Of siluere, of riche stones and of golde,
 Ilke man toke righte what he wolde. wished
 To the Cristyn folkes Sir Fuk þan lete
 To wonn by lanys and by strete To remain / lanes / streets
 4685 To wonn there and kepe and wake, To stay / watch over
 By nyghte & day wer[d]e for to make, to mount guard
 To safe it & to kepe wele and fyne
 Fra the sowdane, Sir Saladyne.
 And one þe townn walle, one euerilke a cornere,
 4690 He garte be sett vp a faire banere had a banner set up
 One a schafte full brode displeyede
 With Kyng Richerd arnes wele purueyede, arranged

- In the sygne and to bere recorde
pat Kyng Richerd was their chefe lorde. *As a sign*
- 4695 **A**nd when he had stabled þus þe townn, *pacified*
 þan with his oste he made hym bowenn *host / ready*
 To Orglyous, to *Sir* Thomas. *To [go to]*
 And forthe þay rade a grete pase *rode forth at great speed*
 To Kyng Richerde, to Sodayn Turry.
- 4700 And he kyssed þam and sett thaym hym by, *sat / by him*
 And ilkane tolde þan of his chaunce. *each one / battles*
 And righte so come Philipe, þe Kyng of Frawnce, *came*
 And to Acres thane gane þay retorne, *returned*
 Aftir þaire grete swynke there to sogeourne, *labour / to stay*
- 4705 To duelle in riste there a littill stownnde *rest / a short while*
 And to hele þam thereof their wounde. *heal / wounds* f.150rb
 For some ther was brissed and bett, *were bruised / beaten*
 To bathe þam some & oþer some blode to lett,
 And to take ayer & eke solace, *air / also*
- 4710 To gange one ryuere & als one chase. *go to the river / also / hunting*
 Bot it felle appon a daye aftirwarde, *happened*
 Kyng Philippe ete with Kyng Richerde, *ate*
 So dide dukes, erles, and many a barowenn,
 Þe men of Fraunce of maste renowenn, *most*
- 4715 And with thaym alle their knyghttis fre *them*
 þat þay broghte fra byzonde the see: *sea*
 Thomas of Multon and *Sir* Fuk Doly,
 Erles, barouns, and knyghtis full hardy
 Of Ynglande, of Gaiscoyne, & of Spayne,
- 4720 Of Lumbardie, of Geene, and of Almayne. *Genoa / Germany*
 Trompes blewe and tabours diden dasche, *Trumpets / drums rolled*
 Þe mete was redy and þay gane wasche. *washed*
 Þay were sett down vnto the table, *sat at*
 And serued wele, *withowtten* any fable, *without lying*
- 4725 To their talentes of flesche and fische, *desire / meat*
 France men, Lumbardes, Gaiscoynes, Ynglis.
 Of riche wyne there was grete plentee,
 Of gude pyment of Tire, & of gud clarre. *spiced and sweetened wines*
- 4730 And aftir þe mete than were þe clothes drawenn, *meal / tableclothes removed*
 And of their comynge Kyng Richerd was fayne: *glad*
 ‘Now lordynges,’ he saide, ‘makes joye & gamen.’ *be merry*
 And ilke man spekes *with* othire insamen; *each / with one another*
 Some spake of hawkes & oþer some of venerry, *spoke / hunting*
 And othir some comonde of þaire cheuallry. *praised / chivalry*
- 4735 ‘Now,’ quode Kyng Rycherde, ‘lates euerilke man telle *each*
 Whatt he haues done & how hym byfelle, *has / fared*
 Whaa hase the strangeste distres, *Who / has [had] / strongest*
 And whaa hase done þe maste prowesche. *highest prowess*
 I myselve wanne Sodayn Turry, *won*
- 4740 And of þe folkes ne haffed I no mercy; *I had no*
 Alle þat þer was I & myn hoste sloughe, *slew*

- And wanne þer tresour euyenn ynoghe: *treasure*
 Cristen men now alle ther bee.' *they will be*
- 4745 Sir Thomas gan þan his dedis mene: *told*
 'I wane,' he sayde, 'þe Castelle Orglious, *won*
 And bathe mayden & grome, man & spowse *both girl & boy / woman*
 Myn oste þay slewe alle there als þay forthe zede, *moved forth*
 And badd þam alle the gude.' *wished them all well*
- 4750 And thane tolde Sir Fuke Doly *won*
 And seiden: 'I myselfe wanne Ebidy, *[They] gained nothing by begging for*
 Ne gayned righte nozte to crien mercy, *what should dogs do but die* f.150va
 For whane scholde dogges do bott dy? *hopped headless*
 Alle the folke hoppede hedles,
 In this manere I made theire pese:
- 4755 I distroyede alle the haythyn blode, *all of the heathen blood*
 And gaffe the Cristyn men alle þaire gude *goods*
 I gaffe that I therein fande, *gave [all] that / found there*
 And stabledede it into Cristyn hande.' *pacified*
- 4760 Quod Kyng Philippe: 'Bot I ne dide nozte soo; *Said / did not do so*
 Taborett and Archane I went vnto,
 Þe folkes come owte of bathe the citees *both towns*
 And criede mercy and felle one knees,
 And for euerilke hede I toke rawnsone, *every head / ransom*
 And to me þay zalde aythire townn, *surrendered both towns*
- 4765 And vp þay sett ther my banere
 And we weren at ane on this manere: *were agreed*
 Ilke a zere trewage me to gyffe, *To pay tribute every year*
 And sware ane athe þer whills þay may lyfe *swear / an oath that while*
 Þe townn to holde euermore of mee.
- 4770 And of þam I had þan grete pite, *took pity*
 And for to slaa men was me neuer lefe.' *I never enjoyed slaying men*
 Kyng Richerde token that to grefe, *was grieved by that*
 And one hym þan gane he stare. *stared at him*
 Says: 'Thi werke dowe noghte euyll myghte þou fare, *Your work is worth nothing*
 4775 þou ware wele worthy mawgre to haue, *to have dishonour*
 Sarazyne lyfe þat þou will saue
 To graunte þam lyfe for any mede, *reward*
 For þer þou dide to God falsehede. *disloyalty*
 And þer þou hafe done to þe Cristyn grete schame,
- 4780 And broghte thiselfe in euyll fame.
 Alle swilke werkes I refuyse, *such deeds*
 And the thyselpe, gif þou it vse, *you yourself, if you consider it*
 Þou ne dide noghte als I the badde. *did not do as I ordered you*
 And þou be efte in fighte stadde, *should you find yourself caught in a fight again*
- 4785 þou sall fynde þam, withowtten lese, *certainly*
 þat þay sall be thi mooste foes. *worst*
 And zif þou þam alle yslayne, *had you killed them all*
 þou and thi folkes myghte haue bene fayne *would have been glad*
 And wonn alle þe gudis withinn.
- 4790 And nowe es newe werke to bygynn, *there is a new*
 And that thiselfe schalle wele wiete.' *know well*

- Quod Kyng Philipe: 'I will thedire 3itt *go to that place*
 For to proue gif it be so.
 Giffe þay will me any gile do, *If / do any treachery*
 4795 Or be abowte me to anoye,
 I sall slaa alle and distroye, f.150vb
 Þay sall neuer than hafe no grythe.' *truce*
 Now quod Kyng Richerd: 'Gif I wende þe with, *with you*
 Þe bettir I hope the may betyde.' *happen to you*
 4800 And one þe morne þay gane forthe ryde *in the morning / rode*
 With their ostes to Taborett. *hosts*
 And the folkes *within* the 3atis schett, *shut the gates*
 And callede Kyng Philipe faynte & false cowarde, *deceitful*
 Full false wreche, and hase broken forewarde. *wretch / [their] agreement*
 4805 'Þou gaffe vs lefe for oure rawnsone,
 Þou sall noghte hafe of this townn,
 No mare hethyn to þe worldis ende.' *from this moment to the end of the world*
 Quod Kyng Richerd to Kyng Philip: 'Hafe now in mynde
 I sayde the sothe, loo nowe, *Sir* Kyng.' *look*
 4810 And oneane *in* his sighte his banere down þay dyngge, *at once / knocked down*
 And brake it insondre for grete dispitt, *broke it in two as an insult*
 And into peces rafe it & that full tite, *tore it apart / very quickly*
 And in the dyke down es it thrawenn, *moat / thrown*
 And sett vp ane reghte of þaire awenn, *one / own*
 4815 And badde hym than ga do his beste. *to go [and]*
 Kyng Richerd bade his frendis: 'Hafe no ryste,
 Bot assaylle we,' he seide, 'þis townn swythe,
 And euerilke man his myghte kythe *rest*
 One thies dogges þat we were wroken.' *swiftly*
 4820 Bot when Kyng Richerd had this wordes spoken, *show his might*
 þe Cristen men keste trees in the dyke, *these / to be avenged*
 And oneane þay wanne ouere ylyke. *And / these*
 þe folkes one the walles þat ware *threw*
 For to defende þam, þay made þam 3are *soon / won / in the same way*
 4825 In alle the maners that they myghte. *that were on the walls*
 Grete stanys & stokkes threwe þay dounrighte, *themselves ready*
 And some of þe Cristyn full euyll þay hurte. *s. & s. [i.e. everything] / right down*
 For drede, archers abakke þan sterte, *hastened*
 And the Sarazenes thane they garte sckayre *frightened*
 4830 With quarells & arowes hurte þam full sare. *bolts / arrows / painfully*
 Þay slewe alle þat þay ouertoke
 þat ouer the walle there dorste nane loke. *nobody dared look*
 þe Cristyn men þe walle gane vndirmyne – *undermined*
 Quod Kyng Richerd: 'I ne will neuer syne, *will not sin*
 4835 Sitt one grownnde, drynke, nor ete,
 Till that I haue this townn ygete' – *Until I have won this town*
 And in the dyke þe walle ouerthrewe, *the wall collapsed in the moat*
 þe oste went in and many slewe
 With swerdis, axes, and *with* knyfes;
 4840 þay slewe men & childire & also wyfes. *children / women* f.151ra

- T**he oste þay wolde late lange duelle þer,
 Bot to þe cite of Archane þan gan þay fare.
 Þe folkes of þe townn þe 3atis þan schott
 Kyng Philipe for to halde þer owte.
 4845 And sayd: 'Kyng cowarde, gaa thi waye,
 Here hafe þou loste for euer thi praye.
 Þou gaffe [vs] lyfe for oure tresoure,
 And of this townn ne getis þou neuer more.
 Alle at ones þan toke thou,
 4850 Here hafe þou loste thi lordechipe nowe;
 For þou arte false and fayntly wirkes,
 Of thy wrethe, whatte deuyll who rekkes!
 For alle that euer þou may vs nowe do to,
 We ne rekke neuer.' Þay dispysede hym so.
 4855 Kyng Richerd was þan full sore agreuede,
 And sayd to þam: 'þerin, þat mysbyleuede
 Solde nane of thaym be saued quykke!'
 Quarells and arowes flowe full thykke,
 Þe Cristyn oste the 3atis brynte,
 4860 Brake þe walle, and in þay wente.
 Þe Sarazenes þerin fledde, & full faste fekyde,
 Þe Cristyn folowed and slewe and stekede,
 And gaffe alle the folkes þer þaire bane;
 And thus Kyng Philipe wanne agayne Archane.
 4865 Now quod Kyng Richerd: 'Philippe, take to the
 Alle the gudes of ayther citee,
 And thus thou myghte hafe done or this
 To saue þam þou dide amys,
 Bot I forgiffe the the firste ille.
 4870 Þou may bewarre, gif þat þou will,
 And be we nowe gude frendis bathe,
 Bot I warne the, we sall be wrathe,
 Slyke foly este and thou it hawnnte,
 Any Sarazyne lyfe & þou euer graunte.
 4875 Bewarre þat þou no golde couayte,
 And in this lande do no dissayte.
 And þou be este fownden with gile
 For why we fallen ofte in grete perille,
 Be þe childe in oure lady barme,
 4880 Gaa sall þou noghte withowtten harme,
 Of golde þou sall hafe alle thi fille.'
 And he gane morne & holde hym stille,
 He lowrred downn & his fyngirs gane pyke,
 With Kyng Richerd wordes hym gane ille lyke,
 4885 For þose wordes þat he gane till hym dele.
 And thus Kyng Richerde gane hym consele:
 'Be trewe & do als I the teche,
 And goo we forthe this contre to seche,
 And slaa oure fomen & wynn þe crosse.'

wished / dwell there longer

went

the gates shut

To keep KP outside

go your way

your good name

will not get anymore

at once then you took [ransom]

behave cowardly

anger / who cares

that you may ever do to us

We do not care / They showed contempt

annoyed

those who do not believe [in Christ]

Should none / alive

flew

burnt the gates

Broke / went in

retreated

stabbed

death

won

to you

both towns

you should / before

did wrong

forgive you / the first

if

both

warn you / furious

[If] such / you engage in again

and you spare any S.'s life

do not covet gold

deceit

If you ever again are found to be dishonest

For which / danger

By / in Mary's arms

You shall not go unharmed

your heart's desire

he [i.e. Philip] grieved / held

frowned / picked at his nails

He disliked KR's advice

[Richard] gave him

instruct you

search

slay / enemies

- 4890 Kyng Philip ansuerde *with mylde voyce*
 And sayd: 'In me sall be no delaye
 To helpe þerto alle þat I maye.'
 Kyng Richerd & Kyng Philipe *with grete oste*
- 4895 Þay went þan downn by þe see coste,
 And agaynes þam þan come alle þaire nauye:
 Schippes, cogges, and full many a galie,
 Barges stowtttes, & dromoundes felle
 Chargede *with wyne, floure, and mele,*
 With armours and oþer ful gude vetaile,
 4900 [P]at nothyng to þe oste solde faile.
- I**t was at þe Sayne James tyde,
 When þat fowlles begynnes for to chide,
 Þe oste remowed to Cayphas,
 Þat ten mile fro Acres was,
 4905 Euermore forthe by the maryn,
 By a faire ryuere þat highte Chalyn.
 And Saladyn, þe sowdane, þerof herde telle,
 And he come flyngande aftire full suelle
 With ane hundrethe thowsande Sarazenes kene.
- 4910 He thoghte thane alle oure Cristyn to tene,
 And he oueretoke oure rerewarde,
 And bygane to bekire full harde.
 Hastily full many swerdes þay drewe,
 And many Cristyn man swythe þay slewe;
- 4915 Vnarmede was alle the rerewarde,
 And fled full faste to Kyng Richerde.
 Bot þat Kyng Richerd wiste this,
 Þat þe sowdane slewe men of his,
 One Fauelle of Sypris he satt – þat was falowe –
- 4920 He was als swyfte als was þe swalowe,
 For in alle þe worlde at nanekyns nede,
 Was þer nane þat hade a bettir stede.
 Þe kynges banere was vnhelyde,
 Þe Sarazenes sawe & it byhelde
- 4925 And when þe Sarazenes it gane see,
 Þay tornede þaire bakkes & faste gane flee,
 And þe Cristyn aftire þam gane ryde,
 And þay turned þam at that ilke tyde,
 And smate togedir *with grete rawndonme,*
- 4930 Als gyffe the worlde scholde falle downn.
 And Kynge Richerde byfore theym smate
 With his axe that bittirly bate,
 He theym hewed and insondre schare,
 Full many vndire his hande died thare;
- 4935 Neuer was man in erthe ryghte,
 Þat better agaynes the Sarazenes gan fighte.
 And many Cristyn, I telle 3ow for sekire,
 Hent their dede there in that bekire
- host
 sea shore
 with them / fleet
 cogs [i.e. sailing ships] / galley
 many dromonds [i.e. big ships]
 Stocked / grain
 supplies*
- on Saint James's Day [25 July]
 birds / screech
 Haifa*
- along the coast
 is called
 of that
 came rushing / swiftly*
- to harm
 rear-guard
 fight*
- soon*
- When / knew of*
- Favel of Cyprus / a bay horse
 a swallow
 no kind of
 There was none
 uncovered*
- saw it
 turned / fled fast
 rode
 themselves / same time
 clashed / violence*
- As if f.151va
 hit
 struck
 cut in pieces
 there*
- fought
 But / certain
 Found / death / battle*

- Thurgh a carte þat was *Sir* Howbertes Gawntere,
 4940 þat was lefte byhynde righte there. *cart that belonged to*
Sir Saladyn sones ther come iwys, *Saladin's / certainly*
 And toke þe carte with alle þe harnasse, *baggage*
 And the cartare loste his hande righte. *carter / right hand*
 Bot there was slayne full many a knyghte;
 4945 For the harnays kepede a fowrty, *And*
 And of theym was slayne a thirtty. *forty guarded the baggage*
 And Kyng Richerde hyed hym thedir fotte-hate,
 And 3itt almoste he come to late, *rushed to that place in haste*
 And in his hande he helde his axe gude, *too*
 4950 Full many a Sara3yne there lete he blode, *he made bleed*
 One euerilke a syde hym he layde ane, *On every / dealt blows*
 And slewe the Sara3ynes full thikke wane. *at great speed*
 þere was none armours, verrament, *in truth*
 So gude þat myghte *withstande* hym a dynte.
 4955 Oneane þe Langespraye, *in* þat tyde, *At once / at that moment*
 Layde one faste one anothir syde, *Attacked vigorously*
 And to þe grownd went þay þat he smate *all those that he struck*
With his swerde þat bittirly bate. *cut*
 This batelle was righte doughtous, *unpredictable*
 4960 And till oure men reghte *perilous*;
 For þe hete it was so strange, *for / dangerous*
 And þe doste rasse þam amange *heat / strong*
 And stoppede þe Cristyn mens andys, *dust / rose among them*
 þat þay felle down dede one the sandys. *breathing*
 4965 þat mo died for hete, at schorte wordis, *dead / sands*
 þan for þe dynttis of speris or swerdis. *more / briefly put*
 Kyng Richerde therfore sayd ofte, 'Allas!' *blows*
 For with the powdir nere loste he was, *dust*
 And downn one his knees þan gun he falle *fell*
 4970 And helpe to Jhesu there gane he calle, *called*
 For þe luffe of his modere, Marye. *love / mother*
 And als I fynde wretyn in historye, *a chronicle*
 He sees þer come Saynt George, hir knyghte, *saw / their*
 Appon a stede bathe gude and lyghte, *both*
 4975 With armours whitte als any floure,
 And a crosse of rede coloure.
 And alle þat he smate þan in that stownnde,
 Horse and man alle wende to the grownde,
 And also the wynde thane wexe more lythe,
 4980 þat comforthed þe Cristyn sterynly to stryve. *hit / at that time*
 And Kyng Richerde sees that ilke syghte, *went* f.151vb
 And in his herte þan wexe he lighte, *became gentler*
 And ful egerly, *withowtten* fayle, *sternly to engage in the struggle*
 þe Sara3enes he bygane to assayle. *saw that very sight*
 4985 And one *Sir* Brawndische, a stowte Lumbarde,
 Robert Thorname, and King Richerde,
 Alle þat agaynes þam gane dryve, *without doubt*
 Full sone þay refte þam þaire lyve. *attack*
against / drove
robbed them of their lives

- 4990 þe Sarazenes fledde to þaire ressett *refuge*
 Vnto the Mownnte of Nazarett.
 Bot þat were so hiede at the spowrre, *went so quickly*
 þat mekill of þaire folkes þay diden lore. *many / abandoned*
 Bot Kynge Richerd went þan a pase *And / quickly*
 Into the cite of Chaphas, *Haifa*
 4995 And of victorye þan were þay blythe, *glad*
 And thanked God full fele sythe, *many times*
 And alle þay maden grete solas
 For þe wynnyng of the cite of Caphas.
- S**one at mornne þan lete he crye *in the morning / made a proclamation*
 5000 þat alle his oste scholdre hie *should hurry*
 Towardes þe cite of Palatyne,
 And aye one forthe by þe maryn. *always forward along the coast*
 Þare þaire pauelyons downn þay tilt, *pavilions they pitched*
 And alle to lange ri3te ther they duellt *long / stayed*
 5005 For to hafe that their [vetaile] *supplies*
 þat come by þe watir, saunce fayle. *was coming / without doubt*
 Bot ouer alle othire, þat was þe werste duellynge *of all the others*
 þat euer 3itt dide Richerde duelle, oure kynge. *That R. had ever occupied*
 For the whills, the Sowdane Saladyne *At that time*
 5010 Sembled full many a bolde Sarazyne *Assembled*
 To bette downn the castells, *knock down*
 Citees, towres, and towrells. *turrets*
 And for þe firste þay bett down a castelle *knocked down*
 þat was called Mirabelle
 5015 And aftere that, the castelle Calaphyn
 þat was made of full gude engyne. *good design*
 Off Sessarye, þay fellede þe walle,
 And þe towre of Arsoure alle, *all the towers of Arsuf*
 Jaffe castelle also þan bett þay doumne, *Jaffa*
 5020 And þe gud castelle of Touroun.
 þe castelle Pelgryme þan fellyde þay þer,
 And also þe gud castelle Jasare.
 þe castelle of Seynt George de Rayne,
 þe castelle of C...
- 5025 [þey felde down & made al pleyn. *f. 152ra*
 þe walles þey felde off Jerusalem, *C p.64a*
 And eke þe walles off Bedlem. *toppled down / flat*
 Maydenes castel þey lete stande, *demolished*
 And the castel off Aukes lande. *also / Bethlehem*
 5030 Be þat coast were no moo leten, *Casal Maen*
 But þey were feld & down beten. *By that coast / no more spared*
 And þis he dede wiþouten lette; *felled / knocked down*
 For Richard scholde haue no recette. *he did without delay*
 Whenne he hadde þus idoo, *shelter*
 5035 Kyng Richard he sente vntoo *he [i.e. Saladin] / done*
 And seyde he wolde, þe nexte morwe,
 Mete hym in þe feld wiþ sorwe, *morning*
Meet / field / sorrow

- And wip a launce to hym ryde,
 3iff þat he durste hym abyde.
 5040 Vndyr the forest of Arsour
 He wolde asaye hys valour.
 Kyng Richard made it no3t tow3
 But for þat tydyng faste he low3,
 Hee leet crye in his hoost –
 5045 In þe name off þe Holy Gost –
 þat þey scholden wip vygour
 þat ny3t reste before Arsour,
 And di3ten hem al redy þan,
 At morwen to fy3te wip þe sowdan.
- 5050 **O**n Seynt Marye euen þe Natyuyte,
 þis ylke bataylle scholde be.
 Many was þe heþene man
 Wip Saladyn þat come þan:
 Off Inde, off Perse, off Babyloyne,
 5055 Off Araby & off Cessoynne,
 Off Aufrike and also of Bogy,
 And also of alle þe lande of Alexandry,
 And of moo landes þan men can telle,
 Saffe he þat made bothe heuen & helle.
 5060 þat nyghte was Kyng Richerde byfore Arso[ur],
 Vndir the faire foreste of Lesoure,
 And with [hym] ther was of Ynglande
 Wyse knyghttis and doughty of hande,
 Mekill Fraunce folke, and Templers,
 5065 Gascoynes, and also Ospetulers,
 And of Provynce a full faire companye,
 And also mekill peple of Lumbardye.
 [Off Gene, off Sesyle, and off Tuskan
 þere were dou3ty men off mayn,
 5070 Off Ostrych & off Alemayn
 þat weel cowde fy3te in þe playn.
 Off Crystene kny3tes þere were hende,
 þe fayreste hoost to þe worldes ende.
 And 3e schal here, as it is wrete,
 5075 Hou þe batayle was ismete.
- S**aladyn com be a mountayn
 & ouyrspradde hyl & playn.
 Syxty þousand, sayde þe spyne
 Was in þe fyrste cumpanye,
 5080 Wip longe speres, on heye stedes,
 Off gold & asure were here wedes.
 Syxty þousynd comen afftyrward
 Off Sarazynes stoute & hard,
 Wip many a pensel off sykematoun,
 5085 And off sendel grene & broun.
- If he dared face him*
Arsuf
test
showed no reluctance
news / laughed
He ordered to proclaim
- night*
make themselves ready
In the morning / fight / sultan
- On the eve of the nativity of Saint Mary*
This very battle
heathen
came then
India / Persia / Egypt
- Africa* f. 152ra
- Except for he [i.e. God]*
- Noble Frenchmen / Templars*
Gascons / Hospitallers
Provence
many people
Genoa / Sicily / Tuscany C p.64b
great strength
- Austria / Germany* C p.65a
could fight well
that were noble
in all the world
hear / written
fought
- came to*
spread over hill & valley
- There were*
noble steeds
blue / their attire
- pennon / cloth of gold*
silken cloth

- Almost come fyue & fifty þousinde
 Wiþ Saladyn þat comen behynde.
 þey comen alle styлле, nouzt fer behende,
 Here armure ferde al as it brende.
 5090 þre þousand Turkes comen at þe laste
 Wiþ bowe Turkeys & arweblaste.
 A þousand taboures & zitt moo
 Alle at ones þey smeten þoo
 Al þe erþe donyd hem vndyr,
 5095 þere myzte men see a syzte of wundir.
 Now speke we of Richard, oure kyng,
 Hou he com to batayle with hys gyng;
 He was armyd in splentes of steel
 And sat vpon his hors Fauel,
 5100 Weel hym louede baroun & knyzt,
 For he cowde weel araye a fyzt.
 þe fyrste batayle to þe Templeres
 He gaff, & to þe Hospytaleres,
 And bad hem goo in Goddes name
 5105 þe feend to schentschepe & to schame.
 Jakes de Neys & Jhon de Neles –
 Beffore þey wenten in þat pres –
 In þis world [ne] were þere
 No betere knyzttes þenne þey were.
 5110 Forþ þey prekyd, as I fynde,
 Wiþ knyzttes fully twenty þousynde,
 And þe Saraзynes þey mette,
 Wiþ grymly launse þey hem grete.
 Many Saraзyn hadden here fyn,
 5115 And wenten to Mahoun & Appolyn,
 And þo þat cauzten deþ off oure,
 Wenten to Cryst, oure saueoure.
 Jakes de Neys was a noble knyzt,
 To slee paynymys he dede hys myzt.
 5120 He prekyd beffore þe folk to rape
 Wiþ hys twoo sones & þat was scape.
 þre þousand Turkes comen wiþ boost
 Betwen Jakes & hys hoost,
 þat non help myzte come hym too;
 5125 For non helpe þat þey cowde doo,
 Ne he ne myzte hym wiþdrawe
 For þe folk off heþene lawe;
 It was gret scape þeroff, be Cryste.
 Kyng Richard þeroff nouzt ne wyste,
 5130 For he was zit al behynde,
 To ordeyne oþir twenty þousynde,
 þoo scholde þe Duke off Burgoyne
 Lede, & þe Eerl off Boloynes.
 þese comen & deden here deuers
 5135 Agayn þe heþene pawteners.

*came silently, not far
Their / seemed to be burning*

*Turkish bows / crossbows
drums / yet more
at once / struck so
[That]all / resounded under them*

*came / host
plate armour*

*Well
could plan a battle*

gave

enemy to disgrace

In the vanguard / battle

*than
They spurred forth*

*deadly lances / greeted them
their end (i.e. death)*

those of ours who died

*slay heathens / did his best
too early
was a pity
came / pride*

[So] that / come to him

*From / faith
sorrow / by Christ
did not know of that*

*make ready
Those who*

*did as best they could
heathen villains*

C p.65b

C p.66a

- And Jakes & hys sones twoo
 Almost weren islayn þoo. *there*
 He layde on euery syde ryzt, *delivered blows*
 And steryd hym as noble knyzt; *behaved*
 5140 Twenty he slowz & ayþer sone ten *slew / each son*
 Off þe vyle heþene men,
 And nyne seþyn hys hors was felde,
 And euere he coueryd hym *with* his schelde. *after his horse was felled*
 He [had] non help off Templere, *all the time*
 5145 Ne off non oþir Hospytalere. *[Knights] Templar*
 He layde on wip his sworde, *[Knights] Hospitaller*
 And euere he sayde: 'Jhesu, lorde, *struck*
 I schal dye for þy loue, *always*
 Resseyue my soule to heuene aboue.' *your love*
 5150 Þe Sarazynes layde on *with* mace, *Receive / in heaven*
 And al toffrusschyd hym *in* þe place – *struck*
 Hym & hys sones boþe; *battered*
 Þerffore Kyng *Richard* was ful wroþe. *furious*
 Whenne Kyng *Richard* wyste þis, *knew of*
 5155 Þat ded was Jakes de Nys,
 'Allas!' he sayde, 'þat is wronge.
 Behynde I dwellyd al to longe.'
 He smot Favel wip spores off golde – *stayed / too*
 Sewe hym þat sewe euer wolde. *pierced Favel / spurs*
 5160 A launse *in* hys hand he heelde,
 He smot an amyral *in* þe scheelde
 Þe dynt smot þorwz þe heþene herte,
 I vndyrstande it gan hym smerte. *There followed him those who wished to*
 Kyng *Richard* hys arme wipdrowz, *struck / emir*
 5165 Wip þat launse a kyng he slowz, *through heathen's heart*
 So he dede an amyrayle, *it hurt him*
 And fyue dukes wipout fayle. *withdrew*
 Wip þat ylke launce selue *slew*
 Kyng *Richard* slowz kynges twelue, *killed*
 5170 Þe þrytteneþe to þe chyn he kerff,
 Þe launse barst, þe Sarezin sterff. *same lance*
 Hys ax on his fore arsoun hyng,
 Anon it took *Richard* oure kyng. *thirteenth / carved*
 On he hytte on þe schuldyr bon, *broke / perished*
 5175 And karff hym to þe sadyl anon; *hung on / pommel*
 Non armure iwrouzt wip hande *One*
 Myzte Kyng *Richardes* ax wipstande. *cut him in half to the saddle*
 Off my tale bes nouzt awundryd, *no armour made by hand [i.e. human]*
 Þe Frenssche says he slowz an hundrid – *do not be astonished*
 5180 Whereof is maad þis Ynglyssche sawe – *From which / story is made*
 Or he reste hym ony þrawe. *Before / rested a moment*
 Hym folowyd many an Ynglyssche knyzte,
 Þat egyrly halp hym for to fyzt,
 And layden on as þey were woode,
 5185 Tyl valeys runne al on bloode. *helped*
delivered blows / mad

	þe Sarezines sayden in here pauylouns]	<i>their</i>	
	þat þe Cristyn men faughte als lyouns,	<i>like lions</i>	f.152vb
	And also Kyng Richerd <i>with</i> þaire men faris	<i>behaved</i>	
	Als grewhoundes dose with hares.	<i>As greyhounds do</i>	
5190	And appon þaire stedis þan gane þay lepe,	<i>leapt</i>	
	And swerdis & speres in handes þay grepe.	<i>gripped</i>	
	Full many a man there slewe oþer,	<i>another</i>	
	Full many a Sarazene þer loste his broþer,		
	And many of these heythyn hundes	<i>those heathen hounds</i>	
5195	With their teethe laye and gnewe þe growndes.	<i>gnawed the ground [i.e. died]</i>	f. 153ra
	And by þe blode þat ranne appon the grysse,	<i>grass</i>	
	Men myghte knawe whare þat Kyng Richerde was;	<i>know / had been</i>	
	For brayne & blode he schedde euer newe,	<i>again and again</i>	
	Full many ane horse his guttis drewe.	<i>entrails removed</i>	
5200	þer was many a tome sadille,	<i>an empty saddle</i>	
	It garte the childe wepe in þe credille.	<i>made the children weep / cradle</i>	
	þere faughte Kyng Richerde one euerilke syde,	<i>every side</i>	
	þe Sarazenes dorste noghte hym habide.	<i>dared not face him</i>	
	For seuen thowsande and seuen score	<i>seven thousand one hundred and forty</i>	
5205	At anes Kyng Richerde draffe hym byfore	<i>At once / drove</i>	
	Vp agaynes a clyffe full euen,	<i>towards</i>	
	And þay fledde, als dere dose when þay are dreuen,	<i>as deer do / chased after</i>	
	And for the drede of Kyng Richerd		
	Of the clyffe þay felle bakwarde,	<i>Off / backwards</i>	
5210	And alle tobraste bothe horse & man	<i>burst open</i>	
	þat neuer nane of theym liffed aftir þan.	<i>rose</i>	
	And that sees the Sowdane Saladyn,	<i>When / saw</i>	
	He was full sekire his lyfe to tyne.	<i>certain / lose</i>	
	He lefte his pauylyoune & his tent,		
5215	And fledde awaye, verrament.	<i>truly</i>	
	And Kyng Richerd sees hym flyande,	<i>saw / fleeing</i>	
	And persuys aftir hym full faste prekande.	<i>spurring on</i>	
	To slaa the sowdane was his thoghte,	<i>slay</i>	
	And for þat he myghte gete to hym noghte,	<i>because</i>	
5220	Of a fotemane a bowe he toke,	<i>foot-soldier</i>	
	And drewe ane arowe righte to þe huke,	<i>an arrow as far as the trigger point</i>	
	And schotte it to the sowdane onane,	<i>at once</i>	
	And strake hym thurgh þe scholdir bane.	<i>struck / shoulder bone</i>	
	And thus the sowdane, <i>with</i> grete doloure,	<i>in great pain</i>	
5225	Flede fro the Batelle of Arsoure.		
	Bot sixty hundreth thowsande was broʒte of dawe	<i>to death</i>	
	Of Sarazenes of the false lawe,	<i>faith</i>	
	And of the Cristyn bot ten score;	<i>only ten score [i.e. two hundred]</i>	
	þere blyssede be Jhesu Criste þerfore!		
5230	And Kyng Richerde toke the pauylyoun –		
	Of sendalle it was & of silke full brownn –	<i>silken cloth</i>	
	þay were made in the schappe of castells,		
	Of golde & of siluere were the pensells.	<i>pennons</i>	
	And many was the noble geste	<i>pictures</i>	
5235	þat þerone was made of wilde beste:	<i>there / wild beasts</i>	

- Of tygris, of dragouns, of lyouns, & of leoparde,
 And alle this wanne there Kyng Richerde. won
 Many bowndyn cofres, & grete males *wooden chests reinforced with iron / huge bags*
 He hade there, withowtten any tales. *without lying*
 5240 And of tresoure þay hade slyke wone *had won such* f. 153rb
 þat þay wiste neuer where þaire gudis to done. *they did not know / to stash their loot*
 Kyng Richerd went thane with honour
 Into the cite of Arsoure,
 And ristede hym therein alle that nyghte, *rested*
 5245 And gaffe louynge to God full of myghte. *praised God*
 And at þe morne þe kyng of his bedde rasse, *in the morning / rose*
 And louede oure lorde God alwayes. *praised*
 Of Napills he called *Sir Gauthere*, *Garnier of Nablus*
 þat was Maister Ospetulere, *Master of the Hospitallers*
 5250 And badde hym take *with* hym knyghtis
 Stowte in armes and stronge in fightes:
 ‘And agayne to the felde ȝe do fare, *go again*
 Where als þe batalle done was are, *took place earlier*
 And ledis *Sir Jakes*, the baroun,
 5255 Into Jerusalem, þat noble townn,
 And in the erthe his body ȝe do bery; *bury*
 For he was a man þat was full mery.’
 Alle that was done *withowtten* ryste, *without delay*
 Full hastely alle the kynges heste. *command*
 5260 And thus Kyng Richerde wanne Arsoure,
 God graunte his saule mekill honour. *won*
 Bot who so will here nowe faire talkynge, *much*
 Lystenys now forthirmare of Richerd oure kyng. *hear*
furthermore
- A**t morne he sent to þe Kyng of Fraunce, *In the morning*
 5265 And seyde, *withowtten* any distaunce:
 ‘Wende wille we to þe cite of Nyneue, *certainly*
 For þat ilke es a full stronge cite. *We will go / Niniveh*
 And forsothe nowe were that townn ywonne, *that one is*
 þan were oure gamen faire bygun. *for certain / were that town won*
 5270 Hadde we that and Babyloyne, *joy would begin*
 We scholde wende thane into Macedoyne, *[If] we had that [town] and Cairo*
 And thane myghte we safely gange and ryde *should go then*
 Ane hundrethe miles one euerilke syde.’ *go*
 Kyng Richerd & Kyng Philippe *in* Arsour laye, *One / on every*
- 5275 A messangere hym come to saye *came to him*
 þat þe Sarazenes wolde þam habyde *face them in combat*
 And in batelle vnto theym ryde,
 In the playnes of Toke, als I ȝow saye,
 þare will þay byde and lyffe and dye. *remain / live or die*
 5280 Kyng Richerde spakke full sone onenone, *spoke / immediately*
 And sayd: ‘Messangere, by Sayne John,
 And I wiste whate daye it ware,
 I solde bee alle redy righte thare.’ *If / knew / would be*
 þe messangere sayde, by his laye: *duly*

- 5285 'It mon be this daye nynete daye.' *must / ninety days from today*
 þat tyme come reghte, als he talde, *came / said* f.153va
 And to the batelle the Sarazenes balde *the bold S. [came]*
 With foure hundrethe thowsande & wele maa, *many more*
 And Kyng Richerde agayne þam bigane to gaa. *went against them*
- 5290 His oste he dalte in foure manere *divided into four*
 With strange batelle, als 3e may here: *strong / hear*
 Sir Fuke Doly by þe taa syde, *one side*
 And Sir Thomas of Multon one þe toþer to ryde, *on the other*
 And Kyng Philippe the thride part, *third*
- 5295 And the fourte Kyng Richerde. *fourth*
 And thus they besett abowte *surrounded*
 þe Sarazenes þat ware so stowte.
 And in ilke ane oste Cristyn men, *every Christian host*
 A banere of Sarazenes putt forthe then, *put up a Saracen banner*
- 5300 And þe Sarazenes wende full wele by thane *thought by that*
 þat þay hade bene Sarazenes ilke a mane. *each man was a S.*
 Bot sone when Kyng Richerde wisten this, *And / knew*
 þat þe Sarazenes vnclosede es, *were surrounded*
 His awenn banere thane he lete be reryde. *then raised his own banner*
- 5305 Bot þan were the Sarazenes sore afferde, *And then / sorely afraid*
 And felly abasched in that ilke thrawe. *were perplexed by fear / same moment*
 When þat the Cristyn þe banere myghte knawe, *saw*
 þay smatte one faste in thate stownde, *struck / at that moment*
 And fellede Sarazenes faste to þe grownde.
- 5310 And Kyng Richerd one Fawele gane ryde *rode*
 Amanges the Sarazenes in þat ilke tyde, *that same time*
 And alle his folkes diden righte soo,
 And alle þe foure ostes þay layden in too. *made an attack*
- 5315 And many a spere þare was schakede, *brandished*
 And many a crownn was þer crakede, *skull*
 And many a Sarazene was there schentt. *injured*
 Allas, ane oste awaye there went *a [Saracen] host*
 By Kyng Philippe syde of Fraunce, *the side of KP*
 And þat oste passede by a chaunce – *went through by good fortune*
- 5320 Seuen ameralls, forsothe to saye, *emirs*
 Quitte and clene passede awaye –
 And into Nyneue þay wente in fere. *together*
 Kyng Richerde þerfore made heuy chere, *was in a sorrowful mood*
 Bot þe Sarazenes þat abade thare *And / remained*
- 5325 To þe dede 3ode bothe lesse and mare. *death went common and noble*
 þe nombire þat that day to þe dede 3ode *number / death went*
 Were thre hundrethe thowsande, als we rede.
 Bot Kyng Richerd went *with* his men3ee *And / retinue*
 Vnto the cite of Nyneue, *Towards* f.153vb
- 5330 And Kyng Philippe went hym by
 With grete oste, full sekirly,
 To þay come to the cite righte, *Until / came*
 And thare their pauylyouns doun þay pighte. *pitched*
 Kyng Richerd at morne when it was daye

- 5335 Went vnto armes, als I 3ow saye, *Armed himself*
 And hastily, *withowtten* pitee,
 He hyed to assayllen þat ilke cite, *hastened to attack / same town*
 With bowes, with alblasters, & oþer gynn, *crossbows / weapons*
 Gyff þat þay myghte þe cite wynn. *So that*
- 5340 And alle þe folkes *with* gud entent
 Didden Kyng Richerde *commandement*;
 The engyners their mawngonells bent, *Followed / orders*
 And grete stonys into þe cite þay sent, *catapults*
 And full harde stonys in did they threwe,
- 5345 þat made the Sarazenes to chaunge þaire hewe.
 Alblastirs of vyce *with* many a quarelle, *Crossbows / bolts*
 And staffe-slyngers þay smate wele, *soldiers armed with slings / struck*
 With tripgettis þay slange alsoo, *siege engines / hurled*
 And many leddirs sett þe walle vntoo, *ladders*
- 5350 And blewe one theym wylde fire *with* trompes of gynn, *Greek fire / ingenious horns*
 And mekill sorowe dide þay þam *within*. *much*
 And by þat sawe þe Sarazenes euerilkone *everyone*
 þat þay scholde alle to þe dede gone. *death*
 A messangere owte þay sent, *[the Saracens] sent*
- 5355 And to Kyng Richerde onane he wente, *immediately*
 And prayed hym gif þat his willis bee, *will*
 Of batelle bytwene three: *fight between three [knights]*
 Thre of theym and thre of his.
 And whethir party so haues the pris, *whichever had victory*
- 5360 And who þat haues þe better, I vndirstande,
 Sese þe cite into their hande, *[Would] seize*
 And halde it for euermare. *hold*
 And Kyng Richerd granted thare,
 And bad þam come one þan hastily.
- 5365 þe messangere þan went home in hy, *in haste*
 And said to þe heghe amyralle *high emir*
 þat Kyng Richerde, *withowtten* fayle,
 Wele armede *with* spere and schelde,
 Wolde habude thaym in the felde. *face / field*
- 5370 ‘And *with* hym othir two barounes,
 Noble men and grete renounes;
 For to feghte thane *with* thase thre *those* f. 154ra
 þat 3e sende owte of this citee.’
 And sone oneane þaire horse were dighte, *immediately / horses / made ready*
 And thre amyralles, full baulde & wighte, *bold and brave*
 þaire names I salle telle 3ow oneane, *shall / soon*
 And whaa they highte þan euerilkane: *what / were called / everyone*
 Sir Arcolyn the firste in rade, *rode*
 Sir Coudrebras also there habade, *stayed*
- 5380 Sir Galabere also ther houed full stille *waited*
 To loke whaa þat wolde ryde hym vntill.
 Bot Kyng Richerd, that noble knyghte,
 To Sir Arcolyn he hym dighte.
 þay strake togethir *with* dynttis sare, *struck each other / hard blows*

- 5385 Pat paire schaftis braste insondre thare, *spears burst into pieces*
 And ayther one othere þan hewed so faste *each struck the other*
 With wapyns þat full wele wolde laste; *weapons*
 Owte of þaire helmys the fire sprange,
 Þe feghte bitwene þam was full strange. *strong*
- 5390 He gaffe Kyng Richerde a skelpe flatte *flat blow*
 þat went thorowt his gud hatt, *helmet*
 And Kyng Richerd þeratt was agreued sare, *angry*
 For þat strake he hade tane thare. *had taken*
- 5395 Kyng Richerde toke his axe full strange,
 And appon hym full faste he dange *dealt a blow*
 Reghte one his helme abownn his crownn,
 That to the sadille he clafe hym downn; *sliced him from the head to the saddle*
 Forsothe thane his lyfe myghte no langare laste,
 And ther Kyng Richerd was his preste. *his priest*
- 5400 Bot thane *Sir Couderbras* forthe gane ryde, *rode forth*
 And Thomas of Multoun gane hym habyde. *faced him*
 And þay rade togedir reghte, als we rede,
 So þat þay bothe vnto þe erthe zede. *fell to the ground*
 And vp þay stirten in that stownde, *at that moment*
- 5405 Withowtten weme, *withowtten* wounde, *Without harm*
 And faughte *with* fawcheouns þat were kene, *broad swords*
 And one þayre helmys þat was sene.
 Bot *Sir Couderbras* for felonye *villainy*
 Smate *Sir Thomas*, withowtten lye,
- 5410 Reghte euen in myddes of his schelde, *in the middle of*
 That the peces flewe into the felde.
 And *Sir Thomas* was anoyed sare,
 And thoghte to qwitt hym þat dynte righte thare. *take revenge for that blow*
- 5415 Pat fayled hym neuer zitt in naa case, *metal mace*
 And gaffe hym reghte a full sare strake, *had never failed him*
 þat his helme al torafe & brake, *terrible blow* f.154rb
 And alle tobrissed his herne-pane, *helmet / torn apart / broke*
 And therwith þe brayne braste owte righte thane; *crushed / skull*
 5420 And hym into sadille it rent, *burst out*
 His horse awaye zitt *with* hym went. *[the blow] tore him to pieces on the saddle*
Sir Galabere þan houyde full styll, *waited*
 Hym lykede þat day werke nothyng wele, *He was not pleased with the day's work*
 Bot he wiste neuer what hym was beste to do: *did not know*
- 5425 To feghte or to þe cite to flye to. *To fight*
 And *Sir Fuk Doly* that wele vndirstode, *understood*
 And lathe hym ware þat he awaye zode. *did not want him to leave*
 With grete ire þay togedir rade, *rode*
 þat þe taa horse one þe toþer glade, *one horse fell on the other*
- 5430 And brake bothe paire nekkes in þat stownde, *broke / then*
 And laye bothe dede appon þe grownnde. *dead*
 Þair speris flowe into the feldis, *flew*
 And þay faughte bothe one fote vndir paire scheldis. *on foot*
 And ayther to oþer gaffe strakes full felle, *each other / brutal blows*

- 5435 Full dere þan gane þay þaire lyffes selle. *dear / sold their lives*
strong
could not hit him / not even a blow
 Sir Galabere was full smarte & wyghte,
 Bot he myghte hym hytt no strake aryghte
 Bot at þe laste he gaffe hym ane, *one*
 And therwith he braste his scholdre bane. *broke / shoulder bone*
- 5440 One knees he felle & cryed: 'Creaunt,
 For Mahownns luffe, and Termagaunt!' *Mercy*
 Bot Sir Fuke ne wolde noghte lefe swaa, *the love of*
 The hede he smate the body fraa. *did not believe [in them]*
 Thane alle the lordes of that citee, *[And] his head / from his body*
- 5445 Vnto the 3atis full faste gane þam hye, *gates / hastened*
 And alle the keyes þay with theym broghte,
 And the kyng of mercy þay bysoughte, *asked Richard for mercy*
 And gyffe þat he wolde saue þaire lyffes, *if*
 Þay wolde bene Cristyn bothe men & wyffes, *would become Christian / women*
- 5450 And wende with hym, withowtten fayle, *go / certainly*
 In the forbreste of euery bataylle, *forefront*
 And of hym holden that ilke cite. *rule / same town*
 The kyng grauntede it swa to bee; *to be so*
 A bischoppe he bade come oneane, *at once*
- 5455 And Cristyn þam euerilkeane, *baptize every one of them*
 Bothe littill & mekill, lesse & mare, *common and noble*
 Alle in that tyme þay Cristened ware.
 Kyng Richerd enterde thane into þat cite –
 And Kynge Philippe to Acres ther wente hee –
- 5460 And in that cite Kynge Richerd bylefte still, *stayed* f.154va
 Þe newe tornede men serued hym at will. *newly converted*
 Bot who so that will nowe bee in pese, *And / be in peace*
 May heryn a geste of grete nobilnesse. *story*
- Þ**e Chefe Sowdane of alle Heythynnesse *Chief Sultan of all Heathen world [i.e. Saladin]*
- 5465 Was fledde into Babyloyne ywysse. *Cairo*
 His consell thane he sent vnto þat tyme *summoned*
 And thare semblede full sone many a Sarazyne; *assembled*
 For fourty hundrethe thowsande þat day was telde *counted*
 Of knyghtis & gilte spowres in the felde, *spurs*
- 5470 Withowtten other pedaylle, *Without [counting] foot soldiers*
 þat þer come to that bataylle.
 Als he sayd þat was the spy
 þat tolde þe folkes of bothe party, *counted*
 Sixty hundreth thowsand of haythyn men
- 5475 Were ther þat come to þe batell with þe sowdane.
 Bot herkyns nowe bothe zonge & alde, *listen / young and old*
 For his lufe þat Judas saulde, *his [i.e. Christ's]*
 þer als God luffes es trewthe & righte, *God's love is true*
 And there will he sende powere & myghte; *he [i.e. God]*
- 5480 And that was there full wele ysene. *seen*
 Oure Cristyn oste, withowtten wene, *undoubtedly*
 Were no moo, in buke as I fynde, *no more / as I find in the book*
 In alle bott four score thowsande. *than eighty thousand*

- Kyng Richerd thritty thowsande toke hym till,
 5485 For Philippe & his men weryn bot ille *were incompetent*
 And fourty thowsande forsothe hade he
 By þe tone syde of the cite, *one side*
 And keped þe Sarazenes þat weren stowtte;
kept [within] / brave
 Was nane so balde dorste anes luke owtt. *bold / that dared look out once*
 5490 For Kyng Richerde one þe to syde laye *And / on the other side*
 And bekeride full faste to þam, I saye, *attacked*
 With mawngonells and gud spryngells, *catapults / bow-like engines*
 With full many arowes & quarells, *arrows / bolts*
 And gud staffe-slyngers, for þe nanes, *soldiers armed with slings*
 5495 Þat bekerid full faste *with* harde stanes. *attacked / stones*
 Bot the cite was so strange *within*, *strong*
 [Þ]at þer was no man þat þam myzte wynn.
 Bot the mawngonells, for the nones, *catapults*
 Braste þe walles *with* grete stonys, *Knocked the walls down*
 5500 þaire 3atis and þaire berbycane. *gates / outer fortifications*
 And be 3e sekir þat þe haythen ilkane *be certain / every heathen*
 Made encountre full harde & strange
 Þer many a man drede þam amange.
 Bot had Kyng Philippe trewe ybee *had KP been true*
 5505 At þe segge of þat ilke cite, *siege / same city*
 Þare hade neuer scapede thane *would have never escaped*
 Heythyn kyng ne 3itt sowdane, *[Neither] heathen / nor sultans*
 Þat þay ne hade bene slayne downn-righte. *But they would have been slain*
 For Kyng Richerde euer appon þe nyghte, *f.154vb*
 5510 When þat þe sonne was gone to ryste, *sun had gone to rest*
With his oste he wolde be priste *host / ready*
 To gyffe batelle bothe harde & stowtte *[so] hard / boldly*
 Þat na Sarazenes myzte wynn owte. *escape*
 And slewe þam downn ful grete plente, *killed plenty of them*
 5515 And wilde fyre keste into þe cite. *cast Greek fire*
 Þe Sarazenes defendid þam full faste,
 With bowes Turkesys and alblaste;
 Stronge fyghte was þam bytwene,
 Als they seyde þat it hade sene. *Turkish bows / crossbows*
 5520 Quarells & arowes ful thikke gane flye, *those who had seen it*
 Als powder dose vndir þe sky, *flew as thick*
 And wylde fire þe folkes to bryne. *As dust*
 Bot to conselle went þe haythyn then *to burn people*
 To feghte *with* þam righte in the felde, *And the heathen sought advice*
 5525 For þay wolde noghte þe cite 3elde. *did not want to yield*
 þay cried: 'Trewes!' appon þe walle *Truce*
 To Kyng Richerde & to his men alle.
 Bot of Kyng Richerd myzte þay no3te spede, *they would not obtain*
 To take trews for nankyns mede. *under any circumstances*
 5530 'Nay, forsothe,' quod Kyng Richerd thane, *Certainly not*
 'Till I hafe slayne the sowdane
 And brynte þat es in this cite.'
 Þe latymere thane tornede he *burn all that is*
interpreter went

- To the tothir syde of þe townn, *other*
 5535 And cried 'Trews!' *with* full grete sownn *sound*
 To þe riche Kyng of Fraunce.
 And he graunted *with* mekill meschaunce *great wrongdoing*
 For a porcyoun of betyn golde; *sum of gold leaf*
 And ells had þe town bene y3olde, *Otherwise / would have been taken*
 5540 And alle the Sarazenes therin slayne.
 Þe sowdane was þan full ferly fayne, *Extremely delighted*
 And alle his men one Kyng Richerde felle;
 For þe tothir syde was alle still. *the other side*
 Kyng Richerd wenyd þat Philip & his men had foughten, *thought*
 5545 And he & his men ne dide nothyng *But he [i.e. Philip]*
 Bot made þam mery alle þat nyghte, *Except*
 And weryn traytours in þat ilke fyghte. *same battle*
 He luffede na crownnes for to crake, *did not desire to break heads*
 Bot to do tresoun & tresoures to take. *treason*
 5550 Þe Kyng of Fraunce to Kyng Richerd gan sende *sent*
 And seid he myghte ne lengare defende *could no longer*
 For hungre he and his men alswaa. *Because of hunger / also*
 And said: 'Vs buse breke þe segge & gaa.' *We must break / siege / leave*
 Bot sary was Kyng Richerd thanne, *sorry*
 5555 And seide: 'A fy, cursed false man!
 Loo, how þat for couetyse of tresoure, *Look / greed* f.155ra
 He dose hymselfe full gret dyshonour,
 þat he solde thus the Sarazenes respit gyffe, *should give the S. a period of grace*
 It is harme þat slyke a man solde lyfe *such a man / live*
 5560 To breke þe segge thus & gange awaye, *go away*
 þan will þe Sarazenes be fayne, I dare saye.' *glad*
 And grete joye made þe Sarazenes amange,
 Carolde & trompede & hopped & sange. *Danced / played the trumpet*
 And euer ilke a daye aftir thann, *the very day*
 5565 Messangers come fra the sowdane *came from*
 And gret Kyng Richerde one faire manere *greeted*
 And seid: 'Sir, gif thi will be to here, *hear*
 My lorde, þe sowdane, to the sent, *to you*
 Giff þat þou will grante in present. *If*
 5570 þou art strange of flesche and of banes, *strong / bones*
 And he es doughty, for the nanes. *brave*
 þou dose hym grete harme, he says, *You do*
 And foullyly distroyes his contreys,
 And slaes his men and etis amange,
 5575 And þou werres agaynes hym all *with* wrange, *slay / eat [his men]*
 And cravys herytage in this lande; *make war against / wrong*
 He dose the wele till vndirstande *crave sovereignty*
 þat þou ne hase þerto no manere of righte. *you have no right*
 Thou says thi God es full of my3the, *You say your / powerful*
 5580 Bot, will þou graunte *with* spere and schelde *grant / spear*
 To dresse the righte into the felde, *arm yourself*
 With helme & hawberke & brandis bryghte, *helmet / mail shirt / sword*
 One stronge stedis þat bene gude & lighte, *On a strong steed / is*

- And whethir so bee of mare powere
 5585 Jhesu or ells Jubitere?
 And he sende me to saye the this:
 Giff þat þou will ane horse of his –
 Bot in alle the landis þou hafe in gane
 Slyke a stede sawe þou neuer nane –
 5590 For Fawelle of Cipres ne Lyarde of pris
 Are noghte bothe so gude als he es.
 And gif þou will graunte, þis ilke daye
 He salbe broghte to þe to assaye.’
 Kyng Richerd ansuerd & sayd: ‘þou says wele,
 5595 Slyke ane horse, by Saynt Michaelle,
 I walde hafe to ryde appone.
 For myn aren wery and forgone,
 And I sall, for my lordis lufe –
 Pat sittis hegheste in heuen aboue –
 5600 And his awenn horse be gude,
 With a spere sched his blode.
 Giff he will igraunte & halde
 In this manere that thou hafe talde,
 Als I may God my saule zelde,
 5605 I sall mete hym in the felde.
 Byd hym send that horse to mee,
 And I schall assaye whatkyns ane he be.
 And 3if he be tristy, *withowt*yn fayle,
 I kepe na noþer in batayle.’
 5610 The messangere þan hame went,
 And tolde þe sowdane in *present*
 Pat Kyng Richerd *in* þe felde wold be boun
 The riche sowdane to stryke down.
 A noble clerke forthe þan sent þe sowdane,
 5615 A noble maister of nigromansy was he thane
 Pat conjured, als I 3owe telle,
 Thorowe the fendis crafte of helle.
 Two stronge fendis of the ayere,
 Into the liknesse of two horses fayre,
 5620 And full lyke were þay bathe of ane hare,
 Als men sayde þat sawe þam þare
 Pat neuer was sene nane slyke;
 The tane was a mere lyke,
 That othir was a colte, a noble stede.
 5625 Whare þat he ware in any nede,
 Was neuer 3itt knyghte so balde
 Pat, anes neghe þe mere walde,
 And þe mere solde wheny þer full schill,
 And þan solde þe colte rynne hir vntill,
 5630 And falle one knes and suke his dame.
 Therewhills wolde þe sowdane, *with* schame,
 Righte down Kyng Richerd for to quelle.
 And alle this ane aungelle gane hym telle –
- And [prove] who is more powerful*

tell you
If / will [accept] a horse
you have been
Such a steed you have never seen
neither Favel / nor the famous Lyard

this very day
He [i.e. the horse] / brought to you / to try

Such a horse
want to have
worn out

 f.155rb
If his [i.e. the sultan's] own / is

If
told
As I may yield my soul to God
him [i.e. the sultan]

what kind of one [i.e. horse] he is
trustworthy / without doubt
shall want no other

went home
in that place
ready

black magic

Through the devil's craft
demons / air

both of one hair [i.e. same colour / breed]

was never seen any such [horses]
The one / in the likeness of a mare

Whenever
so bold
should the mare give out a neigh
When / whinny / loudly
run to her

on his knees / suck his mother

Then
kill
an angel told him

- Pat to hym come abowte midnyghte –
 5635 And seyde: ‘Wakyn Richerd, þou gud knyghte,
 Mi lorde dose the to vndirstande
 Pat þe sall come ane horse to hande,
 Bot als wyde whare als þou hafe gane,
 Slyke ane ne sawe thou neuere nane;
 5640 Faire it es of body, I the plighte,
 Bytraye the giffe þe sowdane myghte
 Bot one hym to ryde haue þou na drede,
 For he sall serue the at thi nede.
 And purveye the a tree grete & strange,
 5645 Pofe it be of forty fote lange,
 And trusse it ouerthrower thi horse mane,
 And alle þat he metys þay sall be slayne
 With that tree he sall down felle.
 It es a fende, als I the telle,
 5650 Bot ryde appon hym in Goddis name,
 For he ne may do the nankyns schame.
 Take a brydill,’ the awngelle sayde,
 ‘And do it faste appon his hede,
 And be the brydill in his mowthe
 5655 Pan may torne hym northe or southe.
 And he sall serue the at thi will
 When þe sowdane sall ryde the till.
 And hafe here a spere-hede of stele,
 He hase none armours wroghte so wele,
 5660 Pat ne it will þam perche, be þou balde.’
 And when þe angelle hade hym thus talde,
 Thane full suythe agayne to heuen he went.
 And at morne þe horse was to hym sent,
 And Kyng Richerd of the horse was blythe,
 5665 And garte ordeyne hym a sadill suythe;
 Bathe the crowchis of stele full strange,
 For þat þay solde endure wele & lange.
 And with a chyne he girde hym faste,
 Þe brydelle one his hede he caste,
 5670 Righte als the angelle had hym taughte.
 Bot twa gud stronge hukes forgat he noȝte
 In his crowche he sett byfore.
 And with waxe he stopped bothe his eres þore,
 And sayde: ‘By þe apostills twelue,
 5675 Giff þat þou be the deuyll hymselfe,
 Þou sall serue me þis day at my nede.
 He þat one the rode gane blede,
 And suffred grymly woundis fyve,
 And sythen rase fra dede to lyve
 5680 And boghte mankynde owte of helle,
 And alle þe fendis myghte gan felle,
 Pat ilke lorde God and persones three,
 In his name nowe I charge the:
- came to him at
 Wake up
 tells you
 a horse shall come to you
 as [far and] wide as you have gone
 Such one you have never seen
 I assure you
 Even though the sultan might betray you
 on him [i.e. the horse] / no fear
 serve you / your need
 procure yourself / log / strong
 Even though / were / long
 tie it / crosswise*
- f.155va*
- fiend / tell you
 cannot do you any
 put
 serve you / your
 the sultan / towards you
 steel-pointed spear
 He [i.e. the sultan]
 pierce them / you may be sure
 swiftly
 in the morning
 glad
 prepared / saddle swiftly
 Both / saddlebows / strong
 should / long
 chain / tied*
- And two / hooks / did not forget
 to set in front of / saddlebow
 wax / plugged his ears
 apostles
 Even though you were
 shall
 he [i.e. Christ] / on the cross bled
 five wounds
 then rose from the dead
 saved mankind from hell
 felled all demons
 the three persons [i.e. the Trinity]
 order you*

- 5685 *pat þou serue me wele at will!*
 He schoke his hede þan and stode stille;
 The kyng stodied alle that nyghte.
 At the morne, when it was dayes lighte,
 Seuen sowdans *with* full grete rowte
 Of the cite þay ischewede owte,
 5690 And batelde þam appon þe ryuere,
 With brode baners, & helmys clere.
pat daye was talde, *withowtten* lesynges,
 Of sowdans & of haythyn kynges,
 Ane hundrethe & maa, als I telle can,
 5695 *pat* þe leste of those broghte *with* hym þan
 A twenty thowsande and ten
 Of those false corste haythyn men.
 Bot who *pat* will tent nowe to my tale,
 Sall here nowe of a grete bataylle
 5700 *pat* was full trewe, sance faile,
 And done *in* dede, *withowtten* tale.
 For *þer* was *in* *pat* ilke fighte
 Slayne down of þaire stedis lighte
 Full many a stalworthe knyghte.
 5705 *þe* vawarde *pat* led full ryghte,
 And 3it to littill was þaire myghte.
 þay were spred both este & weste,
 Als it were a grete foreste;
 Of þe Sarazenes so grete was þe oste,
 5710 *pat* a twenty miles of that coste,
 Grownde ne grysse myghte no man see
 For bryghte armours and speris hye.
 þe Sarazenes thoghte batelle to habyde,
 And messangerse bytwene gane ryde
 5715 To the noble Kyng Richerde,
 To aske gif *pat* he wolde holde forwarde
 That they had made the daye byfore.
 The Sarazenes alle redy was thore,
 Fyve hundrethe thowsande & maa gan *þer* bee.
 5720 Kyng Richerd loked & gane þam see:
 Als snawe lygges appon mountaynes,
 Filled was hillys and playnes
With helmys *pat* were bryghte and clere,
 And alle of þe haythyn powere.
 5725 To here their noyse it was grete wondre;
 And als gyf *pat* þe werlde schold faile *insondre*,
 And scholde the fourte party falle adoun.
 Oure Cristyn men than made þam bownn.
- at [my] will
 He [i.e. the horse] shook / stood
 thought
 In the morning
 f.155vb
 sultans / entourage
 drove out
 lined up by the river
 bright helmets
 were counted / without lying
 heathen
 One hundred / more
 the least noble
 damned
 listen
 Shall hear / battle
 without doubt
 certainly
 same
 hardy
 vanguard
 yet too little
 As [if they] were
 host
 terrain
 Men could see neither ground nor grass
 Because of / high spears
 to face battle
 rode
 if he would maintain the agreement
 there
 more were there
 saw them
 As snow lies
 were hills
 heathen army
 hear / marvel
 as if / would break into pieces
 a fourth [of the world] would collapse
 f.156ra
 ready
- K**ying Richerde nothyng at alle hym drede,
 5730 ‘As armes!’ vnto his men he sayde.
 He sayd: ‘Felawes, now for þe rode,
 Lokes *pat* 3e be of comforthe gude,
 To arms!
 for the cross
 Look that

- And thynkes wele, and vndirstandis,
 That we hafe wonn many landis,
 5735 And gif þat we gete þe pris this daye,
 Of haythynnes alle the noblaye –
 By hym þat made mone and sonne –
 For euermare thane hafe we wonn
 Haythynnes by Goddis myghte. victory
From all the heathen nobility
moon / sun
- 5740 Byhaldis me wele how I sall fighte,
 With swerde, spere, and axe of stele.
 Bot I this daye do note þam wele,
 Eueremore forthe fro hythen forwarde
 Holdis me for a feynt cowarde, Heathen country
Behold
- 5745 Bot if euerilke Cristyn mane & page
 Hafe this ilke nyghte to his wage
 Ane hede of a Sarazyne
 Thorowe Goddis helpe & myn. If
from now on
- 5750 Swylke werke I sall amanges þam make,
 Of thase þat I may ouertake,
 Þat fra this day to domysdaye,
 Þay schall speken of my paye.’
 Our Cristyn men were armed wele,
 Bothe in iryn and in stele. Unless every
to his credit
One head
- 5755 Þe Kyng of Fraunce *with* his bataylle
 Was redy the Sarazenes to assayle;
 Abownn the Sarazenes þay ryde,
 Ther als þay wolde batelle habyde. Such
those
from / Doomsday
achievement
- 5760 Þe France men grete boste gane make,
 Sarazenes crownnes for to crake.
 Bot in geste, als it es talde,
 Nane of theym was so balde;
 Þay ne dorste noghte come þe haythyn nere, iron / steel
company
- 5765 Till þat Kyng Richerde was comen, I dare swere.
 When Kyng Richerd *commes with* his oste,
 He will vmbyclose þam by anoper coste,
 Bytwene theym and the cite Towards
as [if] they would face battle
French / boasted
skulls to smash
told
bold
- 5770 Or ells þe Cristyn men sall þam slaa.
 Bot thane comes Kyng Richerd *with* ostis thre,
 And one gaffe assawte to þe cite,
 And two forthe *with* hym he ledde. They dared not come near the heathen
came
came / host
would surround / side
- 5775 To bryng hym his horse, þan he bad,
 That the sowdane had to hym sent. [So] that no / would be able to flee
Unless / went into the river
would slay them
- 5780 And seyde: ‘*With* his awenn present,
 I sall mete hym lange or nyghte’
 And to his horse þan was he dighte.
 Bot or he into the sadill wold leppe,
 Of many thynges he toke gud kepe. And / three hosts
assaulted
- Hym lakkede noghte þat he ne hade, ordered
his [i.e. the sultan’s] own
long before
before / would leap
He lacked nothing

- His men broghte hym alle þat he bade:
 A grete sqware tree of fourty fote lange, at þe leste, *log / forty-foot long, at least*
 He gerte byfore his sadille befeſte *in front of / fastened*
 5785 Full faſte men there þan gane it braſe, *covered it with bronze plates*
 þat it ne faylede for nakyns caſe. *[So] that it ſhould not fail for anything*
 And ſo þay dide *with* ſtronge hukis of iryne, *hooks of iron*
 And *with* gud rynges and with fyne; *good and fine rings*
 5790 For oþer feſtenynge reghte nane þer was *there was no other faſtening [device]*
 Bot iryn hokes for alkyns caſe, *Except for / for everything*
 And ʒitt were þay girde & wroght full wele. *yet / tied*
 Bothe his gerthis and his peytrelle, *his [i.e. the horse's] belt / breastplate*
 A qwaynttes of the kynges awenn, *[And the] ornamental trappings / own*
 5795 Appon his horſe there was drawenn, *lions / embroidered with gold*
 With foure lebardes of golde tellde, *field*
 Als men may ſee in townn & felde. *saddlebow*
 And byfore his crowche, his axe of ſtele, *rout*
 For it wolde feſſe the Sarazenes wele. *himſelf [i.e. KR] / trimmed*
 5800 And hymſelfe was full richely ouer bygane, *From creſt to toes [i.e. completely]*
 Fro the creſte vnto taen. *armed*
 He was enarmed full wondirfully wele *plate armour / ſteel*
 In full ſure platis þat weren of ſtele, *over / a mail ſhirt*
 And ʒitt abownne alle ane hawberke, *Thracian craft*
 5805 þat was wroghte of Tracy werke. *overgarment with heraldic arms*
 And abownn his armours his cote armour, *Armour for the lower legs / gauntlets / combat*
 Hoſe and gloues of ſtele in that ſtowre, *ſhoulder / ſhield*
 And one his ſcholdir a ſchelde of ſtele, *lions ſeparated vertically*
 With thre leberdis departed full wele. *A / ſtyle*
 5810 Ane helme he hade of gude entayle, *trustworthy / mail for face and neck*
 And trayſty & trewe was his auentayle. *white dove*
 And one his creſte a doffe whytte, *To ſignify*
 In ſygnifycacoune of the Saynt Eſpyritte. *ſtood*
 And appon a croſſe the dofe ſtode, *As a ſign of whom [i.e. Chriſt]*
 5815 Of golde wele wroghte bothe riche & gude, *ſpear / did not forget*
 In ſyngne for whome þat he faughte. *high name [i.e. Chriſt]*
 His ſpere-hede ne forgatte he noghte, *liſten / ſwore*
 And a full grete ſchafte þer was broghte *Before / went*
 And the heghe name þerin was wroghte. *If / ſo*
 5820 Bot herkenys now how þe Sarazenes ſware *Slay / in the field*
 Or they into the batelle gane fare: *from there ſhould go*
 ‘Gyffe it were ſwaa þat Kyng Richerd myghte *every one*
 Slaa þe ſowdane in felde with fyghte, *Cairo*
 He and his men ſcholden thethyn gane
 5825 At their wille euereilkane,
 Into the cite of Babyloyne,
 And alſo into the kyngdome of Macedoyne,
 And he ſcholde haſe alle vndir his hande.
 And giff þat þe ſowdane of that lande *if*
 Mighte ſlaa Kyng Richerde in that felde,
 5830 With ſwerde or ſpere vndir ſchelde,
 The Criſtyn thane ſchoulde gange away *then / go away*

- Owte of that lande for euer and aye,
 And þe Sarazenes haue þaire will in walde.’
 Now quod Kyng Richerde: ‘& thereto I halde
 5835 And therto my gloue, als I ame knyghte.’
 Þay were wele armede and redy dighte
 And Kyng Richerde into the sadill lepe;
 Who so þat þeroffe wolde take kepe,
 To see þat syghte it was full fayre.
 5840 The stedis rane *with* full grete ayere,
 Als so faste als þay myghte gange,
 Þat aftire þaire fete sprange fire strange.
 Tabours bett and trumppes gane blawe,
 Ther myghte men see in a thrawe
 5845 How that Kyng Richerde, þe noble mane,
 Encontrede with the sowdane,
 The Chefe Sowdane callede of Damas.
 His trayste alle in his mere was
 Therefore, als þe boke vs tellis,
 5850 The sowdane hange his cropour full of bellys,
 His mere whenyed, hys bellys gan ryng
 For pride, *withowtten* lesynge.
 And a fawcheoun in hande he bare,
 For he thoghte þat he wolde thare
 5855 Slaa Kyng Richerde with tresoun
 When þat his horse knelys downn,
 Als a colte þat wolden sowke.
 And he was warre of that powke,
 His eres *with* waxe were stopped faste,
 5860 And þerfore was Kyng Richerd noȝte agaste.
 He strykes þe fende in the syde,
 And gaffe þe sowdane a dynt of dede
 Righte in his schelde, full verrament,
 Þat hade payntted in it a serpent.
 5865 With the spere þat Kyng Richerde helde,
 He bare hym thorowe into the felde,
 Nane of his armours ther myghte laste;
 For brydill and paytrelle alle tobraste.
 And mawgrethe his hede he garte hym stowppe
 5870 Backwardes ouer his meres crowppe,
 His fete towarde the firmament.
 Byhynde hym Kyng Richerd his spere oute hent,
 And lete hym lygge appone the grene.
 And sythen strykes the fende *with* spowrres kene,
 5875 And in the name of the Holy Goste,
 He dryues into the haythen oste.
 And also sone als he was *commen*,
 Oneane he brake their chiltrone;
 For alle þat euer byfore hym stode,
 5880 Horse and man to the erthe ȝode,
 Ȝaa! A twentty fote one ayther syde.
- and ever
 in their possession
 to that / hold*
- leapt
 pay attention*
- at great speed
 As fast as / go
 feet / strong sparks sprang
 Drummers beat / trompeters blew
 quickly*
- Met
 Chief Sultan of Damascus [i.e. Saladin]
 [The sultan's] trust was in his mare
 book tells us
 the horse's cover / bells
 whinnied / rang
 without lying
 large curved sword / wielded*
- f.156vb
*Slay / treason
 knelt
 would suck
 Because / [Richard] / aware / demon
 His [the colt's] ears
 [taken by] surprise
 fiend
 gave / mortal blow
 shield / certainly
 had a serpent painted on it*
- struck him hard*
- breastplate / burst open
 against his will / he bent
 rump
 feet towards the sky
 pulled out
 left / lying / ground
 then / struck / spurs*
- heathen host
 as soon as he came
 Immediately / broke / formation
 every one that stood in front of him
 went
 Oh! / on either*

- And whome þat he ouertoke in that tyde
Of lyfe ne was there warande nane.
Thorowte theym he made his horse to gane,
5885 Als bees swarmes abowte the hyves
The Cristyn men in aftir hym dryues,
And helmys þay brake & braynes owte gan welle,
And many Sarazenes doun þay felle.
Ane hundrethe thowsande & maa þay telde
5890 þat lay dede reghte in the felde.
When þay of France forsothe wistyne
þat þe maystry hade the Cristyn,
þay wexe þan balde & gude herttis tuke,
Stedis & speres faste þay schoke.
5895 And Kyng Philipe with a spere
Ane heythyn kyng thorowe gane bere.
And also oþer erles and baroun,
Strange men and of grete renownn,
Slewe the Sarazenes euen downn-righte.
5900 Of Ynglande, many a noble knyghte
Faughte full wele ther that daye:
Of Salysberye the Longspey
To the grounde he fellyde *with* his brande
Alle þat come hym to hande;
5905 For nexte Kyng Richerd euer 3itt he was,
And of Multon *Sir* Thomas,
Sir Fuk Doly, and Robert Laycestre –
In alle Ynglande was noghte their bettir.
Whare þat euer any of theym come,
5910 They sparede nothir lorde ne grome,
They gane bifore theym dryve alle doun.
The Sarazenes reghte into the townn,
For the grete sorowe that they sene,
They wepe full sore *with* bothe þaire eghne,
5915 And ‘Mercy!’ full lowde oneane þay criede.
They wolde caste vp the 3ates wyde,
And late þam at their will in gane.
The Cristyn hase the cite tane,
And hastely forthwith alle
5920 þay sett baners appon the walle,
The kynges armes of Ynglande.
Bot when þat *Sir* Saladyn gan vndirstande
þat þe cite 3oldin was,
Than bigan he to crye: ‘Allas! Allas!’
5925 The prys of haythynesse,’ he seyde, ‘es gane.’
And bygane to flye onane,
And sythyn alle thase þat flye myghte.
And Kyng Richerde, þat noble knyghte,
When þat he sees the sowdane flye,
5930 ‘Habyde, cowarde!’ he cryede one hye,
‘And I salle the prove false,
- whoever / at that time*
There was no guarantee of life
Through / go
- drove*
broke helmets / brains gushed out
- A / more / counted*
dead
knew for certain
the Christian had the upper hand
grew bold / took
shook
- A heathen king / struck* f.157ra
Strong / fame
- Longespey [Earl] of Salisbury*
knocked down / sword
- next [to]*
- Wherever*
neither / nor commoner
- The S. [who were]*
saw
wept / eyes
at once
gates
let them / go in
have taken the city
all together
- And / understood*
had surrendered
- The best / is gone*
flee at once
then / all those that could
- Stay / at once*
prove you

	And thi cursede goddis alls.'	<i>all your cursed gods</i>	
	Kyng Richerde dryves aftire full faste,	<i>chased</i>	
	The sowdane was full sore agaste,		
5935	Bot a grete wode the sowdane sees,	<i>forest</i>	
	And thedir too full faste he flyes,		
	Bot Kyng Richerde myght noghte in for his tree. ¹⁰		f.157rb
	Oneane his horse thane torned hee	<i>At once / he turned</i>	
	And mett with ane haythyn kyng.	<i>a heathen</i>	
5940	He toke þe axe owte of the ryng,		
	And hitt þe kyng appon the creste,		
	And clafe hym doun into the breste.	<i>cut him open</i>	
	And anothir he hitt appon the schelde,		
	That helme and hede flewe in the felde.		
5945	A seuen he slewe of haythyn kynges,		
	To tell þe sothe in alle thynges.	<i>truth</i>	
	In this storye reghte, als I fynde,		
	3aa! Ferre maa than ane hundrethe thowsande	<i>Ah! / Far more</i>	
	Of tome sadills abowte 3ode	<i>empty saddles / went</i>	
5950	Of the false laye, by the rode.	<i>false law [i.e. the S.] / by the cross</i>	
	Gud stedis rane with grete pryde,	<i>steeds</i>	
	Ilke man þat walde myghte þam ryde.	<i>Every / so wished could ride them</i>	
	The batelle lastede till it was nyghte;		
	When þay were alle slayne dounryghte –		
5955	þe Sarazenes þat þay myghte ouertake –		
	Grete joye thane gane the Cristyn make.	<i>made</i>	
	þay knelde and thanked God of heuen,	<i>knelt</i>	
	And wirchipped hym faste & his names seuen,		
	For a fayrere batelle was neuer 3itt wonn,		
5960	Sene þat þis werlde was firste bygun.	<i>Since</i>	
	This was appon Sayne Jhones daye,	<i>Saint John's</i>	
	At Midsomer, als I 3owe saye,		
	One bathe þe parties weren folkes yslawe;	<i>On both / slain</i>	
	Bot the nombire of the Cristyn lawe	<i>number</i>	
5965	þat laye dede there in the felde –		
	To God þay gane their saulis 3elde –	<i>souls yielded</i>	
	Ware slayne there ane hundrethe & thre.	<i>one hundred</i>	
	Bot of the Sarazenes ware slayne gretter plente:	<i>many more</i>	
	Thre hundrethe thowsande & 3itt maa, trewly.	<i>even more</i>	
5970	And loo slyke grace God vs sent and Saynt Marye,	<i>behold such</i>	
	The Cristyn þan to the cite gan gane,	<i>went</i>	
	And of golde and siluer and precyous stane		
	þay fand ynoghe, withowttyn fayle,	<i>found plenty</i>	
	Mete and drynke and othir vetayle.	<i>[And] food / supplies</i>	
5975	And at morne, when þat þe kyng rase,	<i>in the morning / rose</i>	
	To here messe anone he gase,	<i>hear mass / at once / went</i>	
	And the Sarazenes byfore hym come,	<i>came</i>	
	And asked of hym Cristyndome.	<i>to be baptized</i>	

¹⁰ But Richard may not enter [the forest] because of his log [i.e. the one tied crosswise to his horse's neck].

- And there was cristenyde, alls I fynde, christened f.157va
 5980 Maa thane ane hundrethe thowsande. more
 And kirkes garte he make of Cristyn lawe, he [i.e. KR] had Christian churches built
 And alle their Mawmettis he garte doun drawe. [i.e. idols] knocked down
 And alle thase that wolde noghte cristenyde beecome, were not christened
 He garte swythe slaa thaym, alle and some, Swiftly he had them all slain
 5985 And departede alle their tresoure divided
 Amanges Cristyn men *with honour*,
 Bot[h] erle and barownn, knyghte & knafe
 Hadde als mekill als þay wolde haue. as much as
 And there they soiourne fourtene nyghte, stayed
 5990 And one a daye they theym dighte, got themselves ready
 And towarde Jherusalem þay gun ryde. began [to]
 Kyng Philip spake a worde of pryde
 And sayd: 'Kyng Richerd, listyn to mee,
 Jherusalem þat ilke cite,
 5995 Giff þou it wynn it sall be myn.' Although you / shall be mine
 'By God,' quod Kyng Richerd, '& Saynt Austyn,
 And so God now do my soule bote, Saint Augustine
 Of my wynnynge noghte halfe a fote As God may save my soul
 I ne will the gyffe of na lande, not even half a foot
 6000 I do the wele to vndirstande. I will give you of any land
 And gif þat þou will haue it,' he sayd then, I tell you well
 'Gaa forthe and wynn it *with thi men*. if you want to have it
 Myn offerande,' quod Kyng Richerd, 'lo it thare, Go / your men
 I will noghte come the cite noo narre.' [This is] my offer / certainly
 6005 And ane alblaster of vys full sone he bent any nearer
 And a floreyne to þe cite warde he sent. a crossbow / soon
 And þan for irre wexe seke þe Kyng of Fraunce bolt / towards the city
 And his leche seyde hym, *withowte distaunce*, anger / became sick
 6010 þat he ne myghte noghte hale bee physician / without doubt
 Bot giff þat he went to Fraunce in hye. could not be healed
 And þe Kyng of Fraunce wele vndirstode Unless / immediately
 þat his conselle was ryghte gude.
 And his schippes he garte dighte bothe more & lesse, made ready / all of them
 And went forthe at Alle-Halowmesse. All Hallows
 6015 And Kyng Richerde þan one hym gan crye, shouted at him
 And seyde he dide grete velanye [Philip] caused great harm
 To wende hame for any maladye, [By] going home
 Owte of þe landes of Surry Syria
 Till slayne weren alle Goddes enemys. Before
 6020 For lyfe or dede in any wyese, [Whether] living or dying / way
 The Kyng of Fraunce wolde no3te hym here, would not listen to him
 Bot passede forthe one this manere; went forth
 And aftire their partynge thare, forsothe,
 Euermore forthe aftirwarde were þay wrothe. departure / certainly
angry [with each other] f.157vb
- 6025 **K**yng Richerde went than with his oste host
 To Jaffe, withowtten any boste. Jaffa / indeed
 The kynges pauelyoun, faire & fyne, pavilion

- Was pighte doun in a gardyne. *pitched*
 And other lordes gun abowte hym sprede *began*
 6030 Theire pauelyouns in a full faire mede. *meadow*
 Kyng Richerde than with his men alle
 Off the cite made the walle, *built*
 Pat neuer there was in þe Sarazene lande
 So strange a walle wroghte *with* mannes hande. *strong*
 6035 The castelle was stronge and riche,
 In the werlde was nane it liche. *it had no equal*
 The kyng thane soiourneþe thare *stayed*
 Till Jaffe was made bothe lesse & mare *completely*
 Saueþe þat þay myghte gaa abowte *Safe so that / go*
 6040 Many a mile *withowtten* dowte.
 Kyng Richerd than to Chaloyne went *Ascalon*
 And fande the walles alle torent. *destroyed*
 Mekill and faire was that cite, *Large*
 And Kyng Richerd þeroffe hade pite,
 6045 And there he bisoughte his lordis alle
 Of þat cite to make the walle.
 And he wolde make the halfendeþe *half of it*
 By hymselfen, fynly and wele. *very well indeed*
 The gentills þan, euerilkeane, *noblemen / everyone*
 6050 Graunteþe his askynge sone oneane, *at once*
 Saue the Duke of Ostrike, *Except for the Duke of Austria*
 For Kyng Richerd he thoghte to beswyke. *deceive*
 Kyng Richerd ther faste gane trauaylle *worked*
 Abowte the makynge of þat ilke walle, *that same wall*
 6055 And swaa þay dide, bothe ane & othire: *so / one and other [i.e. all of them]*
 The fadir, the sone, the eme, & þe brothire. *uncle*
 Some made þe mortere & some layd stane, *mortar / stones*
 At þaire myghte euerilkane. *everyone*
 Euerilke a kynge and emperour *Every*
 6060 Stanes bare or ells mortere,
 Saffe þe Duke, þer euyll mote hym speþe. *Except for / ill may he fare*
 He ne wolde nozte helpe for nankyns nede, *would not help for anything*
 And one a daye, Kyng Richerde hym mett, *on*
 And full hendely he hym grett, *in a courtly way*
 6065 And preyede hym, for his curtasye,
 Of the walle to maken his partye. *part*
 And he ansuerde one this manere:
 ‘My fadir was neuer masone ne carpentere,
 And giff þour walles alle toschake, *though / broke apart*
 6070 I ne schall neuer helpe þam to make.’
 Kyng Richerd thoghte he spake grete erreure, *he [i.e. the duke] was greatly mistaken*
 And wrethed hym gretely & chaunged coloure; *became furious*
 The duke agayne þe breste he smate *He hit the duke on his breast*
With his righte fote, God it wate, *foot / God knows it*
 6075 Agayne a stane that he ouerþrewe, *[That] against*
 Bot the duke rase agayne, full pale of hewe. *rose*
 ‘Now, fy,’ he sayd, ‘thou vile cowarde, *he [i.e. Richard]*

- In helle be þou hangede harde.
 Gaa qwitly faste owte of oure oste,
 6080 þe curssyng hafe thou of the Holy Goste.
 Be the sydes of swete Jhesus,
 Fynd I the mare amanges vs
 Ouer thies ilke dayes three,
 Miselfe schall thy bane bee.
 6085 We trauelle wele alle bothe day & nyghte,
 In werre, in wakyng, and in fyghte,
 And thou ligges ay still, als a foule glotoun,
 And rystes the in thi pauelyoun,
 And drynkis wyne, gud and strange,
 6090 And slepis alle the nyghte lange.
 Bot I sall take thi banere,
 And caste it into the ryuere.
 Thane hame went the duke full wrahte,
 His lyfe to lose hym was full lathe,
 6095 Of this dispytte he was vnblythe,
 And garte trusse his hernays also swythe,
 And sware by Jhesu in Trynytee,
 Mighte he euer his tyme see,
 He solde one Kyng Richerde hym so wreke
 6100 þat alle the werlde thereoffe scholde speke.
 And he helde hym alle to trewe forwarde,
 In helle therefore be he hangede harde.
 For thurgh his tresoun & his trecherye,
 And thurgh the waytting of his spye,
 6105 He dide Kyng Richerde grete schame,
 þat sythen torned alle Ynglande vnto grame.
 Bot a littill langere & he hade myghte
 Haffe lyffede, by God almyghte,
 Ouer kyng and duke and emperoure,
 6110 He hade bene lorde and conqueroure;
 Alle Cristyndom and eke paynym
 Solde hafe bene holden hally of hym.
 The Duke of Ostriche þan hied hym faste
 Awaye with his men in haste,
 6115 And with hym the Duke of Burgoyne,
 The folke of Fraunce, & þe Erle of Boloynes.
 And the kyng garte brekyn his banere,
 And caste it into a ryuere,
 And cryed one hym with voyce stepe:
 6120 'Hame þou schrewe, þou cowarde, þou schepe!
 And come no mare, in any wiese,
 Neuere aftire in Goddes seruyce.'
 Kyng Richerde lefte than *with* his Ynglys,
 Toscanys, Gascoynes & Lumbardes ywysse,
 6125 Scottismen, Irys folkes, & folke of Bretayne,
 Of Geene, of Norweye, & also of Spayne,
 And made þe walles daye and nyghte,
- Remove [yourself] completely from our army*
- By
 [If] I find you still among us
 three days from today
 I shall be your death
 worked hard
 war
 always lie still / as a foul glutton
 rest in your
 strong
 sleep / long
 shall / your standard
 river
 Then / went home / angry
 He was most reluctant to lose his life
 humiliation / upset
 set about immediately packing up his equipment
 swore
 Should he ever see the chance
 would avenge himself on KR*
- he kept that pledge
 May he be hanged in hell
 through
 ambush*
- then turned / sorrow
 For had [Richard] lived a little longer* f.158rb
- would have been
 Christendom / also heathen lands
 Would have ruled completely
 hurried*
- broke [the duke's] banner*
- shouted at / loud voice
 [Go] home / rogue / sheep
 no more / in any manner*
- remained
 Tuscans, Gascons
 Irishmen / Brittany
 Genoa*

- Till that they were bothe strange & wighte. *powerful*
 And when he hade *with* grete payne
 6130 Made the walles of Chalayne, *Ascalon*
 Alle his oste with hym he tase *took*
 And wente hym forthe a grete pase. *[at] a great speed*
 Þe firste nyghte, in the name of Marye,
 He laye in a townn þat highte Femaly.
 6135 And at morne þay gan þam arme wele, *in the morning they armed themselves well*
 Bathe in iryn and in stele, *Both*
 And by the maryn forthe þay went *seacoast*
 To Albarye, a castelle gent,
 Pat was a castelle of heythynes,
 6140 Full of store & of grete rechis, *provisions / riches*
 Bathe of fatte flesche and of len, *Both / lean*
 Whete and hauere, pese & been. *Wheat / oats / peas / beans*
 Kyng Richerde it wanne & soiourned thare *won it / stayed*
 Thre wekes alle pleynere, *Three whole weeks*
 6145 And sent spyes by alle wayes,
 For to aspye alle the countreys, *environs*
 Bathe of ferre and also nere, *far / near*
 Into dyuerse londis sere, *many different lands*
 And to alle contres tythynges to spere. *make inquiries*
 6150 Bot thane of a castelle Kyng Richerd herde, *about a castle* f.158va
 Wele alle togedir how that it ferde, *the full story of what was going on*
 And alle was it full of Sarazenes
 Pat euermore were Jhesus whethirwynes. *enemies*
- A**nd Kynge Richerde went thedir in haste –
- 6155 Þe Sarazenes alle he thoghte to agaste – *surprise*
 And so he went in his journaye, *campaign*
 And come thedir one Sayne James daye *[25 July]*
 For to byssege the royalle castell Daroun, *besiege*
 And to wynne the castelle & the townn.
 6160 Bot the castelle was made of slyke stone *such stone*
 Pat þay dowttede assawttes neuer one, *had no fear of any attack*
 And abowte the castelle was a dyke,
 þay hade neuer sene nane slyke. *seen any such [moat]*
 And the Sarazenes cried one þaire langage: *in their language*
 6165 ‘Ȝee Cristyn dogges with euyll rage, *You*
 Bot Ȝe the sonere nowe wendis home, *Unless you / go*
 Here thane haue Ȝee fechide Ȝour dome.’ *Here will you meet your doom*
 Bot when that Kyng Richerde herde þat crye, *And*
 He sware his athe by Seynt Marye *swore / oath*
 6170 þat these Sarazenes scholde hanged alle, *all be hanged*
 Or slyke a chaunce þam solde byfalle. *Before they would have such luck*
 Þe Cristyn gane to assayle, & þay gane defende, *they [i.e. the S.] defended*
 And full many quarells to þam þay sende. *arrows*
 Alle that daye and alle that nyghte,
 6175 þay and the Cristyn helde the fyghte.
 Bot the Cristyn sawe þat þay myȝte noȝte spede, *And / succeed*

- And Kyng Richerd toke þan ane othir rede. *followed another strategy*
 Kyng Richerd bad thane alls his Ynglys *ordered / Englishmen*
 To take grete trees and rysse one alle wiese, *branches of all sizes*
- 6180 And fill with them the dykes of Daroun
 To take the castelle and the townn.
 And two grete engynes for þe nones *[with] two siege machines*
 Kyng Richerd garte caste in grete stones. *threw in*
- 6185 By watire þan were þay broghte oneane;
 The Mategriffone was the tane, *they [i.e. the machines] / at once*
 And it was sett appon ane hille *the one [machine]*
 To breke down bothe toure & castelle. *a hill*
 And þe toþer highte a Robynett, *tower*
 Appon ane othir hill it was sett, *the other was called*
 6190 And Kyng Richerdes owenn emangonelle, *another*
 þat was sett to anothire turrelle. *own catapult*
 And þe kyng garte the rysse bynd faste, *small tower*
 And into the dike þam to caste, *got the branches bound*
 And alle playne the dyke þay made. *filled up the ditch*
- 6195 Bot the Sarazenes þerof no drede þay hade, *f.158vb*
 For wylde fyre anone one þam þay garte caste *Greek fire / cast on them*
 þat alle þe rysse were one fyre & þat in haste, *wood*
 And brynte þam euyn vnto the grounde *burned*
 Righte sone within a littill stounde. *soon / little while*
- 6200 þe Cristyn þat weryn the walles vndir *were under the walls*
 Therof þay hade full mekill wondere. *Of that / great*
 Bot the mawngonells þay threwe alwaye, *catapults / continually*
 And brake þe walles bothe nyghte & daye; *broke*
 þe Robynett and þe Matgriffoun,
- 6205 Alle þat þay hitt it went adownn.
 And so within a littill stownnde, *a little while*
 þe vttermaste walle was broghte to þe grownde, *outermost*
 And also fillide was þe grete dyke, *so was filled*
 þat garte the Sarazenes full euyll lyke, *the S. greatly disliked it*
- 6210 And by than myghte oure Cristyn folkes wele *then*
 Entre into Daroun Castelle.
 þe erle of Laycestre, *Sir Robert,*
 þe beste body of alle medilerde, *the world*
- 6215 He was the firste, withowtten fayle,
 þe castelle Daroun þat gan assaylle, *assaulted*
 For vp he dide lyfte his banere,
 And smate in one his destere. *broke into [it] on his steed*
 þe Sarazenes þan with dishonoure
- 6220 Fled into þe heghe toure, *high tower*
 Bot many ane þer was þat stode withowte *others / outside*
 And faughte full harde, withowtten dowte,
 Agaynes þe noble erle, *Sir Robert,*
 And gaffe hym many a dynt full harde. *Against*
 Full many ane helme þer was ofweuede, *gave*
- 6225 And many a bacenett þer was cleuede, *a closed helmet / struck off*
 And scheldis full fele schorne in twa, *open-faced helmet / cut open*
very many shields sliced in two

- And many a stede stekyde alswaa; *steed killed also*
 Robert Thorname *with* his fawchoun, *broad sword*
 He gane crake þer full many a crownn. *cracked*
- 6230 And amanges þam come Kyng Richerd
 And to feghte manly he nothyng sparede, *fight*
 And many ane þer in littill stownnde, *in a short while*
 With his axe he broghte to grounde,
 And alle one fote ther gan he fighte. *on foot / he fought*
- 6235 Bot when the Sarazenes sawe þat syghte *And / saw*
 How plentenous was his payement, *many he had killed*
 Nane ne dorste thane habyden his dynte. *None dared to face* f.159ra
 Thane went they qwic, withowttyn fable, *quickly*
 And slewe there stedis in the stabill – *horses / stable*
- 6240 Þe fayreste dexters and stedis *warhorses / steeds*
 þat myghte any knyghte at nedis. *might [have]*
 Whete and floure, flesche & lardire, *wheat / meat / lard*
 Alle togedir they sett one fyre;
 For þay hade leuere for to [do] soo *preferred*
- 6245 Pan that theire vetayle schold helpe þaire foo. *provisions / their enemies*
 And by the sauoire Kyng Richerd aspiede, *smell / found out*
 And thane slewe he doun one euery syde
 Alle thase that he myghte ouertake, *those*
- 6250 For none amendis ne myghte þay make. *they might not make reparations*
 The kyng assayled thane the heghe toure *attacked / high tower*
 With wighte men of full grete valoure. *brave*
 Þe Sarazenes in the toure one ferre *at a distance*
 Sawe þat þaire endynge daye was nere, *final / near*
 And wilde fire sone owte þay keste *Greek fire soon / cast*
- 6255 Amanges oure Cristyn full faste.
 Þe fire flewe abowte so smarte *spread so quickly*
 þat full many a Cristyn it hurte.
 And þay myghte suffre no langere [that] thrawe, *situation*
 And oneane þay bigane þam to withdrawe *at once / retreat*
- 6260 A mile fra Daroun Castelle. *from*
 And þay gane caste one brade many a fire barell *widely*
 And sone þeraftir, in littill space, *soon*
 And thorowe the helpe of Goddis grace,
 The castelle was in fire alle
- 6265 Fra the heghe toure to þe vttirmaste walle. *From / outermost*
 The howses brynte & alle the hurdas, *burned / palisades*
 And full grete smoke ywys there rase. *rose*
 And the Sarazenes in the heghe toure
 Weren in so grete doloure, *such pain*
- 6270 For in hete þay weryn almoste alle loste, *heat*
 & in smoke nere dede, by the Holy Goste. *nearly dead*
 Bot thane they cried at a worde:
 ‘Now, mercy Kyng Richerd, lefe lorde, *beloved lord*
 Late vs gange owte of this toure, *Let us get out*
- 6275 And þou sall hafe full grete tresoure. *shall*
 Late vs gange with oure lyfe,

- And a thowsande pownde we sall þe gyffe.’ *shall give you*
 ‘Nay!’ quod Kyng Richerd, ‘be Jhesu Criste,
 Bi his dede and his vpriste, *death / resurrection*
 6280 3e schall neuer come adoun *You / down*
 Till payed be 3oure rawnsoun. *your ransom is paid*
 And 3itt ther aftire, at my will, *even then / [it will be] at my will [i.e. I shall decide]* f.159rb
 Whethir I will 3owe saue or spill.’ *slay*
 ‘Alle thi will,’ quod they, ‘will we do, *your will / said*
 6285 *With* thy that we may come the too
 To hange or bryne, or ells to slee. *burn / be killed*
 Oure lyfe and dede nowe alle ligges in the.’ *death / lies with you*
 And Kyng Richerde granted þam thane,
 And comande ilke a Cristyn man:
 6290 ‘Late the Sarazenes be with sorowe *Let*
 Vntill the sonn rase one the morowe.’ *sun rises in the morning*
 When this was done, als I fynde,
 Kyng Richerde garte þam faste bynde *had them tied*
 Appon a playne byfore the walle.
 6295 þe kyng than garte men lede þam alle, *made / lead*
 And he þat payed a thowsande pownde,
 Of his hede he myghte be sounde. *could keep his head*
 And þat wolde so mekill gyffe, *much*
 Till a certayne daye, he lete þam lyfe. *live*
 6300 And he that payede na rawnsoun, *no ransom*
 Alle quyte his hede was smyttyn of somme; *His head was cut clean off at once*
 And thus Kyng Richerd wanne Daroun, *won*
 There God giffe vs alle his benysoun, *blessing*
 And his sawle gude riste and roo *soul / rest and peace*
 6305 And oures also when it comes ther too.
- A**ftere the wynnyng of Daroun,
 Kyng Richerd went to anothir toun,
 To Gaytris, *with* full faire menzee
 For to ensegge that ilke cite. *Gaza / retinue*
 6310 Bot herkenys nowe how he it wanne, *besiege / same town*
 And heris nowe of a doughty mane, *listen / won*
 A full stowtte werryoure & *in* fighte full qwaynt
 þat neuer 3itt was funden faynt. *brave*
 He þat was lorde of Gaytris *cunning*
 6315 Was a man of mekill pris, *great renown*
 And full felle to fighte agaynes his faa. *fierce / enemies*
 Bot that ilke tyme was he noghte saa, *[on] that occasion / not so*
 Bot ther he dide a faire qwayntise, *And / trickery*
 And herkenys nowe one what kyns wyse. *in what manner*
 6320 Emyddis the townn appon a stage,
 He garte make a marbill ymage, *In the middle of*
 And crowned hym als a kyng, *had a marble image made*
 And chareged his folkes, alde & 3ynge,
 þat þay ne scholde noghte be aknawe, *commanded / old and young*
 6325 To no Cristyn, noþer hye ne lawe, *should not let [any Christian] know*
either noble or common

þat þay na noþer lorde hade of dignytee,
Bot that ymage in that cite.

*they had no other lord [i.e. god]
Except for that image in that town* f.159va

- K**ying Richerd thane, *withowtten* houe,
Swythe layde assawte vnto þe toun,
6330 With spryngals & manganells bent,
And grete stonys into þe cite he sent.
The Sarazenes than full faste mercy cryed,
And þay wolde caste vp theire 3atis wyde,
Giffe it were the kynges will,
6335 þat he wolde noghte the popill spyll.
Kying Richerde granted thane, *withowtten* lese,
And þay entrede thane alle in pese.
Bot Kying Richerd askede at þe firste worde
Of the cite whare was the lorde,
6340 And they ansuerde vnto the kyng
And sayde þat þay had na lordyng
Bot the ymage of marbill fyne,
And Mawhoun and Appolyne.
Kying Richerd stode, so says the boke,
6345 And one the ymage gane he loke
How hegge he was wroghte & howe steryn,
And seyde to them thane also 3erne:
'Sarazenes,' he sayde, 'withowtten fayle,
Of 3oure lorde I hafe mervayle,
6350 Bot if I maye, thurgh þe vertu of my lorde God
þat boughte vs alle *with* his precyous blode,
With a schafte breke his nekke insondire,
And 3e myghte that see, 3ee wolde hafe wondir,
Bot will 3e thane trowe appon my lorde?'
- 6355 þay sayd alle 3aa thane at one worde.
þan Kying Richerd garte dighte hym a schafte
Of a traysty tree *with* full clene crafte,
And, for it solde be strange to laste,
He garte bynd þerto full faste
6360 Gud lange thre gud 3erdis of iryn full strange.
And sythyn he toke it in his hande
Garte sett thereone a coronalle full kene.
And when it was redy one to sene,
Gude Fawell of Cipris forthe was fett,
6365 And in the sadill he hym sett,
An rade his course to the stage,
And in the face he smate þe ymage
þat the hede flowe fra the body insondire,
And slewe seuen Sarazenes þat stode þervndire.
6370 And alle thase othere sayden thane
He was ane angelle and na man.
And alle þay bicome Cristyn reghte thare,
3ong and alde bothe lesse and mare.
And hastely, withowte lesyng,

*without delay
Swiftly attacked
siege machines / catapults*

*gates
If
slay the people
in truth
entered / peace
And
where*

no lord

[i.e. Saracen idols]

*looked at
high / in such a place of importance
eagerly*

*I marvel
am able / through the power*

*a spear break / into pieces
you would be amazed
And / believe in*

*yes
ordered to make a spear ready
stout timber / great strength*

*strong [enough]
ordered to tie*

*three / rods of strong iron
then*

*[And] had there placed a sharp circlet
to [be] seen*

*Favel / brought
saddle*

*made a charge
struck the image*

*head flew from
stood beneath*

all the others said

f.159vb

*became Christian
Young / old / low / noble*

6425	He wenys þat I will noghte lyfe lange, And therefore he wolde do me wrange. And he trowed þat I were one lyfe, I trowe he wolde noȝte <i>with</i> me stryfe. And giff John hym corownn at Paske tyde, Where will he thane me habyde?	<i>believes / will not live long wishes / wrong [if] he believed / alive quarrel if / crowns himself Where will he be waiting for me no king in Christendom</i>
6430	There es naa no kynge in Cristyantee, Certis, þat schalle his waraunte bee. Bot I may neuer trowe, for nakyn nede, þat my brothir John walde do me this dede. ¹¹ And therefore Kyng Richerd alle þis thyng	<i>For certain / shall be his protector believe / for anything deed</i>
6435	In herte ne helde it bot fore a lesyng. And oneane thane fra Gebelyne he went, To Bethanye, a castelle gent, And slewe there full many ane haythyn man, And the noble cite he wanne.	<i>In his heart he held it for a lie at once / from Ibelin noble castle many a heathen man won</i>
6440	And there come othir messangerse þat tolde Kyng Richerde, stowte & ferse, þat Jhon his brothir wolde bere þe crown at Pasche, he bigane to swere. Kyng Richerde was lathe <i>withdrowe</i> his hande	<i>noble and fierce Easter / he swore unwilling to</i>
6445	Till he hadde wonne the Holy Lande, And slayne the sowdane with a swerde, And vengede Jhesu Cristis dede. And he bythoghte hym, by þe Holy Goste, þat he wolde leue there alle his oste,	<i>sultan [i.e. Saladin] / sword death leave / host small retinue hurry make peace / immediately</i>
6450	And with a pryue menȝee Into Ynglande wolde hee, And pese that were sone onenone, Bytwene hym and his brothir John. And come agayne in alle þe hastyng, Till fulfill alle his begynnyng. ... ¹¹	<i>in haste To finish what he had begun go there</i>
6455	... 'For hym will I noghte thedir wende, Bot sone I sall theym socoure sende.' And to hym he called his eme, I saye, A baroun of grete vertue, <i>par</i> ma faye, þat highte <i>Sir</i> Henry of Champayne, And badde hym wende to Jaffe agayne. 'Take,' he seid, ' <i>with</i> the thyn oste, And loke þat þou felle the Sarazenes boste.' 'As armes!' than <i>Sir</i> Henry lete crye	<i>shall send them help nephew certainly was called ordered / to go with you your host bring down / pride To arms!</i>
6460	þat alle his oste scholden hye, And <i>with</i> <i>Sir</i> Henry swythe forthe wende Jaffe to helpe, and to defende Owte of the handis of <i>Sir</i> Saladyne, And slaa þat cursede Sarazyne.	<i>should hurry quickly go forth</i>
6470	At morne arely went forthe <i>Sir</i> Henry,	<i>slay Early in the morning</i>

¹¹ Thornton leaves the second column of fol. 160^r blank and resumes on fol. 160^v. The missing lines narrate that, on hearing that Richard is returning to England, Saladin attacks Jaffa. For the missing lines, see Appendix 2.

- And *with* hym barounns & knyghttis full hardy:
 Gascoyns, Spayneolfes, France men & Lumbardes,
 At the biddynge of Kyng Richerde,
 Þay went forthe ay be the maryn,
 6475 Always by the reuere of Chalyn.
 And *Sir* Saladyne oste at þe laste þay gane see
 How that it laye sprede ouer the contre.
 And when þat þe Duke Henry it wiste,
 He fledde agayne, by Jhesu Criste.
 6480 And ther he ne made no tarynge
 Till þat he come to Richerde, oure kynge,
 And seid: 'Sir, sothely I ne sawe neuer, 3itt ne herde
 In alle this wyde medillerthe,
 Halfendele þe peple of men
 6485 þat Saladyne hase, by down & dene.
 Ne no tonge,' he sayde, 'ne may þam telle;
 I trowe þay bene comen owte of helle.'
 Bot than ansuerde the Kyng Richerd:
 'Now, fy a debylls, þou vile cowarde!
 6490 Ne salle I neuer, by God aboffe,
 Trayste one Franche manes luffe.
 Þe Cristyn þat in Jaffe ware
 May wele whitte þe alle þayr care,
 And thorowe thy defaute I ame drede,
 6495 My full gud barouns are alle euyll bystadde.
 Bot nowe, for þe luffe of Saynt Marye,
 Schowse forthe en[k]erli my galy
 And stow faste gose & schippes 3ow bothe one & othir,¹²
 The fadir, the sone, the eme & the brothire,
 6500 And alle that euer nowe luffes mee,
 Goose to schipe now faste, pur charytee.'
 And alle þat wapyne bere myghte,
 To schippe þay went anone righte,
 And hiede agayne to Jaffe warde
 6505 *With* the doughty Kyng Richerde.
- B**ot nowe herkyns my tale for it es sothe,
 Þof þat I swere 3ow þerto nane othe,
 I will 3ow nenen romaunce now none
 Of Partynope ne of Ypomedone,
 6510 Of Alexander ne of Charlemayne,
 Of Kyng Arthoure ne of *Sir* Gawayne,
 Ne 3itt of *Sir* Launcelott de Lake,
 Of Beues ne of *Sir* Gy ne of Errake,
 Nor of Vly nor 3itt of *Sir* Octouyane,
 6515 Nor 3itt of *Sir* Ectore, the strange man,
 Of Jasone ne 3itt of Ercules,
 Of Eneas ne 3itt of Achilles.

*Gascons / Spanish
 command
 always along the coast
 river
 Saladin's host / saw
 region
 knew
 fled away
 delay*

*truly I have never seen or heard
 all the wide world
 half as many people
 As Saladin has on hill and dale
 count
 I believe they come*

*fie, to the devil [with you]
 I shall never / above
 Trust any Frenchman's loyalty
 were*

*lay the blame on you / for all their grief
 your cowardice
 beset*

*love
 Bring forth eagerly / galley*

f.160vb

*has loved
 Go / for God's sake
 could wield a weapon
 immediately
 hurried towards*

*listen to / it is true
 Though / no oath
 I will tell you now no romance*

*Bevis [of Hampton] / Guy [of Warwick]
 Ulysses / Octavian
 strong*

¹² And quickly provision it, and board everyone.

- For I ne wene neuer, *par ma faye*,
 Pat in the tyme of their daye
 6520 Did any of theym so many doughty dede,
 Nor zitt so strange batell in paire nede
 Als Kyng Richerde dide, saunce fayle,
 Att Jaffe in this ilke bataylle
 With his axe and his spere;
 6525 His saule now assoyle oure lorde so dere.
 It was byfore the mydnyghte,
 The mone and the sternnes schonne full bryghte,
 Kyng Richerde to Jaffe come
 With his galays alle and some.
 6530 He loked towards the castelle
 Bot he herde noþer pype ne belle,
 Bot thane they drewe þam nere vnto þe lande,
 Gyff þat þay myghte oughthe vndirstande,
 Bot ne couthe righte noghte aspye
 6535 Be nokyns sounde of mynstralsye,
 Pat qwike man in the castelle ware.
 And þerfore fulle bycome Kyng Richerd of care:
 ‘Allas!’ he seyde, ‘that I was borne.
 My gud barouns I haue forlorne,
 6540 Slayne I wote es *Sir Robert of Leycestre* –
 Pat was my full curtaise maystir –
 Ilke ane here of his hede was worthe a knyghte!
 And *Sir Robert Thomame*, þat was so wighte,
 And *Sir Bertrame* and *Sir Piparde*,
 6545 That in batelle were wyse & harde.
 And many of my balde barouns,
 Þe beste of alle my regyouns,
 Was slayne zisterdaye at morowe.
 How may I lyfe langare, for sorowe?
 6550 Till that I be wroken one Saladyn,
 Now certis I mon my joye alle tyne.’
 And thus fure Kyng Richerde aye
 Till it was þe spryngynge of the daye,
 Pat a wayte come till a kirmelle,
 6555 And pipede a note wondirly schille.
 He had pipide bot a sythe
 When he made many ane herte full blythe.
 He lokede down and sawe the galys,
 Kyng Richerde and alle his nauys,
 6560 The schippis & the galys full wele he knewe,
 And a mery note thane full sone he blewe
 And pyped: ‘Suse! Ore suse, ore suse!
 For Kyng Richerde es comen till vs.’
 Bot when þat þe Cristyn herden this,
 6565 In hertis þay weren full glade ywys;
 Erles, barouns, sqwyers & knyghte,
 Vnto þe walles þay went anone righte,
- do not believe, by my faith*
brave deeds
without doubt
very battle
soul / absolve of sins / dear lord
moon / stars
galleys
neither pipe nor bell
near into
So that they would be able to
[they] could not find out
By no sound of music
If there was any man alive in
full of grief
abandoned
I learn that / is slain
most noble official
Each hair of his head f.161ra
brave
bold
in all my domains
Were / in the morning
live longer
I take revenge on
I will lose my joy
fumed / all the time
it was dawn
herald / came to the battlement
played / surprisingly loud
only once
many hearts very happy
He [i.e. the herald] / the ships
fleet
merry
Rise up! Now, come on!
has come to [rescue] us
And / heard
In [their] hearts / certainly
To the walls / at once

- & when þay sawe Kyng Richerd, þair lorde,
 þay welcomed hym all at one worde:
 6570 'Welcome, lorde!' þay seid, 'in Goddis name.
 Oure sorowe nowe es tourned alle to gamen.'
 Bot when Kyng Richerde wistyn this,
 He was neuer halfe so fayne ywys,
 And 'as armes!' he cryed, 'dose makis 3ow zare!'
 6575 To þam þat with hym comen ware.
 'We ne hafe lyfe bot one,
 Selle we it dere bothe blode and bone
 For to clayme oure herytage.
 Slaa we thies paynyms of euyll rage,
 6580 And who þat dowttes of þaire manace,
 Hafe he neuer sighte of Goddes face.
 Take me myn axe in myn hande –
 þat was wroghte in mery Ynglande –
 It sall þis daye do God seruyce,
 6585 þat many a Sarazyne sall agryse,
 For þair harmys no mare I ne dowte
 þan þofe it were a pilche-cloute,
 And thurgh the grace of God in Trinyte,
 þis daye men sall the sothe see.'
- 6590 **A**nd al thir firste one lande he lepe,
 And of a dozane made ane hepe,
 And he bygane to crye with voyce clere:
 'Whare es that haythyne pautenere
 þat was commen to Jaffe strete?
 6595 With myn axe I schall þam mete
 þat þay sall cry owte one Mahownn, I saye,
 Slyke wassalle I salle þam drynke, be my faye.'
 And with þat he layde one on euerilk syde dounri3te
 And slewe the Sarazenes full faste, I 3ow plichte.
 6600 Bot the Sarazenes fled faste & were nere mate,
 With grete cry owte at the 3ate,
 And in their hertis þay mad myche sorowe,
 þat alle þe gatis were þam to narowe.
 To the wallys þay rane of the townn,
 6605 And one euerilke syde þay felle down,
 And some of theym brake þaire swire,
 And legges & armes, & alle in fere.
 And ilkane cryed one this manere,
 Als that 3e schalle now aftir here:
 6610 'Malcan starram naire arbrn
 Lor fermor toir femorn.'
 & þis es to saye one Ynglys:
 'The Ynglys deuyll comen es,
 Gif he vs mete we mon dy þis day;
 6615 And þerfore flye we hethyn owte of his waye.'
 And owte of þe townn þay fled ilkane
- into joy
 And / knew of
 pleased
 To arms!! / Make yourselves ready!
 To those who had come with him
 We have but one life
 [Let us] sell it dear
 [Let us] slay / foolhardy heathens
 whoever fears / threat
 May he never see
 [I shall] take my
 shall
 frighten f.161rb
 their weapons I do not fear
 Any more than / ragged coat
 shall see the truth
 all the first / he leapt on land
 a dozen / a heap
 loud voice
 Where / heathen villain
 has come
 meet
 Such a toast / by my faith
 struck / every side
 And / overcome
 made much sorrow
 gates / [for] them too narrow
 every side
 broke their necks
 legs / all together
 each of them / in this manner
 As you shall hear
 which in English means
 has come
 If he meets us, we will die today
 [let us] flee
 everyone*

- That therin ne lefte neuer ane,
 Bot a foure hundrethe or a fyve
 Pay Kyng Richerd garte lose þaire lyfe,
 6620 And at the 3atis he sett porters,
 And stabled wele vp his dexters.
 Bot than the kynge leped appon Fawelle,
 Wele yarmede in yryn and stele.
 His folkes were armede, alle in fere
 6625 þat owte of the galys comen were.
 And full many come owte of the castelle
 þat weren yarmede full fynly & wele.
- K**ying Richerd rade forthe at þe 3ate,
 And two haythyn kynges mett hym þerate,
 6630 *With* sixty thowsande Sarazenes ferse,
 With armours brighte & brode baners.
 And the tone he hitt appon the hede,
 That at the girdille-[stede] it *withstode*.
 And the tothir one the helme he hitt
 6635 That vnto the sadill he hym slytt.
 And his knyghtis and his barouns
 Faughte als þay hade bene wode lyouns,
 And slewe those Sarazenes also swythe,
 Als girse fallys fro the sythe.
 6640 And the Sarazenes sees [n]o better wane,
 And fled awaye euerilkane
 Vnto the sowdans grete oste,
 þat fyvetene mile laye fra þat coste.
 Twa hundreth thowsande, *par* ma fay,
 6645 Of Sarazenes kene was slayne þat daye;
 For alle thiere armours ferde als waxe
 Agaynes gud Kyng Richerde axe.
 Many a Sarazyne & gret lordyng
 3alde theym thare to Richerd oure kynge.
 6650 He toke þam into ostage þat daye,
 þer was of lordis a thowsande prisoners, I dare say.
 And the chase lastede right full lange,
 Till þat it was þe tyme of euensange.
 And Kyng Richerde rade aftir till it was ny3te
 6655 And slewe all þat euer he ouertake myghte,
 þe nombir couthe no man acownnte,
 How many þat it wolde to amounte.
 Kyng Richerde lefte *withowtten* þe townn,
 And pighte reghte ther his pauelyoun.
 6660 And that nyghte, with mylde hert,
 He comforthed his barouns smarte.
 Als 3e schalle here, at one þe morowe,
 þat was a daye of mekill sorowe,
 And ane of the strangeste batells, I vndirstande,
 6665 þat euer 3itt was herde of in any lande.

*no one remained in town
 Except for four or five hundred
 KR killed them
 placed porters at the gates
 noble horses
 And / leapt on
 Well armed / iron
 together
 As [they] came outof the galleys
 came
 were*

*rode / gate f.161va
 heathen / there
 fierce
 the one
 waist it [i.e. the sword]
 the other / helmet
 he split him open to the saddle*

*as / mad lions
 swiftly
 grass falls from the scythe
 no better choice than [to run away]
 everyone
 Towards / host
 lay fifteen miles from
 Two / certainly
 were slain
 behaved like wax
 good KR's*

*Surrendered
 took them as hostages*

*long
 evensong
 rode*

*No man could count the number
 would amount
 outside
 pitched / pavilion
 heart
 barons' pain
 hear / the following day
 much
 one of the fiercest battles*

- And 3e, þat will of þat batelle here, you / hear
 Herkenys nowe and 3e schalle lere, Listen / learn
 And for the luf of God allemyghte, love
 Fill þe coppe oneane righte. *Amen* cup at once
- 6670 **A**ls Kyng Richerde ssatte at his sopere, sat / supper f.161vb
 And comforthede his barouns *with* myld chere, comforted / gracious manner
 And gladded þam *with* gud wyne,
 Reght swa come in messangers fro Saladyn At once came
 One twa moyles, & doun þay lighte. On two mules / dismounted
 6675 In silke and fyne golde ware þay dighte, they were dressed
 And aythere toke othere by the hande [they] took each other
 And sayde: 'Kyng Richerde, vndirstande,
 Sir Saladyne, oure riche kyng,
 Sendis the now this thyhyng: Sends you / message
 6680 Giff þat þou be so doughty a knyghte If / brave
 That thou will duelle here alle nyghte stay
 Till tomorne þat it daye ware, tomorrow when it is day
 Of alle thi blysse þou solde be bare. your bliss you should be stripped
 For thy lyfe and thy barouns your life
 6685 He will noghte gyffe two botouns. not give two buttons [i.e. anything]
 He will the take *with* strengthe of handis, defeat you by force
 For he hase alle þe folke of many landis,
 Of Egere and Gregeys & of Turkey, ?Aegean coast / Greeks
 Maroyns full many & of Araby, Maronites
 6690 Baschells also and Nubyens, eager knights
 Full egere knyghtis & of gret defense, Cairo
 Egipcyenes and also of Babyloyne, Northern India
 Of Ynde the More & also of Askaloyne,
 Of Orygenes & also of Capadosy,
 6695 Of Sydones & also of Barbary Sidon / Barbary Coast
 Two hundrethe thowsande knghtis, sance faile, without doubt
 And fyvetene thowsande of gud amyralle, good emirs
 That the grownde may vnnethes þam bere can scarcely bear them
 þe folkes þat comes the to dere. to hurt you
 6700 Bot by oure rede do nowe reghte wele, our advice
 Torne agayne to Jaffe Castelle Return
 For in safewardre þerin þou may bee, safe in there
 Till þou hafe sene oure men3ee. have seen / army
 And giff þat þou see þou may no3te *with*stande, if / you cannot defeat us
 6705 Torne agayne into Ynglande, to England
 And thus thou may fra thy dede flee you may flee from your death
 Hame to thi contree by the see.' [Going] home / your country / sea
 Bot in ire Kyng Richerd toke a lafe, a loaf [of bread]
 þe croste in his hande he rafe, crust / tore up
 6710 And sayde vnto that Sarazyne: said to f.162ra
 'Now God gyff the euyll to tyme,
 And for 3oure conselle and 3our thyhyng,
 God gyff 3ow bothe eyull endyng,
 3ow and Saladyne 3oure lorde, give you / for a long time
advice / message
an unpleasant death
You

- 6715 The deuyll hange 3ow *with* a corde!
 Gase nowe and says to Saladyne
 Pat in the dispite of Mawhoun & Appolyne,
 I sall habyde here till the tyme
 Pat it be tomorne pryme.
- 6720 Giff I were bot myselfe allane,
 I dorste habyde thaim euerilkane.
 And gyffe that dogge will come to me,
 My polaxe sall his bane bee.
 Gase now swythe & says hym thus,
- 6725 And the malysone 3e hafe of swete Jhesus.’
 The messangers thane forthe gan wende,
 And tolde the sowdane worde & ende.
 And *Sir* Saladyn hym hugely maruellde þan,
 And sayd hym semyde none erthly mane:
- 6730 ‘He es a deuyll or ells a saynt;
 For he was neuer 3itt fonden faynte.’
 And oneane he made his ordynaunce,
 Bot therof ne roghte Kyng Richerd by no chaunce,
 And went hym one to Jaffe warde
- 6735 For by nyghte he thoghte to take Kyng Richerde.
 And þerof ne toke Kyng Richerd no kepe,
 Bot in his logg[ing] full faste he slepe
 Vntill it was agaynes þe dawnynge.
 Þer herde thane a full schille cryinge;
- 6740 Thorowe Goddis grace ane angelle of heuen
 Pat seyde vnto hym, *with* mylde steuen:
 ‘Ryse vp, Richerd!’ quod he, ‘& lepe appon Fawelle,
 And torne agayne to Jaffe Castelle
 For þou hafe slepide lange ynoghe.
- 6745 For þou salle fynd þe passage bothe harde & toughe
 Or þat þou come to that cite,
 þou sall be full wrathe & alle thi men3ee,
 And aftir the batelle þou do thyn ese,
 With Saladyn the byhoues to make pese.
- 6750 Take trewe and late thy baronage
 Go to þe flome to do their pilgremage,
 To Nazarethe and to Bedleme,
 To Caluarye and to Jerusalem,
 And late theym wende hame aftir thane,
- 6755 And come thou hame with thi schipmen;
 For þou hafe many famen, I vndirstande,
 Bothe here and in thyne awenn lande.
 Now, vp gud *Sir* Knyght! & wele mote þou spede;
 For þou ne hade neuer 3itt more nede.’
- 6760 And vp stirte Kyng Richerd, & þat in hy,
 And full smartly he bygane for to cry:
 ‘Suse a suyse, ore suyse or suse!
 For vs hase warnede oure Kynge Jhesus,
 He blewe, he cryede: ‘As armes whatt!’
- Go / say*
[i.e. the Saracen idols]
shall stay
tomorrow at 6:00 am
[Even] if / alone
dare face them everyone
if / dog
pole-axe shall be his doom
Go fast / tell him
Or / curse
went forth
sultan / from start to end
 marvelled then
[Richard] did not seem human
either a devil or a saint
never yet found cowardly
at once / command
And / [Saladin] took no heed
went towards
- KR took no heed*
And / lodgings / slept fast
dawn
loud cry
Through / an angel
mild voice
said / leap / Favel
return
have slept long enough
- Before you come / town*
very angry / your retinue
you can take your rest
you should make peace
a truce / let your
the river [Jordan]
Bethlehem
Calvary
let them go home afterwards
you come home / your shipmen
you have / enemies
your own
[get] up good / you must
you have never yet had
rushed up / in haste
- Come on! Now, rise up!*
Jesus has warned us
Arm yourselves!

- 6765 And 3itt almaste he come to late, *almost / had come too late*
 For why Sir Saladyne & alle his oste *host*
 Bytwene þam & Jaffe was, by þe Holy Goste,
 For thedir he hade tane the waye, *to that place / had taken*
 Kyng Richerde to hafe taken þat daye. *to defeat KR on that day*
- 6770 þat was to Kyng Richerd full grete payne, *great worry*
 His oste he myzte nozte for haste ordeyne,¹³
 Bot preked forthe appone Fawelle, *And / spurred*
 And garte his launce byte reghte welle. *made his spear cut*
 For þerwith he slewe, withowtten dowte,
- 6775 Thre kynges of the haythyn rowte. *heathen army*
 Hys horse was strange & hymselfe gude, *strong*
 & þerfore horse ne man nane hym withstode; *neither horse nor man*
 For he gane hewe appon þe haythyn corses, *cut / bodies*
 And vnto grownde he keste þaire horses. *felled their*
- 6780 Who þat hade sene his contenance *Whoever / seen*
 Wolde hafe had hym euer in remembraunce. *would never have forgotten him*
 þe Sarazenes one hym als thikke flyes *fly about him as thickly*
 Als fra the hyves dose the bees. *As bees do from hives*
 And with his axe he gan doun dyngre *knocked down*
- 6785 Alle þat euer he myghte to wynn. *rode*
 And Ynglysmen & Fraunce men gan after hym ryde – *they were eager to fight on that day*
 To feghte þay were full fresche þat tyde – *they beat*
 And appon þe Sarazenes full faste dange þay, *long swords / sharp spears*
 With swerdis lange & sperys kene, I saye. *struck vigorously*
- 6790 And layde one faste with alle þaire myghte, *them outright*
 And slewe full many of theym dounreghte. *they took little notice*
 And þerof toke þay full littill kepe, *As many of them lay in a heap*
 Als many of theyme als laye one hepe *As those [who were] not slaughtered*
 Als þose na slawgtire, withowtтын fayle, *seen / battle*
- 6795 Hade bene sene in that bataylle. *bog / outside*
 A mirre was there withowtten Jaffe Castelle, *good mile wide / be assured*
 A lange mile brede, nowe wete 3ee wele; *despite*
 And mawgrethe those Sarazenes, Richerd oure sire *drove / bog*
 Fyve thowsande he drafe into the myre. *might see heathen men*
- 6800 And there myghte folkes see haythyn men *Lie / swamp*
 Lygge and bathe theym in the fen, *wished to*
 And these that wolde hafe comen vpe, *[i.e. They were killed by KR]*
 þay dranke of Kyngis Richerdis cope; *almost slain*
 Kyng Richerde & his men had nerhand slayne *The sultan, had he not been rescued*
- 6805 The sowdane, ne hade grete rescowe hym tane. *heathen*
 þe sowdane loste there of his haythen men at hande *two hundred thousand*
 A twa hundrethe thowsande, I vndirstande – *found*
 Als it was in the Franche romance yfounde – *a little while*
 þat were slayne in littill stounde. *returned*
- 6810 Bot thane tournede Kyng Richerd agayne *returned*
 To helpe his oste with myghte & mayne. *vigour*
 There ne neuer 3itt noo one man, I dare wele telle, *There was no man*

¹³ [Because] he could not arrange his host in a hurry.

- Pat *with* his awnn handis so many haythyn men gun quelle. *own hands / killed*
 Bot in the moste perelle of alle the batelle, *peril*
 6815 Kyng Richerde saughe, *withowtten* fayle, *saw*
 His eme, *Sir* Henry of Champayne, *nephew*
 Fellid downn of his horse appon þe playne, *Knocked down*
 And the Sarażenes hade hym vndir hande
 To slaa hym full faste abowte þay fande. *slay*
 6820 For it hade bene his daye laste, *last day*
 Had noghte Kyng Richerde comyn in haste. *Had not KR come*
 Kyng Richerd cryed thane *with* lowde voyce:
 ‘Helpe now, lord God and the holy croyce,
 Pis ilke daye myn eme þou schelde *same day / protect my nephew*
 6825 Fra the dede of 3one dogges wilde. *From / deeds / those wild dogs*
 Now lordynges,’ he sayd, ‘one faste layes one, *strike fast*
 Latis of thies dogges eschappe righte none! *Let / these / escape*
 And I myselfe sall profe to smyte, *prove / strike*
 Gyffe that my polaxe will oughte byte.’ *If / pole-axe*
 6830 And ther men myghte see hym, *with* myzte & mayne,
 Stryke the Sarażenes thurghe blode & brayne;
 For appon that playne that grene was *that was green*
 Full many a saule was sent to Sathanas. *soul / Satan*
 For by granyng of the more *groaning of many men*
 6835 Mighte men see þer Kyng Richerd fure. *[how] KR fared*
 And the Templers come hym to socoure, *came to help him*
 And there bygane a full strange stowre *violent combat* f.162vb
 Þay layde one faste als þay were wode, *struck fiercely / as [if] / mad*
 Till valays and dales rane alle one blode. *valleys*
 6840 The Longspraye was a doughty knyghte,
 And als he ware wode he bygane to fyghte,
 And also did gud *Sir* Fuk Doly,
 And *Sir* Thomas of Multon, full sekirly, *certainly*
 The Erle of Leycestre, gud *Sir* Robert,
 6845 And þe Erle of Richemonde & gud Kyng Richerde:
 For ther als thies knyghtis forthe rade, *these / rode forth*
 Þay made a waye & that full brade *so wide*
 That thre waynes myghte one mete,
 And ther full many a Sarażene lefte þe swete. *three carts might drive down it*
 6850 And at þe laste, *with* full grete payne, *left the lifeblood [i.e. died]*
 Kyng Richerde wane to þe Erle of Champayne *reached*
 And sett hym agayne appone a stede *sted*
 þat was righte gude at ilke a nede. *at such a need*
 And bad hym habyde ther by his syde, *ordered him to stay*
 6855 And noghte ferre fra hym ryde. *not to ride far from him*
 Bot a messangere come there swythe one a reke *in a hurry*
 And sayde þat *with* Kyng Richerd wolde he speke,
 And sayde hym: ‘*Sir*, *pour* charitee,
 Torne agayne to Jaffe citee, *for God’s sake*
 6860 For couerde þay are bothe mounte & playne. *Return to*
 For Kyng Alexander ne Charlemayne, *covered / hill and plain*
 Ne ledde neuer 3itt swylke a rowte, *[neither] KA nor C.*
Ever led such an army

- Als alle the cite es nowe withelayde abowte. *fully besieged*
 And the 3atis are one fyre ysett *gates set on fire*
 6865 Of alle gud Jaffe chastelett, *castle*
 Thy men ne may noþer in ne owte, *Your men may [get] neither in nor out*
 And þerfore of the thay hafe grete dowte, *they fear what might happen to you*
 And 3e ne may noghte to the 3atis ryde, *If you cannot reach the gates*
 In the felde whate awnntir 3ow so betyde. *what fate [may] happen to you*
 6870 And also I warne 3ow, withowtten fayle,
 Full mekill enpayrede es 3our bataile, *your battle [strategy] is in great danger*
 And the Patriarke he taken es, *Patriarch has been captured*
 And Sir John the Nele es slayne ywysse,
 Sir Willyam of Arsour & Sir Gerarde,
 6875 And Sir Bertrame Braundis, þe gud Lumbarde,
 Alle thies are slayne and many mare.' *these / more*
 And Kyng Richerde hym bythoghte there,
 And cryed anone: 'Tornes arere,
 Euereilke a mane with his banere!' *Turn back*
 6880 Full many Sarazenes byfore thaym was sett, *Everyone* f.163ra
 With axes grym and speres full grete, *were*
 With fawcheons and *with* maces bathe. *both broad swords and maces*
 And gud Kyng Richerde þay made full wrathe, *furious*
 For þay slewe Fawelle vndir hym, *killed Favel*
 6885 And than was Kyng Richerd bothe wrothe & grym, *angry*
 And to that Sarazene full nere he drewe,
 And with his axe sone he hym slewe –
 He stekyde vndir Kyng Richerd Fawell, his stede – *He [who] had stabbed Favel*
 And therfore he loste his lyfe to mede. *in return*
 6890 Bot thane one fote he was & one he layde, *[Richard] was on foot / struck blows*
 Full many vndir his hande ther dyede.
 Alle þat he *with* his axe ouerreche myghte, *might have reached*
 Bathe horse & man he slewe downrighte, *Both*
 þat what byfore hym & what byhynde, *Whatever was in front of him*
 6895 Ther were a thowsande & maa, as we wretyn fynde, *more / we find written*
 That he slewe þer whills he was one fote, *while / on foot*
 þat to þam ne come neuer noþer helpe ne bote. *received neither help nor deliverance*
 With that come Saladyne sonnes two *with* pride, *two sons of Saladin*
 And ten thowsande Sarazenes by aythir syde, *either*
 6900 And gane crye appon Kyng Richerde,
 And seide: '3elde the, þou thefe, þou false cowarde!
 Or we sall sla the in this place.'
 'þou lyes,' quod Kyng Richerd, 'by Goddes grace.'
 And with his axe he hitt hym soo
 6905 þat his hede fell euen in two. *head*
 'Of the,' quod Kyng Richerd, 'now am I sekire.'
 His brothir com *with* þat righte in þat bekire, *Of you / said / I am sure*
 Appon a stede with grete raundoun, *came / battle*
 And thoghte to bere Kyng Richerd doun, *at a great speed*
 6910 And gaffe hym a grete wounde thurgh þe arme
 þat dide Kyng Richerd full mekill harme;
 For one the spere hede was venyme. *gave / through his arm*
did KR much harm
on the spear head there was poison

- And Kyng Richerd stowtely smate to hym, *struck so boldly*
 þat horse & man bothe felle to þe grounde:
- 6915 'Lygge there,' quod Kyng Richerd, 'þou heythyn hounde,
 For sall þou neuer telle Saladyne *Lie / you heathen dog*
 þat þou made me my lyfe to tyne.' *you shall never tell*
 Bot thane fyve dukes of haythunes *lose my life*
 Come one with their osten, withowtten lese, *heathen dukes*
- 6920 And bysett abowte Richerde oure kyng, *Came on / hosts / certainly*
 And thoghte to þe dede þay scholde hym brynge, *surrounded*
 And sone in that batayle hym ouerthrowe, *to kill him* f.163rb
 Bot thase fyve dukes sone hade he slawe, *soon*
 And fyve hundrethe aftir thane, *those / he slewe soon*
 Of many a stronge haythyn mane, *afterwards*
- 6925 And at the laste, þofe it were late, *heathen man*
 Kyng Richerde wanne to Jaffe ȝate. *though*
 þan were the Cristyn therin full sekire *reached / gate*
 þat þay solde ouercome full wele þat grete bekire. *certain*
- 6930 The Erle of Leycestre, *Sir Robert,*
 Broghte oure kyng his stede Lyarde, *steed*
 And Kyng Richerde into the sadill lepe. *into the saddle leapt*
 Bot thane fledde þe Sarazenes awaye lyke schepe, *And then / like sheep*
 And Kyng Richerd rade aftir to it was nyghte, *rode [until]*
- 6935 And slewe alle þat he ouertake myghte;
 For thare laye slayne in playne & den *lay slain / plain and valley*
 Ten hundrethe thowsande of haythyn men.
 That nyghte Kyng Richerd, withowtten lese,
 Wanne into the cite of Jafes, *Took control*
- 6940 And thanked Jhesu, the Kyng of Glorye,
 Of that ilke faire victorye; *excellent*
 For sen this werlde was firste bygun *since the world began*
 A fayrere batelle was neuer nane ȝitt wonn. *A better has never been won yet*
 Bot thane at þe morne, he sent *Sir Robert Sabuelle –* *in the morning*
- 6945 For he couthe doo a message welle – *could deliver*
 And bade theym sey vnto the sowdane *ordered them to tell the sultan*
 þat hymselfe agaynes fyve hundreth men, *against*
 In the felde bataylle wolde holde & fyghte
 For to maytene Goddis ryghte: *maintain God's law*
- 6950 'And gyff I it wyn, to hafe this lande *if I win it*
 Euermare in Cristyn mens hande,
 And gyff þe Sarazenes slaa me maye, *kill me*
 Owte of þis lande to wende for aye. *To go out of this land for ever*
 And giffe he ne will here of what ȝe saye, *if [Saladin] will not hear*
- 6955 Sayse hym þat thre ȝere, thre monethes, & thre dayes
 I will take trewse, withowtten delaye, *Tell him that for three years*
 To wende hame & come agayne þan.' *truce*
 þe messangerse went *with* this tythynges to þe sowdane *To go home*
 And tolde the sowdayne bothe worde & ende. *messengers / news*
 Bot he ne wolde assent to þe batelle for none ende. *from beginning to end*
- 6960 'V hundrethe agaynes one, saunche fayle, *Five hundred against / without doubt*
 þou may say hym tomorne & he will come, *tell him to come tomorrow*

- The trewse sall be redyly nommen.’
 And so one þe nexte [daye] þay bande forwarde
 6965 Of trewse vnto Kyng Richerde
 For thre ȝere, thane went þay to þe flome
 Alle that fra Acris wolden come.
 And than aftirwarde alle those thre ȝere,
 Cristyn men bothe ferre and nere
 6970 ȝode the wayes to Jerusalem,
 To the holy sepulcre & to Bedelem,
 And to alle othir pilgremage,
 Withowtten harme or any damage.
 And Kyng Richerde þat was so doughty of hande
 6975 Torned hamwarde into Ynglande.
 Kynge Richerde regned here
 Noghte bot allanly ten ȝere,
 Sythyn was slayne *with schotte*, *allas*,
 At the Castelle Galyarde there he was.
 6980 And thus endys þe romaunce of Richerd oure kyng,
 And God grante vs alle gude endyng. *Amen*
Explicit the Romance of Kyng Richerd þe Conqueroure
- considered*
made a treaty f.163va

three years / river [Jordan]
All those from Acre that wished to

Christian men / far and near
Travelled to

[places of] pilgimage

strong of hand
Returned home to
reigned
only
Afterwards [he] / with a [crossbow] bolt
Gaillard

Explanatory Notes

In the following notes, references are explained and intertextual connections noted; where relevant, bibliographical references are supplied so that the reader can explore the subject further. For practical reasons, bibliographical references are at a minimum; primary sources are referred to by their abbreviations, and secondary sources are noted as: 'Author (year of publication), (page number)'. Proverbs included in B. J. Whiting's *Proverbs, Sentences and Proverbial Phrases from English Writings before 1500* are noted by Whiting's reference number.

3 *Kyng Richerde*: Richard the Lionheart (1157-1199), Count of Poitou, Duke of Aquitaine; Duke of Normandy and King of England from 1189 to his death. He took part in the Third Crusade and, through his participation in the siege of Acre, the battle of Arsuf and the defence of Jaffa, he consolidated his reputation as a warrior and crusader. See Gillingham 1994, and 1999.

11-19 There are two lists of (romance) heroes in *Richard*; cf. note **6509**. See vol. 1 'History versus Fiction', pp. 137-43.

Duke Rowlande & Sir Olyuere: Heroes of the French epic *La Chanson de Roland* and the Middle English *Roland and Otuel* and the *Siege of Milan*.

duggepere: The twelve peers (OF doze (vr. duze, duzze) pers) or paladins of Charlemagne, of whom Roland and Oliver are the most famous.

Alexandere: Alexander the Great (356-323 BC), regarded as one of the greatest military strategists and tacticians who ever lived. The first version of the *Romance of Alexander*, which brings together numerous legends attributed to the emperor, dates from the third century AD but, during late Antiquity and the Middle Ages, the text underwent many expansions and re-writings both in Latin and in the vernacular; there are extant five major Alexander romances in Middle English.

Sir Gawayne: One of the knights of the Round Table, Sir Gawain is King Arthur's nephew, known as the Sun of Chivalry and hero of a number of romances, e.g. *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight*, *The Marriage of Sir Gawain*, *The Wedding of Sir Gawain and Dame Ragnelle*, and *The Awntyrs off Arthure*.

Kyng Arthure: King Arthur appears in Nennius' work *Historia Britonum* (c. 830) as a 'leader of battles'. According to the tenth-century *Annales Cambriae*, Arthur was killed at the Battle of Camlann in 537. Geoffrey of Monmouth's *Historia Regum Britanniae*, however, constitutes the first major popularization

of the Arthurian legend. Geoffrey's work influenced Robert Wace and Layamon, who expanded the Arthurian tales. By the time of *Richard's* composition, there were numerous Arthurian romances in circulation, mostly in French.

Sir Charlemayne: Charlemagne (742-814), King of the Franks (768-814) was crowned Emperor of the Romans by Pope Leo III on Christmas Day, 800. He appears in *La Chanson de Roland* and the Middle English romances *The Sultan of Babylon*, *Roland and Otuel*, the *Siege of Milan*, and the *Tale of Ralph the Collier*, among others.

Bischope Turpyn: Turpin, Archbishop of Reims, features in the legends of Charlemagne, in *La Chanson de Roland*, and in the 'Charlemagne' romances in Middle English, e.g. *The Siege of Milan*.

Sir Ogere Danays: Ogier le Danois appears in *La Chanson de Roland* and in the 'Charlemagne' romances in Middle English.

Troye: The siege of the city of Troy, famously narrated by Homer in *The Iliad*. The principal sources of the medieval Troy legend, however, were (apart from Virgil) the works of two putative eyewitnesses of the siege: Dares Phrygius (mentioned by Homer, *Iliad* V) and Dictys Cretensis. Dares was believed to have written an account of the destruction of Troy, whose Latin translation, *Daretis Phrygii de excidio Trojae Historia*, was then ascribed to Cornelius Nepos. This text was considered the most authoritative source because it was believed to derive from an eyewitness account. But Guido delle Colonne's *Historia Destructionis Troiae* (1287), thought to be a condensed version of the *Roman de Troie* by Benoît de Sainte-Maure, was the most widely translated version of the Troy story throughout Europe, and it is the source for Lydgate's Middle English *Troy Book*, completed in 1420; see Simpson, 397-423.

Ectoure: Hector, son of Priam, is the Trojan hero killed by Achilles at the end of the Trojan war; and *Achilles* is the Greek hero of the Trojan war.

- 21 *In Fraunce bokes thies rymmes men wrote*: A reference to romances on the siege of Troy, Charlemagne, and King Arthur; for discussion of why this line is unlikely to refer to a French source for *Richard* is a translation, see vol. 1, 'Date of Composition', pp. 96-8.
- 22 *Bot in Ynglys lewede men knewe it note*: Cf. *Of Arthour & Merlin* ll. 19-22: 'Of Freynsch no Latin nil y tel more / Ac on J[n]glisch ichil tel þerfore / Riȝt is þat J[n]glische vnderstond / Þat was born in Jnglond'; see also vol. 1, 'Sources', p. 116.
- 37 *Kyng Henry*: Historically, Henry II (1133-1189) married Eleanor of Aquitaine in 1152, two years before being crowned King of England. Henry and Eleanor had eight children, five sons and three daughters.
- 40 *Saynt Thomas of Cantirbery*: Thomas Becket (c1120-1170) was at first a close friend of Henry II; the king made Thomas chancellor and, in 1161, Archbishop

of Canterbury. But the relationship between Becket and Henry deteriorated and on 29 December 1170, four knights, believing the king wanted Becket killed, confronted and murdered the archbishop at Canterbury Cathedral. Becket was made a saint in 1173 and his shrine at Canterbury became an important site of pilgrimage.

- 60** *schipe*: The description of this ship brings to mind a medieval cog, or hulk, but it could also be a galley which, unlike cogs, was a sailing vessel that could also be propelled by oars (see note **4896**, and plates 22, 23, and 24); for discussion of the marvellous ship, see vol. 1, 'Sources', p. 122 ff. For specific terminology about ships, see plate 25.
- 68** *Als white als any mornnes mylke*: Whiting M548; similes abound in the romance; comparisons typically draw on nature, war, and atmospheric phenomena. Cf., for example, ll. 76, 138, 306, 385, 553, 868, 1032, 1529, 2210, 2296, 2542, 2568, 4920, 5189, 5207, 5521, 6639, and 6782.
- 76** *als þe sonne dose thorowe þe glasse*: Whiting S881; this image has religious overtones. It is reminiscent of similar expressions used in Middle English Marian lyrics, of the sunbeam entering Mary's chamber through a window in Annunciation iconography, and of the sun coming through a church window. See vol. 1, 'Sources' pp. 125-6, and note **68**.
- 138** *als whitte als floure*: Whiting F308; see also note **68**.
- 153** *Westmynstere* refers to the royal abbey and palace of Westminster. Two of the largest buildings in medieval England, Westminster Hall and Westminster Abbey represent the royal power of Henry as English monarch. Historically, the shift of the royal capital from Winchester to Westminster began under Edward the Confessor, but it was Henry II who completed it with his governmental reforms; see Rosser, 16ff.
- 163-164** *Corbarynge of Antioche*: Cassodoren's father's name evokes the Saracen leader in *La Chanson de Antioche*, Corbarans (Akbari, 201). *Antioche* is probably one of the sources for the episode of Richard's mother; see vol. 1, 'Sources', p. 126.
- 176** *my qwene*: Henry II's queen was Eleanor of Aquitaine; Cassodoren is a fictional creation of the romancer, even though he may have drawn on several sources. See vol. 1, 'Sources', pp. 121ff, and note **37**.
- 189** *lauacyoun*: The elevation of the host. In c. 1208, a Paris synod regulated the procedure for the consecration of the host: priests were to keep the host concealed before their breast until they had said the words *Hoc est corpus meum* (This is my body), and then to raise it aloft so that it could be seen by all. In time, this procedure came to be known as the Elevation, which, in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, would come to represent the most dramatic – and dramatised – moment of the mass (Barnwell; Kennedy 1944; Thurston).
- 194** *sacrament*: The Eucharist; see note **189**, and vol. 1, 'Sources' p. 121 ff.

- 199** *two sonnes and a mayden*: See note 37.
- 203** *Jhon*: Richard's brother, John (1166-1216) known as Lackland, became King of England when Richard died in 1199.
- 204** *Topyas*: In the romance, a sister of Richard. Like her mother, Cassodoren, Topyas is a creation of the romancer and not based on any of Richard I's historical sisters.
- 221-222** *bell bygan to ryngge ... sacryngge*: The elevation of the host emphasised the sacrifice (*sacryngge*) performed at the altar and, at the climax, a bell was rung – the 'sacring bell' – to attract the attention of those in the nave (Barnwell, 132-33); see vol. 1, 'Sources' p. 121ff.
- 229** *And owte at þe kirke rofe*: The episode of the demon-mother brings to mind the *mirabilia* recorded in the twelfth and early thirteenth centuries by Gerald of Wales (*Opera VIII*, Bk 3, Ch. 27) and Gervase of Tilbury (*Otia*, Bk 3, Ch. 57); see vol. 1 'Sources', p. 127 ff.
- 238** *Neuer more gaffe he hym noo women vntoo*: In light of the life of the historical Henry II, this could be read as an ironic comment from the romancer; cf. notes 1446, 2032, 2719, 3776, 4081, 5163, 5399, 5423, 6803.
- 239-240** *Bot ordeyned sone aftir his endyngge / His sone Richerde for to be kyngge*: These lines are almost historical; although Richard succeeded his father after his death in 1189, Henry was far from pleased with the prospect (Gillingham 1999, 76-100).
- 252** *joustinge*: In the early twelfth century individual encounters between two knights often preceded the charge of two teams, the tournament proper. Later the contact was better regulated, the area of fighting was defined, and a judge or judges viewed the fighting and awarded prizes (Keen, 86-7, 201-11). In this episode, the romancer does not mention any judges but the area of fighting is well defined.
- 271** *awnterows knyght*: The knight-errant frequently appears in romances. The meaning of 'errant' (wandering or roving) suggests that the knight would wander the land in search of adventures to prove himself in jousts and tournaments.
- 272** Richard jousts in disguise, in three different armours, a common romance motif; see, for example, Chrétien de Troyes's *Cligés*, Hue de Rotelande's *Ipomedon*, the prose *Lancelot* and, *Sir Gowther*. Cf. notes 271, 754, 1647, 5357, and see vol. 1, 'Sources', p. 117.
- 275** *And one his creste a rauen there stode*: The crest was a decoration, a distinguishing mark, or a heraldic device which was fixed to the top of the helmet; some historical examples were as elaborate as any described in the romance; see l. 337, and plates 6.1 and 6.2.

- 297 *gorgere*: A gorget is the piece of plate armour worn to protect the front of the neck; see also l. 323, and plate 9.
- 306 *als rede als blode*: Whiting B358; see note 68.
- 321 *besygewe*: A besagew is a small round shield laced to the mail at the shoulder to defend the armpit; see plate 8.
- 323 *pesane*: A mantle made either of plate or mail, attached or not to the helmet and extending over the neck and upper breast; see plate 12.
- 351 *helme*: The helm, known also as ‘barrel’ or ‘pot’ helmet, was generally made from several smaller sheets of steel, completely covering the face. From manuscript accounts, it appears that they were often painted in the colours of the knight, and might also have been washed in gold or adorned with brass, bronze or latten decor, generally in the form of a cross under the ocularia and down the front of the face. During the thirteenth century, the ‘great helm’ was developed; it provided better face protection by means of a face mask – pierced with ventilation and sight holes – which was attached to an iron skull cap (DeVries, 70-1); see plates 5, 6.1 and 6.2.
- 370 *deuyll*: Cf. ll. 498, 1108, 2582, 3659, 6613, 6730.
- 373 *thorghe plate*: Single plates of metal armour were used from the late thirteenth century onwards (and fully developed in the fourteenth century) to protect joints and shins; these plates were worn over a full mail shirt. By the end of the fourteenth century, larger and complete plates of armour had been developed; see plate 3.
- Thorghe actoun*: The acton or aketon was an arming coat, a stuffed jacket or jerkin developed in the thirteenth century. Initially, it was of quilted cotton and worn under the mail; in later times, it was made of leather or other material and plated with mail; see plate 13.
For mail and plate armour, see DeVries, especially chapters three and four.
- 374 *hawberke ne hawbergoun*: The hawberke was a mail shirt, generally long enough to protect the thighs. The hawbergoun was a shorter version of the hawberke, usually laced down the sides. See plates 10 and 11.
- 385 *als whitte als mylke*: Whiting M545; see note 68.
- 387 *And appon his schelde a crosse of rede*: This image of a red cross on a white ground is proleptic of Richard’s taking the cross later in the romance.
- 390 *To wynne the crosse*: The relic of the ‘true cross’, on which it was believed Jesus had died, had been captured by Saladin at the battle of Hattin (1187).
- 397 *Sir Fuk Doly*: A fictional character probably based on a Lincolnshire knight of

the House of D'Oyly, who is not recorded as participating in the Third, or any other, Crusade. In the romance, he is one of the two knights (the other being Thomas of Multon) who accompany Richard to the Holy Land, first as spies and later as crusaders; for the connection between Doly and Multon and the importance of these characters, see vol. 1, 'Date of Composition', p. 103 ff.

- 401** *bacenett*: The basinet was a type of helmet introduced around 1300, consisting of a conical bowl often raised to a peak on the top of the head and which protected the ears, cheek and neck. Open-faced, it was usually fitted with a movable visor (DeVries & Smith, 291-2; France, 17); see plates 4 and 7.
- 431** *Sir Thomas of Multon*: A fictional character probably based on a historical Lincolnshire knight of the same name who is not recorded as participating in any crusade. See note **397**.
- 498** *deuyll*: Cf. ll. 370, 1108, 2582, 3659, 6613, 6730.
- 553** *als white als snawe*: Whiting S437; see note **68**.
- 611** *with pyke, scrippe ... slawyne*: The staff, satchel and cloak by which a pilgrim would be recognised; see plate 35.
- 612** *palmers*: Pilgrims to the Holy Land would bring back a palm branch in token of their visit, which is why they were known as palmers, as opposed to other pilgrims going to Santiago de Compostella, Rome, Canterbury, or other shrines.
- 619-651** The fictional itinerary followed by Richard, Multon and Doly is composed of a number of place names that a medieval audience, who would not necessarily have travelled themselves, would have identified as belonging to a journey to the Holy Land. Some of the places are geographically accurate, some of them function as proleptic of the future conquests of Richard, Multon and Doly, and others may have been included for rhyming purposes.
- 635** *Macedoyne*: The geographical region of Macedonia, unlike the previously mentioned places, cannot have been in the itinerary from Acre to Babylon. In the Middle Ages, Babylon denoted either Egypt or Cairo and not the city-state of ancient Mesopotamia (present-day Al Hillah, Iraq). The region of Macedonia, therefore, cannot be between Acre and Cairo, unless the romancer refers to the territories conquered by Alexander the Great. See Map 8.
- 638** *Nynyve*: Niniveh lay on the eastern bank of the Tigris in ancient Assyria, across the river from the modern-day city of Mosul, Iraq (see map 7). The city is frequently mentioned in the Old Testament (e.g. Genesis 10: 11; Jonas 1: 2 ff; 4 Kings 19: 36; Tobias 1: 11; Judith 1: 5; Isaias 37: 37; Nahum 1: 1 ff) and, in the New Testament, in Matthew 12: 41, and Luke 11: 32. Therefore, the audience would have recognized it. Historically, Niniveh lost importance after 627 AD and was eventually abandoned and replaced by Mosul. There is no record that the site was ever visited by pilgrims to the Holy Land. However, as the name is repeated several times in the romance, it might represent a Middle Eastern place name the geographical location of which is now obscure.

641-644 *Zebedy, Sudayn Turry ... Castelle Orgoylyus*: These names anticipate the fortifications which Doly, Richard and Multon will successfully besiege in the course of the crusade (cf. notes **4004**, **4094**, **4357**); see vol. 1, 'History versus Fiction', p. 153 ff.

Zebedy: This place has not been identified; see note **4357**. It might refer to Ibelin, a fortification situated between Jaffa and Ascalon, built in 1141 to protect the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem from the attacks from Egypt. It is worth noting, however, that the romancer refers elsewhere to Ibelin, calling it *Gebelyn* (l. 6400). See map 5.

Sudayn Turry: This place has not been identified, but it might be a fusion of the names of the cities of Sidon and Tyre (called Tyros – Τύρος – in Greek); see map 6.

Castelle Orgoylyus: The 'Proud Castle' is fictional and has romance overtones. It appears, for example, in the continuations of *Li Conte del Graal*, in Wolfram von Eschenbach's *Parsifal* and, later, in Malory's *Le Morte Darthur*.

Cite of Appayrynous: This placename has not been identified. It might refer to the Greek port of Piraeus, but it would not be geographically correct, as this city should be in the Middle East.

645 *Saffrane*: The castle called Safita (Chastel Blanc) was built by the Knights Templar in the County of Tripoli during the crusades; as it was placed at the summit of a hill, it provided a commanding view of the surrounding areas. It was one of the most important fortifications for the crusaders (Kennedy 1994, 138-41); see map 6.

The Knights Templar (the Poor Fellow-Soldiers of Christ and of the Temple of Solomon), one of the medieval military orders, were skilled warrior monks. The order, founded in 1129, played an important military role during the crusades. They were recognised by the emblematic white mantles with a red cross, worn over their armour. The order was suppressed in 1312 by Pope Clement V; for a detailed study of the order, see Barber 1994.

646 *Taboreth*: This probably refers to the city of Tiberias, also called Tabarie (Loomis 1916, 457). *Archane* has not been identified. Apart from providing geographical references, however, these two places anticipate the future French humiliation (cf. notes **3886**, **3940**); map 5. See also vol. 1, 'History versus Fiction', p. 153 ff.

721-1240 The episode of the imprisonment of Richard, Multon and Doly before the crusade is, of course, fictional, and so are the 'kyng of Alemayn', Moderd, his son Ardryn (ll. 741, 751, 851, 859), and his daughter Margery (l. 881 ff, 1007ff). Historically, Richard was taken prisoner by Leopold of Austria after the crusade, on his return to England. The romancer has probably invented this episode to provide Richard with his sobriquet, Lionheart, early in the story.

- 739 *at pryme*: Because of the canonical hour of prime (usually at 6:00 am) and the service of prime, held at that hour, the term 'prime' came to signify the first division of the day, from 6:00 to 9:00 am and/or the hour of sunrise.
- 754 *bofete*: The exchange of hand blows, or buffets, is a traditional romance motif; see, for example, the late Middle English romance, *The Turke and Sir Gawain*; cf. notes 271, 272, 1647, 5357. See vol.1. 'Sources', p. 117.
- 763 *Saynt Martyne*: Saint Martin (c. 316-c. 397) was bishop of Tours and his shrine was an important stop for pilgrims on their way to Santiago de Compostela. The Abbey of Saint-Martin at Tours was one of the most prominent and influential establishments in medieval France; Alcuin was one of its abbots. The son of a Roman senior officer, Martin joined a cavalry at the age of fifteen. According to legend, one very cold day, Martin met a half-naked beggar; moved with compassion, he divided his fur coat into two and gave half to the poor man. That night he dreamt of Jesus wearing the half-coat, which confirmed him in his piety. He served in the military for another two years until he determined that his faith prohibited him from fighting; instead, he volunteered to go unarmed to the front of the troops. Martin is the patron saint of soldiers and horses.
- 780 *And waxid his handis agayne þe fire*: To the best of my knowledge, the practice of applying a coat of wax on one's hands before a fight has not been recorded. One can speculate, however, that a coat of wax would help Richard; thus protected, his hand would not feel the impact of the blow, as wax has the effect of blocking sensitivity. See Textual Note 778-80.
- 868 *dede als any stone*: Whiting S759; see note 68.
- 913 *Seynte Semyoun*: Simeon, or Simon, the Zealot appears to have been a cousin of Jesus. He was chosen to be the second Bishop of Jerusalem when his brother, James the Lesser, was martyred. According to the *Legenda Aurea*, Simon evangelized Egypt and then joined Jude in Persia, where both were martyred. Simon's usual attribute is the saw, since his body was said to have been sawed to pieces. He is the patron saint of tanners.
- 954 *Men schall no kyng to þe dede do*: The ban against regicide has to be understood within the concept of the 'divine rights of kings', whereby monarchs were supposed to have divine authority to rule. An attack on a king was perceived as both a direct challenge to the king's divine right and to God's will.
- 996 *hange nor zit to drawe*: From the times of Henry III and throughout the Middle Ages, the punishment for treason was to be hanged, drawn and quartered. The condemned person would be first dragged at a horse's tail, or on a hurdle, to the place of execution (drawn, *OED*). He would then be hanged by the neck for a short time, disembowelled and emasculated. Finally, he would be beheaded and the rest of his body divided in four parts (quartered). This type of punishment was extensively used by Edward I in his campaigns in Wales and

Scotland; for example, William Wallace was hanged, drawn and quartered in 1305. See Neilson 129-31.

- 1024-1025** *agaynes þe lawe of lande ... to wende withowtyn lefe* : Note the use of irony; Richard has killed the king's son but refuses to leave without saying goodbye. On medieval etiquette and discussion of whether the outsider's rejection of hospitality injured the host's reputation, see Kerr, 322-35.
- 1032** *als whitte als mornes mylke*: Whiting M548; see note **68**.
- 1100** *With erles & barouns full prowde in presse*: Cf. l. 3448.
- 1103** *And wett þe hert righte in þe salte*: The romancer uses the verb *weten* (to moisten or dampen sth.), but this verb does not describe his action, as the heart is moist and not the salt. In fact, Richard is seasoning the lion's heart. Cf. note **3160**.
- 1108** *deuyll*: Cf. ll. 370, 498, 2582, 3659, 6613, 6730.
- 1114** *Quere de Lyoun*: Ambroise (l. 2306, trans., 65) is the first to call Richard 'quor de lion' (Lionheart); see note **2202**.
- 1136** *Matyns*: The canonical hour of matins, the first canonical hour (usually comprising matins and lauds), recited at midnight or in the early morning. *Bellys rynges*: See note **221-222**.
- 1261-1330** The romancer here interrupts the chronological sequence of events to give an account of the fall of Jerusalem and the call for the Third Crusade, which have taken place before Richard's parliament; cf. note l. **2693**.
- 1263** *Surry* approximately designates the area of today's Syria, Lebanon, Jordan, Israel and Palestine; see map 6.
- 1270** *Galyle*: The region of Galilee, in the north of the Holy Land. See map 5.
- 1277** *Duke of Melone* refers to Guy of Lusignan (c. 1150-1194). Paris, 362 n. 6, suggests that *Melone* could be a corruption of 'Guion'. Guy was married to Sybilla, sister of the King of Jerusalem, Baldwin IV. After Baldwin had died in 1186, Guy became King-Consort of Jerusalem. However, Guy could only be crowned after defeating his rival, Count Raymond of Tripoli. After the battle of Hattin (1187), Saladin released Guy, who proceeded to lay siege to Acre; see also note **1281**.
Surry londe designates the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem, see map 6.
- 1279** *the sowdane*: Saladin (c. 1138-1193), Sultan of Egypt and Syria. After having conquered Egypt, Syria, and Mesopotamia, he turned his attention to the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem. He defeated the Christian army in the battle of Hattin in 1187, and captured the relic of the true cross; he then captured Jerusalem. He expelled the Christians from the Holy Land, except for the city port of Tyre, which in turn was used as a base for the siege of Acre; see Bahā' al-Din, and

Lyons & Jackson.

Note that, like the contemporary Arab historian Bahā' al-Din, the romancer refers to Saladin as 'the' *sowdan* (sultan), while the title of sultan is applied to other leaders without the definite article; cf. note **3349**.

- 1281** *Erle Reynawde*: Raynald of Chatillion (c. 1125-1189) had taken part in the Second Crusade and stayed in the Holy Land afterwards; by marriage, he became lord of the castle of Kerak and Montreal (map 6). In 1177, he helped King Baldwin IV of Jerusalem defeat Saladin at the battle of Montgisard. In 1181, despite the truce between Baldwin and Saladin, Raynald plundered the caravans that passed by Kerak. War broke out between Saladin and the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem in 1182. Raynald launched ships to Mecca and Medina but, after attacking a number of villages along the coast of the Red Sea, his pirates were captured and beheaded. In 1186 Raynald allied with Baldwin IV's sister Sibylla and her husband Guy of Lusignan against Count Raymond and, consequently, Guy was crowned King of Jerusalem. In 1187, after the Christian's defeat at the battle of Hattin, Guy and Raynald were brought to Saladin's tent and Saladin himself beheaded Raynald. Guy was spared; first, he was sent to Damascus but then was allowed to go free (Gabrieli, 114-125); see also note **1277**.
- 1288** *Erle Rosse*: Raymond III, Count of Tripoli (1140-1187) is also blamed in the chronicles (*IP*, Bk 1 Ch. 5, 31-2; Ambroise, l. 2443 ff, trans., 67-8); see notes **1277**, **1281**.
- 1297** *Markes Feraunt*: Conrad, Marquis of Montferrat (d. 1192), was the ruler and defender of Tyre. *IP* (Bk 1 Ch. 7, 36) at first regards him as 'an extraordinary man of action and hard working in all his endeavours' but later blames him for the famine in the crusader camp (Bk 1 Ch. 66-77, 126-34). Richard of Devizes (*Cronicon*, 47) calls him 'son of a serpent' (*vir leviannigena*); and the contemporary Arab historian Bahā' al-Din (125) holds him responsible for the crusade because of a letter the marquis sent to the Archbishop of Canterbury asking for help, and later reports the secret negotiations between Montferrat and Saladin (see note **3243**).
- 1308** *Kyng Bawdewyne sone*: Guy of Lusignan was, in fact, brother-in-law of Baldwin IV, King of Jerusalem.
- 1310** *Whare he bycome ne in what kythe*: Historically, on his release after the battle of Hattin, Guy of Lusignan proceeds to lay siege to Acre; see notes **1277** and **1281**.
- 1313 & 1343** *holy pope ... highte Vrbane*: According to legend, Pope Urban III (d. 1187) died of grief at news of the Christian defeat at the Battle of Hattin (1187). So he could not have called for the crusade. The romancer may have confused his name with Pope Urban II, who called for the First Crusade in 1098. The call for the Third Crusade was the first act of Urban III's successor, Pope Gregory VIII, in his papal bull *Audita tremendi* (1087). However, Gregory did not live to see the crusade; he died of fever that same year.

- 1319** *The Kyng of Fraunce:* Philip Augustus (1165-1223) was King of France from 1180 until his death. A member of the House of Capet, Philip was one of the most successful medieval French kings in expanding the royal territories and the influence of the monarchy. Philip went on the Third Crusade with Richard. At first, the French and English crusaders travelled together but the armies split at Lyon, as Richard went by sea, and Philip took the overland route through the Alps to Genoa (see map 3). The French and English armies were reunited in Messina, where they wintered together. On 30 March 1191 the French set sail for the Holy Land, and arrived on 20 May. Philip then marched up to Acre, but he abandoned the crusade after the city surrendered on 12 July. Philip decided to return to France to settle an issue of succession in Flanders, a decision that displeased Richard – and the chroniclers (see note **3804**). Philip's decision to return to France may have been encouraged by the realization that with Richard campaigning in the Holy Land, English possessions in northern France (Normandy) would be vulnerable (see Gillingham 1999, 163-6). When Richard returned home after the crusade, war broke out between England and France over possession of English-controlled territories in present-day France.
- 1321** *De Duke of Bloyse:* Theobald, Count of Blois, was the seneschal of France and died only three months after arriving in Acre (*IP*, Bk 1 Ch. 42, 98; *Gesta*, 2, 148).
- De Duke of Burgoyne:* Hugh III, Duke of Burgundy, accompanied Philip Augustus on crusade. After Philip abandoned the crusade, Hugh stayed as commander of the remainder of the French army in the Holy Land, and as representative of the king of France (*IP*, Bk 2 Ch. 6, 148; Bk 3 Ch. 21-23, 224-6).
- 1322** *De Duke of Ostryche:* Leopold V, Duke of Austria, arrived in the Holy Land in the spring of 1191. After the deaths of Frederick Barbarossa and his son, Frederick of Swabia, Leopold took command of the German army; see notes **721, 1425, 6050, 6091**.
- De Duke of Sesoyne:* It is not clear who is referred to; it may be Henry, Duke of Saxony (1129-1195), known as Henry the Lion. Henry, however, did not take part in the crusade because, when Frederick Barbarossa took the cross, he banned Henry from going to the Holy Land.
- 1323** *Emperour of Almayne:* Frederick I, Barbarossa (1122-1190), Holy Roman Emperor took the cross in 1189 and died en route to the Holy Land while crossing the River Saleph in Cilicia, south-eastern Anatolia (*IP* Bk 1 Ch. 24 64-8; Pacaut); for the route followed by the German army, see map 3.
- 1325** *De Erle of Flaundes:* Philip of Alsace, Count of Flanders, accompanied the king of France on crusade (*IP*, Bk 2 Ch. 6, 148) and died at Acre in June 1191 (*IP*, Bk 3 Ch. 6, 207; *Chronica*, 111).
- De Erle of Colayne:* No Earl (or Count) of Cologne took part in the Third Crusade, and this character remains unidentified; the name probably supplies a suitable rhyme-word.

- 1326** *þe Erle of Artays*: This character may refer to Robert of France, Count of Artois, who accompanied his brother Louis IX on the Seventh Crusade and died at the battle of Mansurah in 1250; for other examples of participants in the Seventh Crusade included in *Richard*, see notes **1824**, **2191**. See also vol. 1, ‘Date of Composition’, p. 98 ff.
- þe Erle of Bolayne*: There is no record of this name in the chronicles; however, Loomis 1915, 527, notes that an Earl of Boloyne accompanies Richard in the early fourteenth-century French poem, *Le Pas Saladin*.
- 1331** *In harueste, aftir þe Natyuyte*: The Feast of the Nativity of the Virgin Mary, 8 September. Here the romance resumes the narration of the primary sequence of Richard’s story after the analepsis informing the audience about the events that provoked the Third Crusade.
- 1349** *Jerusalem and the crosse es lorne*: See notes **390** and **1279**.
- 1351** *Cristyn kynges es hangede and drawe*: The reading for *kynges* in **C**, *knyztes*, is more historically accurate as those who were killed in the wake of Hattin were Knights Templar and Hospitaller, while the King of Jerusalem was spared (*IP* Bk 1 Ch. 5, 34; Gabrieli, 123); see notes **1277**, **1310**.
- 1416** *apere Robynett*: The chronicles do not mention a siege machine of this name in connection with the Third Crusade; however, it is mentioned in connection with Edward I’s campaign in Scotland; see vol. 1, ‘Date of Composition’, p. 98 ff.
- 1425** *maister Alane Trenchemere*: This name of appears in neither *IP* nor Ambroise, but it is mentioned in the same context by Robert Mannyng, who states that ‘Trenchemere’ was the name of Richard’s galley (*Chronicle*, 2, l. 4209). An Alano Trenchmer is mentioned by Roger of Howden (*Chronica*, 206 and 235) but in a post-crusade context, when Richard is prisoner of Leopold of Austria.
- 1433** *Catelle, dromounde, or galaye*: The catelle (catal) was a large, principal ship. The dromond (plate 24), originally developed in Byzantium, was a very large ship with rowers and a single sail used both in war and commerce. Large ships used by the Muslim navy (like the one described on l. 2480 ff) resembled the Byzantine dromonds (DeVries, 288-9).
- The galley (plate 25) was propelled by oars and sails; it developed from the Byzantine dromonds and probably relied mainly on sail, but carried a large crew to man its oars. As well as rowing, the crew also defended the ship; for discussion of the use of galleys in medieval naval warfare, see DeVries, 295, 300. The romancer appears to have first-hand knowledge of ships, which is evident in his descriptions (cf. note **60**) and in his care with specifying particular kinds of vessels (cf. notes **2093**, **4896**).
- 1440- 1441** *thurghewte Almanye ... Moderde*: The romancer connects this passage with the previous episode when the King of Almanye imprisoned Richard (see note **721**). Historically, however, Richard met the King of France at Vézelay, and

then set sail eastwards from Marseille; cf. l. 1435.

- 1446** *qwitt hym his mede*: Note the use of irony; speaking of the man who has imprisoned him and tried to get him killed, Richard says he will pay Moderde as he deserves; however, the word he uses is not 'villainy' but 'gift'. Cf. notes **2032, 2719, 3776, 4081, 5163, 5399, 6803**.
- 1450** *The Erchbischof Bawdwyns*: Baldwin of Exeter (c. 1125-1190), Archbishop of Canterbury since 1185, died at the siege of Acre in 1190.
- 1521** *Gumery*: It is not clear which town is referred to; it might be the medieval Gummeresbracht (present-day Gummersbach in North Rhine-Westphalia).
- 1529** *als whitte als milke*: Whiting M545; see note **68**.
- 1557** *Marberett*: (vr. Marburette) This place name has not been identified; it might refer to Marburg, in Hesse, Germany.
- 1573** *Carpentrace* has not been identified. There is a town called Carpentras in the south of France, 23 km northeast of Avignon, situated almost half way between Vézelay and Marseille (Richard's historical route).¹ Although a town in the south of France is an unlikely place for a king of Germany to hide, the possibility cannot be ruled out. Another candidate is the city of Kerpen, situated about 30 km southwest from Cologne. Kerpen castle was the birthplace of Otto von Kerpen (d. 1208), who was the second Grand Master of the Teutonic Knights.
- 1580** *For the gose þat þay had dighte*: The romancer refers to the goose that Richard, Multon and Doly were eating when they were captured by the King of Germany's men (l. 657 ff). Allusions to previous or later episodes suggest that the romancer(s) endeavoured to give the romance coherence and cohesion.
- 1647** *Two riche rynges*: The gift of rich, magical, rings with protective powers is another traditional romance motif (see Bordman, 26-8); see for example, *Beues of Hampton*, l. 1469 ff; *King Horn*, l. 593 ff; and *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight*, l. 1817-20. Cf. notes **271, 272, 754, 5357**.
- 1649** *Ynde*: A broad geographical term for much of southern Asia, often including part of China or islands to the south and southeast of Asia.
- 1665** *maister Robert of Leycestre*: Robert Fitzpernel, Earl of Leicester (d. 1204). He accompanied Richard on the crusade, and was invested with the earldom of Leicester in 1191, while the crusading forces were at Messina.
- 1667** *Robert of Thorname* (or Thornham) (d. 1211) was, according to *IP* (Bk 2, Ch. 27, 174), appointed by Richard to direct and watch over the fleet when they left Messina; see note **2107** below.

¹ I thank Catherine Batt for pointing to Carpentras and its location.

- 1677** *Greffoun* derogatorily refers to Greeks collectively or individually, or to any person of Greek origin; Sicily had been part of the Byzantine empire until the late eleventh century. Ambroise (l. 549, trans., 38), *IP* (Bk 2 Ch. 12, 155), and Richard of Devizes (*Cronicon*, 17) also call the people of Messina Griffons.
- 1687** *a treson thoght þe Kyng of Fraunce*: For Philip's treachery, see *Chronica*, 98.
- 1689-1697** *Kyng Tanker ... of alle Poyle*: Historically, Tancred (1138-94) was King of Sicily (1189-1194), and his father, Roger III, was Duke of Apulia (1118-48). In the romance, Tancred is King of Apulia and his son, Roger, is King of Sicily. According to the chronicles, on arriving in Messina in 1190, Richard made two demands from Tancred (successor of William II to the throne of Sicily). First, Richard demanded that Tancred release his sister Joan, the widowed queen of William, imprisoned by Tancred in 1189, and second, that he restore her dowry and inheritance. In addition, Richard forced Tancred to fulfil the commitments that William had made to the crusade. Roger of Howden recorded the encounter between Richard and Tancred (*Chronica*, 97-8). When the French crusading army joined Richard in Sicily, the foreign military presence caused unrest among the populace of Messina, and they revolted. Richard responded by attacking and capturing the city. Once Messina had been looted and burned, Richard established his base there and stayed the winter. Although the French did not openly fight against the English, they did not condemn those who did (*Cronicon*, 19 ff; Ambroise, ll. 964-65, trans. 44). The romancer distorts the chronicles' sequence of events in order to emphasise the French king's treachery.
- 1720** *Pys*: The readings of **C** *Rys* and **L** *Riis* appear to point to the city of Reggio in Calabria, which is in the south of Italy opposite Messina; see map 3.
- 1726** *Saynte Lenarde*: Saint Leonard was venerated by the crusaders. Nothing certain is known of his history, as his earliest 'Life' was written in the eleventh century, six centuries after he is supposed to have lived. According to legend, Leonard belonged to a noble Frankish family of the time of King Clovis. Numerous miracles are attributed to him, above all the release of prisoners. At the end of the eleventh century, his name had already become renowned among the crusaders captured by the Saracens. He is generally represented holding chains in his hands; see Poncelet.
- 1752** *lettir*: See note **1687** above.
- 1776** *Hospitale*: The Order of the Hospital of St John of Jerusalem, the most important of all the military orders, both for the extent of its area and for its duration. At the time of the crusades, the order owned numerous buildings, several of them in Sicily; see Nicholson 2001.
- 1784** *Ynglys tayllyardis*: According to Richard of Devizes, the people of Messina insulted the followers of Richard by calling them 'Anglos' and 'caudatos' (tailed) (*Cronicon*, 19) and the romance uses the insult in the same context. The insult may have originated in the tail attributed to Satan, or to demons, or

dogs, or the tail with which, according to St Augustine of Canterbury's biographer Goscelin (c. 1100), the inhabitants of Rochester were punished for having mocked the saint (Randall, 34-5; M. Jones, 204).

- 1801-1812** *For with þe Fraunce men & with the Griffoun ... lyes slayne in the townn:* Richard of Devizes (*Cronicon*, 19) says that there was unrest among the people of Messina because of the foreign armies encamped there but, as they had made peace with the French, they sought revenge from Richard. The English were denied all trade and they were slain wherever they were found unarmed.
- 1824** *Sir Willyam Longspey:* No one of that name took part in the Third Crusade; the name most likely refers to William Longuespée II, who died fighting at the battle of Mansurah in the Seventh Crusade (Lloyd; and see vol. 1, 'Date of Composition', p. 98 ff).
- 1827** *þe Erle of Leycestre:* see note **1665**.
þe Erle of Hertheforthe: This reference might point to Henry de Bohun, first Earl of Hereford (1176-1220). Bohun was created Earl of Hereford by King John (1200) but his relations with the king deteriorated from 1212, which resulted in his being one of the twenty-five sureties of the Magna Carta in 1215. He died on pilgrimage to the Holy Land, but never took part in a crusade.
- 1830** *Bowmen, speremen, & alblasterers:* The infantry was composed of archers, men armed with spears, and crossbowmen. Bowmen had a prominent role throughout the Middle Ages, especially the longbow archers. From the twelfth century, however, the crossbow (a mechanical bow attached to a stock; the bow string was held in place ready to be released by a trigger mechanism) proved to be more powerful and accurate than the bow, although it took longer to load (DeVries, 33-44); see plates 14 and 15.
- 1838** *spryngalles:* Springalds were mechanical artillery devices, torsion-powered bow-like engines, with which it was possible to throw large bolts. As in this episode, springalds were often used as defensive weapons; they were set up in towers to defend the gates. They allowed defenders to knock an armour-clad man off his horse at a safe distance; plates 29.1 and 29.2.
- 1840** *dogges with þour taylles:* See note **1784**.
- 1859-1866** *I hafe a castelle ... it sall hat Matte Griffoun:* The siege tower called Mategriffoun (Griffon-killer) is mentioned by *IP* (Bk. 2, Ch. 20), Ambroise (ll. 938-41, trans. 44), Richard of Devizes (*Cronicon*, 25), and Roger of Howden (*Gesta*, 138; *Chronica*, 67); see plates 28.1 and 28.2.
- 1869** *By þe watir ȝe schall þam assaylle:* A common tactic, whereby ships would attack towns or castles from the sea using siege machines, archers and crossbowmen. Sometimes two ships placed side by side formed a platform for the stone-throwers and catapults; see plate 27.
- 1880** *Bifore þe cite appon ane hill:* This line echoes *IP*: '[the Mategriffoun] was

placed on a suitable hill next to the city' (Bk 2, Ch. 20, 167).

- 1885** *mawngonelle*: Mangonels were heavy launch catapults employed primarily to defeat a castle's walls. While mobile versions existed, mangonels were more likely assembled *in situ* within range of their target. Mangonels featured a low, flat trajectory and an extremely high velocity, designed specifically for smashing through thick stone walls at short range; plate 31.
- 1888** *tailed dogges*: See note **1784**.
- 1912** *And keste wilde fire*: Greek fire (also called 'wild fire' in the Middle Ages) was invented in the seventh century by the Byzantines. A liquid that ignited on impact, it had the property of developing intense heat, spreading immediately in all directions, and burning on water. As it was a powerful weapon, its composition was a closely guarded military secret. However, the fact that it gave rise to black smoke, suggests the inclusion of petroleum and resin; it also probably contained potassium nitrate and its base may have been naphtha or crude oil. 'Greek fire has a noxious stench and bluish-grey flames, which can burn up flint and iron. It cannot be extinguished with water, but it can be put out by shaking sand over it'; see *IP*, Bk 1 Ch. 34, 88; Partington, 1-41; Haldon & Byrne; Haldon.
- 1931** *pe Watire Towre*: There is no mention of a Water Tower in the chronicles; it is most likely the romancer's invention.
- 1941-1942** *His banere one pe walle: Monsir Griffoun it [...] pighte*: Conventionally, the victorious army would raise its banners above the walls of a captured town or castle; however, by raising Richard's banner themselves, the people of Messina (the Griffoun; see note **1677**) perform the ultimate gesture of humiliation after defeat.
- 1970** *no manere of tayle*: See note **1784**.
- 1971-2008** *The Kyng of Fraunce ... cryed mercy*: The romancer distorts the historical incident to emphasise the rivalry between Richard and Philip. Richard of Devizes (*Cronicon*, 22-3) explains that Tancred with a large retinue, both secular and clerical, and Philip with French bishops and archbishops met Richard and negotiated the terms of a truce; as in the romance, Richard was magnanimous but war was re-ignited when a Sicilian killed an Englishman.
- 2013-2014** *Margaryte and ... Hewe of Pympotit*: Margarit and Jordan of Pin (or del Pin) were, historically, commanders in the retinue of the King of Sicily. Initially, *IP* says that Margarit was 'a great man of action' who boldly crushed pirates. Later, however, the chronicle blames him and Jordan of Pin for the incidents at Messina: 'There were two crafty and deceitful Lombards who had instigated the city mob's attack on the pilgrims. [...]: Jordan del Pin and Margarit' (*IP*, Bk 1 Ch. 14, 43-4; Bk 2 Ch. 16, 160). Richard of Devizes (*Cronicon*, 22) and Roger of Howden (*Chronica*, 57) mention both Admiral Margarit and Jordan of Pin in the retinue of Tancred (see note **1971**). Ralph of Diceto (*Ymagines*, 86)

- says that Margarit and Jordan of Pin were commanders of Messina who fled in secret, taking their families with them. The romancer makes Margaryte and Pymptot justices of France who insult Richard after Philip's humiliation, most probably to emphasise the rivalry between the English and the French.
- 2032** *Plene ... to the Franche kynge*: The legal term *plene* (appeal) is perhaps being used ironically here, as Pymptoty, in the romance, is a judge of France.
- 2053-2465** The episode of the conquest of Cyprus provides a good example of the romancer's craft. He uses a historiographical basis (*IP*, Bk 2 Ch. 30 ff; Ambroise l. 1194 ff; *Cronicon*, 35 ff; and *Chronica*, 105 ff) but re-arranges, distorts and embellishes it so that his sources serve the romance's internal logic; for other examples see vol. 1, 'History versus Fiction', p. 149 ff.
- 2054** *Towarde Cipirs*: This passage agrees with the historical records; Richard sailed from Sicily to Cyprus, while Philip went to Acre; see maps 2 and 3.
- 2057-2070** *A tempeste rase full sodeynly ... Vnnethes the maryners it helde*: Richard of Devizes (*Cronicon*, 35-6) comments that two ships were driven by the force of the winds and were broken up by the rocks near Limasol while a third ship turned back into the open sea and escaped the danger; *IP* (Bk 2, Ch. 30, 180-01) and Roger of Howden (*Chronica*, 106) also describe the storm and the shipwreck.
- 2073-2088** *For the Griffouns*: Like the chronicles, *Richard* calls the people of Cyprus Griffouns. Richard of Devizes (*Cronicon*, 36) describes them as 'warlike and accustomed to live by plunder'; the incident of the attack on Richard's ships and crew is also recorded in *IP* (Bk 2 Ch. 30, 180-01) and Ambroise (ll. 1401-25, trans. 50-1).
- 2090** *the emperoure*: Isaac Conmenus had been sent by the Emperor of Byzantium to Cyprus as governor in 1085 but soon declared independence. He then made an alliance with Saladin and refused to deliver supplies to the Franks.
- 2093** *nauys*: A two-masted round ship with lateen (i.e. triangular) sails, the *nefs* or *naves* (known as hulks in the north of Europe, plate 26) were used when open-sea voyages were required (DeVries, 295); cf. ll. **2472**, **4895**, **6560**. See also note **1433**.
- 2094** *alle his saylande galys*: See note **1433** .
- 2107-2108** *He calles Steuen & Sir Willyam and Sir Robert of Thorname*: The chronicles say that Richard sends envoys to the emperor – *IP* (Bk 2 Ch. 32, 183), Ambroise (l. 1445, trans., 52), and Roger of Howden (*Chronica*, 106) – but they do not mention their names. The romancer, however, names them. Robert of Thornham was appointed by Richard to direct and watch over the fleet when they left Messina (see note **1667**). Robert took part in the battles in Cyprus and, when the island was pacified, he was made governor of Cyprus; therefore, his appearance on ll. 4986, 6228, and 6543 is the romancer's creation. *Steuen* might refer to Robert's brother, Stephen of Thornham (d. 1213/14), who accompanied Richard on crusade. In April 1192, he visited Jerusalem and, in

the following year, he escorted Queen Berengaria and Joan of Sicily on their journey from Palestine to Rome (*DNB*).

It is not certain to whom *Willyam* refers but it might be William Longuespéc; see note 1824.

- 2113** *Seynte Denys*: The mention of St Denis is significant because this third-century bishop of Paris became the patron saint of France (cf. l. 3274). Nothing is definitely known of the time or place of birth, or of the early life of Denis. He is usually represented with his head in his hands because, according to the legend, after his execution his corpse rose again and carried his head for some distance. After he was executed by the heathen, Denis received an honourable burial and a small shrine was erected over his grave. This was later replaced by a basilica. From the reign of King Dagobert (622-638) to the eighteenth century, the church and the Benedictine monastery attached to it were continually endowed by the French crown. The 'Saint Denis' or 'Montjoie! Saint Denis!' became the war-cry of the French armies in the Middle Ages; and the oriflamme, which in time became the standard of France, was the banner consecrated on his tomb (see, Stiglmayr).
- 2119** *launce*: The lance developed from the weapon used by infantry, the spear (a light wood shaft and a small iron head). The typical cavalry lance was made of strong hard wood with a leaf-shaped metal head, and had a handgrip. From the middle of the twelfth century to the end of the Middle Ages, the lance dominated in mounted shock combat, and during the crusades, it was the principal offensive weapon because the crusaders always attacked first with a mounted charge (DeVries, 9-14); see plate 17.
- 2141-2163** *þe emperour stiewarde*: This incident is very briefly recorded by Roger of Howden (*Chronica*, 110), and by Robert Mannyng (*Chronicle*, 2, l. 4097 ff). However, as discussed in vol. 1, 'Sources', pp. 111-12, the romance may be Robert Mannyng's source.
- 2178** *cesse*: Note the legal terminology; cf. note 2032.
- 2190-2192** *chesse*: Chess was introduced in southern Europe shortly before the beginning of the eleventh century and spread northwards; it reached England after the Norman Conquest. At first, it was associated with gambling but, as chess became popular amongst the nobility and clergy, the Church accepted it (see Riddler). The social value attached to the game, as a pastime for the nobility, is suggested by the rich decoration of some medieval chessboards (Vale, 172). Between the twelfth and the fifteenth century, the game features in numerous texts in Latin and the vernacular. The romance notes that Richard gambles and always wins (l. 2192).
- 2191** *þe Erle of Richmonde*: No Earl of Richmond accompanied Richard on crusade; the most likely candidate on which this character may be based is Pierre Mauclerc, first Earl of Richmond second creation (c. 1190-1250), who was a second cousin of Louis VIII of France and accompanied Louis IX on the Seventh Crusade (1248-54). He was wounded at the Battle of Mansurah (1250) and died shortly afterwards. As discussed in vol. 1, 'Date of Composition' (pp.

98 ff), the romancer includes knights who took part in the Seventh Crusade (e.g. William Longuespée and the Count of Artois) as Richard's companions; see also notes **1326**, **1824**.

- 2202** *as a lyoun*: Richard of Devizes (*Cronicon*, 19-20) describes Richard as a 'fearful lion' who 'roared horribly'; previously he had said that the Griffons called Richard 'the lion' (*Cronicon*, 17); Gerald of Wales (*Opera V*, 195-6) also calls Richard 'a lion and more than a lion'; for other references to Richard as a lion, see Gillingham, 260; cf. ll. 1114 and 3606.
- As a leberde*: As one who is like a leopard in cunning and cleverness (*MED*). As an example of Richard's intelligence and cunning – even though the word 'leopard' is never used – *IP* (Bk 2 Ch. 5, 146) says he has Nestor's tongue and Ulysses's wisdom; and Richard of Devizes (*Cronicon*, 9) observes how astute Richard was when he sold lands and honours to finance the crusade.
- 2207** *The bowemen and the alblastererys* : See note **1830**.
- 2210** *Als thik als falles þe hayle-stone*: Whiting H13; see note **68**.
- 2219** *ane axe*: Richard's axe is mentioned by Robert Mannyng (*Chronicle*, 2, l. 3942) in the same context as in the romance; no other chronicler mentions an axe in connection with Richard. See vol. 1, 'Date of Composition', pp. 101-02, for references to the romance in Robert Mannyng's *Chronicle*; for the use of axes by knights and infantry, see France, 23.
- 2240** *als his awenn catelle*: See *Cronicon*, 38.
- 2259** *The emperour doughter*: Historically, Isaac's daughter was captured by Guy of Lusignan (see note **1277**), who had come from Acre to help Richard in Cyprus; when the emperor learned that his daughter had been captured, he surrendered himself and Cyprus to Richard (*IP*, Bk 2 Ch. 39-40, 193-4; Ambroise, l. 1976 ff, trans., 59-60).
- 2292** *the gilтын ern*: The golden eagle was the emblem of the Roman Empire.
- 2296-2297** *als ferse to fighte / Als euer was fawkon to the flighte*: **C** reads *fresshe to fyzt*, and corresponds to Whiting F25.
- 2321** *And hymselfe was fled awaye*: Historically, the emperor (Isaac) flees twice, first from Limasol to Nicosia and later from Nicosia to Candaira (?Caput Sancti Andrea) through Famagusta (*IP*, Bk 2 Ch. 33-38, 186 ff; Ambroise l. 1552 ff, trans. 53 ff; *Cronicon* 37 ff; *Chronica* 107 ff); map 4.
- 2342** *Fawuelle*: *IP* describes the horse as an 'equo favello peroptimo' (an excellent dun horse); Ambroise calls it Fauvel but, as Nicholson 1997, 191 n.134 observes, *fauvel* is the French name for a dun-coloured horse. Ailes and Barber, 57 n. 143, note that Fauvel was one of the most common names for horses in *chansons de geste*.
Lyarde is not mentioned in the chronicles, but its name means 'dapple-grey

horse' both in OF and ME.

- 2345** *rabet* (vr. *rabyte*, *rabytt*) appears to designate a type of Arab horse: roan or rabicano – from Spanish *rabo* (tail) and *cano* (white hair). The Arab horse, a breed of light horse developed in the Middle East, is known for its beauty, speed, and stamina. Arab horses may have entered medieval Western Europe either during the crusades, or from Spain (Price & Shiers, 175).
- 2355- 2405** *And by that he wiste full wele*: See note **2321**.
- 2361-2362** *homage ... my landes of hym helde*: In the Middle Ages, 'homage' was the ceremony in which a feudal tenant (or vassal) pledge reverence and submission to his feudal lord, receiving in return the investiture (the symbolic title to his new position). The ceremony symbolized the acknowledgement to the lord that the vassal was his man, and that the lands the vassal possessed, in fact, belonged to his lord.
- 2391** *so says the boke*: This reference to 'the book' may point to the chronicles (see note **2321**) or may function as a rhyme-word for *toke*; see vol. 1, 'Sources' p. 108-10.
- 2409** *Bonevent*: The fortified castle of Buffavento was besieged by Guy of Lusignan; historically, the emperor did not take refuge there (*IP* Bk 2 Ch. 39, 193; Ambroise l. 2009, trans. 60); see note **2259** and map 4.
- 2413** The emperor's alienation from his baronage is recorded by *IP*, Bk 2 Ch. 39, 193; and Ambroise, ll. 1956-59, trans. 59.
- 2448** *Pyse*: Historically, the emperor, who had been hiding in Candaira (?Caput Sancti Andrea), finally surrenders in Nicosia. All the manuscripts of *Richard* in which this passage survives, however, offer the same reading: *Pys(e)* (the reading of **W** is *pryse*). See note **1720**.
- 2454-2456** *Both his handis faste hym byhynde*: The capture of Issac is recorded by *IP*, Bk 2 Ch 41, 195; Ambroise, l. 2060 ff, trans., 60; and *Chronica*, 111.
- 2461** *þe Erle of Leycestre*: Historically, Richard made Robert of Thornham governor of Cyprus; see notes **1665**, **1667**, **2107**.
- 2465** *And grete festes*: At this point, the **A** version narrates Richard's marriage with Berengaria of Navarra, which historically took place in Cyprus (*IP* Bk 2 Ch. 35, 189; Ambroise ll. 1735-44, trans., 55-6; *Chronica*, 110); see Textual Notes **2048**, **2052**, **2070** and **2464**.
- 2471-2472** *galays ... nauys*: See notes **1433** and **2093**.
- 2480-2606** *þay sawe a dromounde withowtten mesure ... Hadde noghte þe Cite of Acris bene wonn*: This episode is documented in the chronicles (*IP* Bk 2 Ch. 42, 195-99; Ambroise, ll. 2157-298, trans., 62-3; *Chronica* 111-12; *Cronicon*, 38-9). According to *IP*, Richard sent Peter des Barres to find out who was in

command of the ship; the answer was it belonged to the King of France, although no one on board could speak French. For *dromounde*, see note 1433.

- 2487** *Trenchemere*: See note 1425.
- 2493** *With the Kyng of Fraunce we duelle*: Although the Saracens often disguised their ships as Christian (*IP*, Book 1 Ch. 41, 97; Bahā' al-Din, 123-4), when recording this incident the chronicles state that the ship was immediately recognised as one of Saladin's; see note 2480.
- 2499** *Sayne Thomas of Ynde*: Saint Thomas the Apostle, credited with evangelising India (see Thurston).
- 2526** *Qeure de Lyoun*: See note 1114.
- 2531** *myn axe*: See note 2219.
- 2540** *Owe, lowe, rombylowe*: This may well have been an early example of a sea shanty. Sea shanties served a practical purpose: the rhythm of the song was useful for synchronizing the movements of the sailors as they did repetitive tasks (e.g. rowing). Ritson, 352-3, suggests that phrases similar to this were popular among sailors. Indeed, its alliteration, musicality and rhythm render it suitable for the rowers to chant as they row quickly towards the enemy.
- 2542-2543** *also faste / Als quarelle owte of ablaste*: Whiting Q7; see note 68.
- 2543-2544** *And als wa the dromounde come with þe wynde, / A lange qwartere þam byhynde*: If another meaning of *qwartere* is considered here, these lines may be interpreted differently. 'Quarter' also means 'a side' or 'a direction'; thus, it was used by the ME translator of Vegetius in 1408: '*þe ... est wynde ... hap tweie side wyndes or quarter wyndes*'. If this is the meaning for l. 2544, then it should read: *And als wa the dromounde come with þe wynde, A lange qwartere, þam byhynde* (note the comma after *qwartere*). This interpretation, however, presents a problem: the adjective *lange* (long), which cannot be explained in this context.
- 2548** *Bothe in iryn and in stele*: Note the repeated use of this line, ll. 2788, 5754, which could have been used as a formula, but also shows the extent to which the romancer endeavoured to give cohesion to the narrative.
- 2556-2557** Naval battles often involve throwing stones from the endcastles and/or the topcastle; see plates 22 and 38.5.
- 2568-2569** *Also thikke ... Als hayle aftere thonour dynt*: A variation of 'as thick as hail' (Whiting H13).
- 2572** *He drissed his rygg rechte to the maste*: The romancer here shows either his knowledge of fighting tactics or his common sense; when fighting on board a ship, the safest place to be is with one's back against the mast, where one is protected from an unseen attacker.

- 2575** *And some he hitt appon the bacenett ... some into the girdill-stede ... some vnto the schippes borde*: Note the progression of the blows dealt by Richard: first he hit on helmets, cutting some up to the neck; then, cutting others up to the waist; finally, cutting others open up to the ship's board.²
- bacenett*: See note 401.
- 2582** *the deuyll of helle*: Cf. lines 370, 498, 1108, 3659, 6613, 6730.
- 2591** *furroure Gregis*: Greek fire, see note 1912.
- 2592** *bowes Tourkys*: Turkish bows, which were shorter than the long bow (approx. 1.7 m), were recurved (i.e. having tips that curve away from the archer) composite bows that fired barbed arrows shorter than those fired by long bows (DeVries, 34); see plate 16.
- 2602** *be dromounde*: See notes 1433, 2480.
- 2609** *Surry*: See note 1263.
- 2612-2637** *A full grete cheyne*: Although neither *IP* nor Ambroise mentions a chain in connection with Richard's arrival, a chain did exist at Acre harbour, as Ambroise confirms elsewhere (ll. 3950-54, trans., 86). The romancer says that the chain 'was fastened to two pillars', but the eleventh-century Persian traveller, Naser-e Khosraw, gives a better description of the position of the chain: 'The city of Acre, which they write Akkā, is situated on a rise ... Most of these coastal towns have a minā [harbour] ... Built right against the town, it has walls out into the water and an open space of fifty ells without a wall but with a chain stretched from one wall to the other. When a ship is about to enter the minā, they loosen the chain so that it goes beneath the surface of the water, allowing the ship to pass over; afterwards the chain is raised again lest strangers make untoward attempts on the ships' (Khosraw, 16-17); see map 1 and plate 2. For a miniature depicting Richard axing the chain, see plates 1.1 and 1.2.
- 2641** *pyment*: The earliest known spiced wine in England was known as *pyment* (from Latin *pigmentum*, i.e. spiced drink). It was a white wine with added honey and spices, usually pepper. The earliest recipe is found in the fourteenth-century *Tractatus de Modo*, especially parts 15-18.
- clarre*: By the time of the composition of *Richard*, *clarre* (from Latin *claretus* i.e. 'clear') was one of the best known of *pyments*. It was a very sweet and spiced drink; more quantities of honey were required for its production and the spices added were pepper and ginger; cf. ll. 3501, 4728.
- 2644-2645** *Caste wilde fyre into the sky*: Chronicles do not record that Richard uses Greek fire when he arrives in Acre; however, it is reported that fires were lit in the crusader camp (*IP* Bk 3 Ch. 2, 203; Ambroise l. 2371, trans. 66); for Greek fire,

² I thank Nicola McDonald for pointing to this progression.

see note 1912.

- 2650** *mangonells*: See note 1885.
- 2654-2680** *A milne he hade*: Ambroise does not mention the mill but says that, before Richard's arrival in Acre, 'Germans built the very first windmill ever constructed in Syria. [The Saracens] looked on in astonishment and were most terrified by it' (ll.3225-7, trans., 78). The mill on Richard's ship is mentioned by the *Short Chronicle* (l. 2109) and Robert Mannyng (*Chronicle*, 2, l. 4303); both chronicles say that it frightened the Saracens (note, however, that the romance could have been Robert Mannyng's source; see vol. 1, 'Sources', pp. 111-12).
- Ȝalowe, & rede, and grene, & bloo*: The colourful mill's sails are mentioned in the *Short Chronicle* (l. 2113) and Robert Mannyng (*Chronicle*, 2, ll. 4304-05).
- 2672-2678** *De Sarazenes weren of hym sore afferde*: The Saracens' fear has been recorded by Bahā'al-Din, 150; and Ambroise, ll. 2347, trans., 65.
- 2693-2884** *the Erchbischope of Pys*: Ubaldo Lanfranchi, Archbishop of Pisa took part of the Third Crusade (*IP*, Bk 1 Ch. 31, 82), but there is no record that he had received Richard. This passage – in which the Archbishop gives Richard an account of the hardship in the crusader camp – is functional to the narration, as by means of flashback, it conveys to the audience the events that happened at the siege before Richard's arrival. This exemplifies the variety of literary devices used by the romancer (cf. note 1261). The same device is used by Ambroise (l. 2351 ff, trans., 66 ff) who, after narrating Richard's entrance into Acre harbour, recounts the sequence of events from the fall of Jerusalem to the arrival of Richard. Like the romance, Robert Mannyng (*Chronicle*, 2, l. 4323 ff) tells how the Bishop of Perouse informs Richard of the hardship suffered by the crusader army before his arrival; see vol. 1 'Sources', pp. 111-12, and 'Date of Composition', pp. 101-02.
- 2700** *This segge has lastede þis seuen zere*: Historically, the siege lasted from August 1189 to July 1191. The period of seven years is the romancer's creation to emphasise the crusaders' failure before Richard's arrival. See vol. 1, 'History versus Fiction', p. 149 ff.
- 2705-2708** *a wyde dyke*: The construction of the ditch is recorded in *IP* (Bk 1 Ch. 31, 81-2) and Ambroise (l. 3094 ff, trans., 76).
- 2710** *Saladyn, the sowdane*: See note 1279.
- 2713-2714** *Markys Mawferaunt ... Pat leuys one Mawhoun and Termagaunt*: Although the marquis was a controversial figure during the crusade, he never converted to Islam (see notes 1297, 3255-3256).
- Mawhoun and Termagaunt*: Medieval Christians wrongly believed that Muslims were polytheists and that Mahoun (a corruption of the name of the prophet Mohammed), Termagaunt, and Apolyne (Apollo) were part of the

pantheon of gods; see, for example, *La Chanson de Roland* (ll. 63, 2589, 2696, 2712, etc.), and *Sir Guy of Warwick* (l. 3701).

- 2719** *Graunt hym grace of werldis schame*: Note the ironic use of a common phrase of praise functioning as deprecation; the phrase would be similar to 'God grant him the grace of the world's fame' but the romancer changed 'fame' for 'shame'; cf. notes **1446**, **2032**, **3776**, **4081**, **5163**, **6803**.
- 2741** *Erle Ferrer of Inglande*: William de Ferrers, third Earl of Derby, died at Acre in 1190 (*IP*, Bk 1 Ch. 31, 82; Ambroise l. 3120, trans., 76).
- 2743** *þe Emperour of Almayne*: Frederick I Barbarossa died before reaching the Holy Land; see note **1323**.
- 2744** *Jeryn, þe Erle of alle Lawe Spayne*: This name may refer to James I of Aragón (1208-1276) called 'The Conqueror'. In 1229, James successfully invaded Muslim Majorca and, by 1235, all the Balearic Islands were under Christian rule. By 1245, he had captured the Moorish kingdom of Valencia. He was the most famous Spanish king in the Middle Ages not only for his conquests in Spain but also for going on crusade to the Holy Land in 1269 (Schulman, 242-3; Runciman, 3: 330-1).
- 2749-2756** *Day garte þan take alle þe corpes*: This incident is recorded by chronicles but as happening before the construction of the ditch (*IP* Bk 1 Ch. 31, 81; Ambroise ll. 3087-98, trans., 76).
- 2775** *One a Seynt John daye*: The feast of St John, 24 June. The reading in **C**, *Seynt James daye* (25 July) agrees with *IP* and Ambroise.
- 2776-2820** *þe Sarazenes owte of Acris went*: The romancer does not judge the knights, but *IP* and Ambroise accuse them of being greedy (*IP* Bk 1 Ch. 40, 95; Ambroise, ll. 3452-89, trans., 81).
- 2788** *Bothe in iryn and in stele*: Cf. note **2548**, and l. 5754.
- 2798** *Bawdkyns*: See note **3369**.
- 2823** *The doughety Erle of Champayne*: Henry II, Count of Champagne (1166-1197), Richard's nephew, joined the crusade in 1190. He arrived at the siege of Acre in advance of the kings of France and England (see map 3); *IP* Bk 1 Ch. 43, 99; Ambroise, ll. 3510, trans., 81.
- 2825** *Sir Raundolfe de Glamauylls*: Ranulf de Glanville, chief justiciar of England under Henry II, accompanied Richard on crusade, and died at Acre in 1190.
- 2826** *John the Nele*: Jean de Neles was Governor of Bruges and did not take part in the Third Crusade. He did join the Fourth Crusade (1199-1204), accompanying Baldwin of Flanders.
Miles: Nothing is known about this character; there is no record that Jean de Neles had a brother called Miles.

- 2827-2828** *Bawdewyne ... Ersbischoffe of Cantirbery*: See note **1450**.
- 2831** *Hubert Gawntir of Ynglande*: Hubert Walter (1160-1205), Bishop of Salisbury, accompanied Richard on crusade. He was one of the principals involved in raising Richard's ransom after the king was captured in Germany on his return from the Holy Land. As a reward, Hubert was made Archbishop of Canterbury in 1193.
- 2837** *Michaelmes*: Michaelmas, the Feast of St Michael the Archangel, 29 September.
- 2838-2852** *Pe whethire was waxen full swythe calde*: The inclement weather and the famine in the crusader camp are mentioned by *IP* (Bk 1 Ch. 66, 127) and Ambroise (l. 4197 ff, trans., 90).
- 2853-2876** *A quarter of whete ... For wheat tornys, ne sterlynge*: *IP* gives an account of the inflated prices that the crusaders had to pay for food (*IP* Bk 1 Ch. 66 ff, 127-134).
- 2895-2896** *the Hospitale of Seyne John*: See note **1776**.
- 2898** *Mategriffoun*: Richard of Devizes (*Cronicon*, 43) records the re-assembling of the Mategriffon in Acre; see also note **1859**.
- 2902-2916** *twelue schippes ful of bees*: Although the practice of infesting a besieged town with bees has been recorded (Bradbury, 42), the chronicles of the Third Crusade do not mention that Richard has used that tactic at Acre. The *Short Chronicle* (ll. 2090-2106), which gives practically the same account as the romance, is likely to have been the source for this passage; see vol. 1, 'Sources', p. 150 ff.
- 2904** *mawngonelle*: See note **1885**.
- 2924** *Called ... his mynour*: Ambroise (ll. 4903-4990, trans., 100-101) and *IP* (Bk 3 Ch. 5-7, 205-209) record that Richard was ill when the French king directs an unsuccessful undermining of the city walls. Afterwards, a convalescent Richard, commanding his miners and the rest of his men, has the tower finally brought down.
- 2926** *Maudit Colour* is a corruption for *Maudit Coloun* (*Tur Maudite, Turris Maledicta*), i.e. the Accursed Tower, which was situated on the north-eastern corner of the city walls (*IP*, Bk 3 Ch. 7; Ambroise l. 4745, trans. 98); see map 1 and plate 2.
- 2996** *Sir Rabolyne*: A fictional character; in the romance, he is Saladin's nephew.
- 2998** *With thre Sarazene hedis*: This image is historically impossible, as it is against the tenets of Islam. However, Saracens carrying standards with human images are recorded by Ambroise (l. 3364, trans., 80); the inaccurate tradition

(propagated by *chansons de geste* and romances) by which the Saracens used human images in their standards may then have begun at a very early stage.

The conysable: The term *conysance* (i.e. a device used for the purpose of identification; see l. 2985) would be appropriate here. However, this form rhymes with *fable*. Moreover, *sable* is the heraldic term for 'black', so the line might mean that the three Saracens' heads on the emblem were black. See the Luttrell Psalter illustration of the duel between Richard and Saladin (plate 36.2) in which Saladin's shield displays a black head.

- 3025** *Kyng Richerde laye full seke*: Both *IP* and Ambroise place Richard's illness before his first assault on the city (*IP*, Bk 3 Ch. 4-6, 203-8; Ambroise, l. 4599 ff, trans. 95).
- 3049** *Cristyn or Sarazyne*: Saracen physicians were held in great esteem in the Middle Ages; Bahā' al-Din, 159, reports that, during the siege of Acre, envoys from Richard would go to Saladin's camp to ask for 'fruit and ice' to alleviate the king's illness.
- 3071-3073** *in that contree ... no porke fynde*: As it is against the tenets of Islam to eat pork, it is not surprising that the Christians could not find it.
- 3086-3116** *Take a Sarazyne, zonge and fatt ... And become hool & sounde*: The first episode of anthropophagy probably has its origins in Richard's historical illness, contracted shortly after his arrival in Acre; see note **3025**.
- 3140** *swylk dole I schal hem dele*: To 'dele dole' also means to give alms, so this line might also be interpreted as: 'I shall give them such alms'; cf. with other ironic comments on ll. 1446, 2032, 2719, 4081, 5163, 5399, and 6803.
- 3160** Note that the terms of comparison are inverted. In the text, armour withstood Richard's axe no more than a knife does the wax but, more logically, it should say that armour withstood his axe, no more than wax does a knife. The word order, however, is necessary for the rhyme.
- 3166** *Gage*: This geographical place has not been identified; see Textual Notes for other witnesses' readings.
- 3243-3244** *So þat 3e make Kyng off Surry ... Markes Feraunt*: The Marquis of Montferrat privately negotiated with Saladin in 1191 (Baha' al-Din, 194-99); see note **1297**.
- 3255-3256** *He was Crystene be my fadyr day ... he has renayyd his lay*: There is no record that the marquis ever converted to Islam. Historically, the feud between Richard and the marquis was limited to the election of the King of Jerusalem, when Sybilla's death in 1190 left the throne vacant (see note **1277**); Richard supported Guy of Lusignan, while Philip Augustus supported the marquis. The marquis won the election but he was assassinated before the coronation. Both *IP* and Ambroise, like the romance, show hostility to the marquis; see note **1297**. For the election of the King of Jerusalem and the assassination of the

marquis, see *IP*, Bk 5 Ch. 23-7, 302-8; Ambroise l. 8580 ff, trans., 147 ff.

- 3259** *He is wurs þan an hound*: Note that ‘hound’ is used here as a term of abuse. Cf. note **1784**.
- 3260-3262** *He robbyd sixty þousand pound ... Þat my fadyr sente into þis land*: Historically, Henry II – in penance for his part in the murder of Thomas Becket (see note **40**) – accumulated a great deal of money which, together with that raised by the Templars and Hospitallers, was sent to the Holy Land. The money was used principally in the defence of the city of Tyre, during the siege that Saladin laid in 1187. The defence was led by the Marquis of Montferrat (*IP* Bk 1 Ch. 12, 42). Although the twelfth-century chronicles do not favour the marquis, none of them mention that Henry II’s money had been stolen. For the Knights Templar, see note **645**; for the Hospitallers, see note **1776**.
- 3270** *Wiþ wylde hors he schal be drawe*: See note **996**.
- 3322** *In myn halff I graunte þe foreward*: Richard refers to ‘one half’, as the other half of the decision corresponded to the King of France; for the agreement between Richard, Philip and Saladin at Acre, see *IP*, Bk 3 Ch. 17-18, 218-21; Ambroise l. 5156 ff, trans., 103-4; Gillingham 1999, 155-71.
- 3349** *Amyrallys*: The title of ‘emir’ may refer to a commander, a general, or a prince. The ME *amyrall* derives from the Arabic *amir* and denotes a high title of nobility or office; the term was used throughout the medieval Muslim World.
- Many sawdan*: The title of ‘sultan’ designates the supreme ruler of a medieval Muslim state, but it can also refer to any Muslim ruler or knight. When the romance refers to ‘*the sawdan*’, however, it always denotes Saladin; see note **1279**.
- 3352** *To þe sawdon þey sente in haste*: Baha’ al-Din (160-1) gives an account of the dramatic letters that the defenders of Acre sent to Saladin, and the negotiations for their lives.
- 3369-3374** *bawdekyn ... samyte*: ‘Cloth of gold’, produced by weaving threads of gold in silk or wool, was mainly used by the Church and by monarchs. In the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, Cyprus and Lucca were specially famed for their gilded cloths. From the thirteenth century, there were various names for gold-woven textiles, such as ciclatoun (see note **5084**); baudekin (from Baldak or Baghdad); and samite, so called because the weft threads were only caught and looped at every sixth thread of the warp, lying loosely over the intermediate part. Medieval samite was not always made of gold; the term could refer also to satin silk (see Maskell, 13-20; *Encyclopaedia Britannica* ‘Textiles’; for the place of textiles in romances, see Wright).
- 3373** *rabyte*: See note **2345**.
- 3408-3650** *I schal ze tell what þou schal don ... Till þat he hase made playne werke*: For discussion of the second episode of anthropophagy, see vol. 1, ‘History versus

Fiction', p. 150 ff.

- 3448** *Wiþ dukes & eerles prowde in pres*: Cf. l. 1100.
- 3501** *Pyment, clarre*: see note **2641**.
- 3588** *þe sawdonez sone off Damaske* would refer to Saladin's (the Sultan of Damascus') son, which does not make sense as the ambassador is, in fact, speaking to Saladin; cf. note **5847**.
- 3594** *kynges sone off Nynyue*: For Niniveh and its lack of historical relevance in the Middle Ages, see note **638**.
- 3606** *As a wood lyoun he farde*: Whiting L344; cf. ll. 1114, 2202.
- 3659** *deuyll*: Cf. ll. 370, 498, 1108, 2582, 6613, and 6730.
- 3667** *þaire god Mawhoun*: See note **2714**.
- 3703** *sowdane allthir hegheste*: See note **3349**.
- 3722-3729** *Off Surrye ... and of many ane oper riche emperyre*: Several lists of geographical places occur in the romance; these place names re-create the Middle East for the audience who would recognise them, even though they had not travelled themselves (cf. note **619-51**). Almost the same list is repeated on ll. 5054-7 (with the reading in **C** giving two extra lines which are identical to ll. 3728-9). This suggests that, either the enumeration itself may have been formulaic, or the romancer, playing with his audience's memory, may have reiterated the names as a means of confirming the nations over which Saladin ruled.
- 3724** *Darras*: This place has not been identified; the romancer may have either distorted a real place name or created one.
- 3725** *Sesoyne*: It is not clear to which country this name refers. When *Sesoyne* is previously mentioned (l. 1322), it refers to Saxony. Here, however, it obviously points to a Middle Eastern place.
- 3726** *Bogy*: The identity of this place is unclear; all versions differ in their readings, and the only plausible place name occurs in **E**, *Libie*; see Textual Notes for the other witnesses' readings.
- 3728** *Grete Grees*: The Greek expansion of 800-600 BC led to the founding several colonies in the south of Europe; among them, Syracuse (in Sicily), Neapolis, Sibaris and Tarent (in Southern Italy) were called 'The Great Greece'. The Islamic conquest and rule in Southern Italy and Sicily can be traced to the seventh century; the subsequent Christian reconquest led by the Normans took place at the end of the eleventh century.
- Tire*: The coastal city of Tyre, in present-day Lebanon; see note **641-643**.

- 3731** *Ynde*: See note **1649**.
- Prethir John*: Prester John or Presbyter Johannes was a legendary figure popular in Europe since the twelfth century. He was said to be a Christian king who ruled a vast Christian nation which was imagined to be in the Far East, beyond Persia and Armenia. He was believed to descend from one of the Three Magi, and his extremely wealthy kingdom was supposed to be inhabited by strange creatures. The search for his kingdom was the object of numerous explorations, factual and fictional; see Otto von Freising (7, 334-35), Marco Polo, *Travels* (Bk 1 Ch. 46-50, 59; bk 2 Ch. 38-9), Mandeville (Ch. 30), and Silverberg.
- 3739** *he make tomorowe fyne*: The ransom that Saladin had agreed to pay, apart from the money for the prisoners, was the return of the true cross and the release of the captive Christians (*IP*, Bk 3 Ch. 18, 220). *IP* (Bk 4 Ch. 2, 227) and Ambroise (l. 5386 ff, trans. 106) say that Saladin delayed the payment.
- 3748** *crossse*: On the true cross, see notes **390** and **1279**.
- 3758-3761** *take þe Sarazenes fyfty thowsande ... hedis þam alle withowtten pite*: For the execution of the Saracen prisoners in Acre, see the chronicles (*IP*, Bk 4 Ch. 4, 231; Ambroise, l. 5506 ff, trans., 108; Bahā' al-Din, 164-5). For discussion, see Gillingham 1999, 167-71.
- 3763** *Sir Appolyne*: Apollo was wrongly believed to be a Saracen god; see note **2714**.
- 3768** *Sayntours, tues, tues*: The angelical intervention may pre-empt any potential criticism because Richard was following divine orders; cf. note **6740**, where an angel tells Richard to obtain a truce with Saladin and leave the Holy Land (Paris, 384; Schellekens, 2:118). Moreover, the angel's direct speech in French suggests that the romancer's intention is to distance himself – and Richard – from the massacre; for a study of the inclusion of French words in Middle English texts, see Summerfield, especially 71-3. See Textual Notes for the other witnesses' readings. For the use of French words in the romance, see vol. 1, 'Date of Composition', pp. 96-8.
- 3776-3787** *Merye is in þe tyme off May ... many chaunces þan bytydis*: These lines, with their bucolic description of the beginning of spring, connect *Richard* with romance. The insertion of such elegant and courtly lines immediately after the beheading of fifty thousand Saracens, however, represents another example of the romancer's use of irony; cf. ll. 1446, 2032, 2719, 4081, 5163, 5399, 6803. In addition, these lines may have been intended as a clear division between sections of the narrative, marking simultaneously the end of the siege of Acre and the middle of the romance. Cf. note **6662**.
- 3804-3805** *Giff ... of þi golde & thi purchais ... to erles, barouns, knyghtis*: Richard's advice to Philip and the French king's refusal to follow it anticipate the following episodes in which the French king and his army are portrayed as cowardly and greedy; cf. l. 646, where the names of two cities are proleptic of

the French humiliation. Historically, the King of France abandons the crusade and returns to France after winning Acre, for which the chroniclers criticise him (*IP*, Bk 3 Ch. 21, 223; Ambroise, l. 5245 ff, trans., 104-5) and Richard with the remainder of the crusader army march towards Haifa.

seriauntis of mase: The ceremonial mace is an ornamental staff, usually of metal or wood, carried before a sovereign or other high official by a mace-bearer to represent the official's authority. The earliest ceremonial maces were practical weapons intended to protect the king's person, and were borne by the Sergeant-at-arms. This position was first established in France by Philip Augustus and in England probably by Richard I.

- 3822-3829** *giff þat he skomfite vs in bekyre ... we may betriste þan of a strange ressett*: The romancer once again exhibits his knowledge of military matters; Acre would be a useful refuge were the crusader army attacked on its way to Jerusalem.
- 3834** *Myn oste I wil do parten in three*: The division of Richard's army into three to lay siege to three castles is recorded as having occurred in Cyprus, when Guy of Lusignan helped Richard to take control of the island (*IP*, Bk 2 Ch. 39, 193; Ambroise, l. 1960, trans., 59); see notes **2259**, **2409**. After the fall of Acre, Bahā' al-Din (166, 170) states that the crusader army is divided into three hosts, but all of them march together.
- 3835-4900** These episodes, which feature fictional sieges and battles, are not included in versions **ADEH**.
- 3835** *Kyng Philip, take þou thi menzee*: Philip had already left; see note **3804**.
- 3867-3884** *For Franche men are euer arghe & faynte ... And slake abore of their boste*: For discussion of the depiction of the French, see vol. 1 'History versus Fiction', p. 153 ff.
- Slake abore of their boste*: Although this line is here glossed as 'put an end to all their boasting', note that a different word separation (*slake a bore*) gives a different meaning: 'make a boar retreat in the face of their boasting', which should be interpreted as ironic. *MED* favours this word separation.
- 3886-3887** *And a strange cite he bysett ... Toboret*: Cf. note **646**; for discussion of the fictional siege of Toboret, see vol. 1, 'History versus Fiction', p. 153 ff.
- 3901** *cheff amyraylle*: See note **3349**.
- 3902** *Terryabaute*: A fictional Saracen name; cf. l. 4015.
- 3919** *And Kyng Philip graunted & of þam toke raunson*: Ransom was a very profitable and usual practice in medieval warfare; it usually happened after a battle or siege when the noble prisoners of a defeated army would pay for their lives (France, 10-11, 138). It could also be the payment to buy off a hostile army (*MED*), and this is what the Saracens are doing here.

- 3929** *With flour de lyce gold and azure*: The royal arms of France.
- 3940** *city of Archane*: Cf. notes **646** and **3886**.
- 3956** *Henry of Champayne*: See note **2823**.
- 3957** *Robert of Leycestre*: See note **1665**.
- 3964** *Sir Bertrame*: It is not clear who this character refers to; it could be the same 'stout Lombard' called *Sir Brawndische* of l. 4985 (other manuscripts' readings confirm that *Sir Brawndische* is called Bertram; see Textual Notes). However, if he is a Lombard, he could not be from the 'region of Brindisi' (l. 3963).
- 3965** *his freres*: If, as the context suggests, this refers to 'friars', it is anachronistic in the context of the Third Crusade, as the mendicant orders were not founded until the thirteenth century. But it could also mean *feres*, that is, companions.
- 3966** *the Temple*: See note **645**.
Hospetulers: See note **1776**.
- 3972-3974** *bowes & arowes ... scheldys & sperys*: See plates 14 and 15.
- Staffe-slyngers*: There are very few medieval literary examples of the use of sling weapons (hand-held or staff) and they usually feature in Biblical or ancient stories. Moreover, the very few depictions of slings in medieval manuscripts show either David and Goliath, or Muslim soldiers. Only one illustration in a manuscript of Matthew Paris's *Historia Anglorum* shows European soldiers using staff-slings; it depicts naval soldiers using them in an attack on a coastal fortification (plate 21). De Vries, 33, suggests that this illustration may indicate that slings were used in medieval warfare. In stark contrast to the rare occurrence of slings in medieval literature and art, the repeated mention of staff-slingers in *Richard* becomes significant in confirming the use of this weapon; cf. ll. 4459, 4541, 4571, 5347, 5494.
- 3996** *Sowdane Turry*: See note **641**.
- 3997-3998** *Sir Thomas ... Orgolyus*: See notes **619** and **641**.
- 4000** *cite of Ebedye*: See notes **619** and **641**.
- 4004-4092** *Kyng Richerde ... Sowdane Turry vmbylayde*: The episode narrates the fictional siege of Sudan Turry; see vol. 1, 'History versus Fiction', p. 153 ff, and Hebron, 37-46.
- 4015** *Grawndary*: A fictional Saracen name; cf. note **3902**.
- 4031-4034** For the use of ladders to climb a wall, cf. l. 5349.

- 4075-4076 *Sir Robert Thorne*: See notes 1667, 2107.
Sir Robert Laycestre: See note 1665.
Bertrame: See notes 3964, 4985.
- 4081 *swilke pardone he thaym delte*: Note the romancer's use of irony; cf. notes 1446, 2032, 2719, 3776, 5163, 5399, 6803.
- 4084-4085 *Apolyne ... Mahoun*: See notes 2714, 3763.
- 4094- 4350 *Sir Thomas ... laye ... at Orglyus*: The episode narrates the fictional siege of Castle Orgylous; see vol. 1, 'History versus Fiction', p. 153 ff, and Hebron, 37-46.
- 4173 *mawngonelle*: See note 1885.
- 4193 *Sir Orgalie*: Fictional character; in the romance he is the chief officer of Castle Orgylous. Note the similarity between this name and the name of the castle.
- 4237 *De amyralle*: See note 3349.
- 4263 *wollewarde, one my bare fete*: The renegade declares that he will do penance by wearing woolen clothing next to his skin and going barefoot; cf. *PP* B-text, XVIII:1: 'Wolleward and wete-shoed went I forth after', and *Brut*, 99: 'Heremytes, monkes and prestes, and oþere folc grete plente ... wenten barefote and wolward, forto haue mercy of þo ij kynges'.
- 4293 *pyment ... clarre*: See note 2641.
- 4343 *pilgryme and palmere*: See notes 611, 612.
- 4357-4694 *Ebody ... Sir Fuke Doly it bylaye*: The episode narrates the fictional siege of Ebedy; see vol. 1, 'History versus Fiction', p. 153 ff, and Hebron, 37-46.
- 4366 *chefe amyralle*: See note 3349.
- 4376 *His faamen a newe layke to lerc*: This line has two readings; as glossed (to teach his enemies a new form of attack) – or ironically (to teach them a new game).
- 4426 *grete spryngalle*: See note 1838.
- 4432 *C He bad hem to wipdrawe*; this is a more logical line than the one in **B** because it explains that the men withdrew from the assault before going for wood and timber.
- 4445 *A sorye b[e]uerage was there brewede*: Note how the romancer uses the image of a (sour) drink that is being prepared as an analogy for the battle that is about to happen; cf. note 6803, and l. 59 in Appendix 2.
- 4509 *To Mawhownn firste, & sythen to Jubiter*: See note 2714.

- 4519-4525** *Sir Arkarde ... Sir Cowdraye ... Sir Orphyas ... Sir Materbe ... Sir Gargoile:* Fictional Saracen names which may have been intended as puns. *Cowdraye* is similar to *cowarde* (coward); *Orphyas* brings to mind Orpheus who, in Ovid's *Metamorphoses* Book 10, is torn to pieces by women; and *Gargoile* recalls the grotesque carvings that cover the spouts conveying water from a roof and away from the side of a building.
- 4533** *amyralls:* See note 3349.
- 4541-4571** *staffe-slyngers:* See note 3972.
- 4599** *rabytt:* See note 2345.
- 4603** *Sir John Doly, of Sir Fukes kyn:* It is not known who John Doly may have been.
- 4611** *And ryste the there to domysdaye:* A possible use of irony; cf. ll. 1446, 2032, 2719, 3776, 4081, 5163, 5399, 6803.
- 4619** *babills of stele:* The bill was a staff-weapon which derived from the halberd (a combination of axe and spear) but which added a number of lugs or spikes protruding from the blade on all sides (DeVries, 30), plate 19. The word *babill*, however, might also refer to the *babel*, a scourge with spiked balls on thongs, but this interpretation does not correspond with the context as the *babills* are made of steel.
- mace:* The mace developed from the rudimentary club and, by the twelfth century, had completely replaced it as a battle weapon. Maces were made either entirely of metal or with a metal head atop a wooden shaft; their heads came in a variety of shapes and sizes, but all of them were made of iron or steel. The mace was an efficient crushing weapon when used against armoured opponents (DeVries 25-8).
- 4622** *bacenettis:* See note 401.
- 4625-4626** *Pe fote folkes & symple knaues faughte with axes and with staues:* Staffs were the usual infantry weapons. Axes were rarely used in the twelfth century (although Richard uses an axe in the romance, none of the twelfth-century chronicles records his use of that weapon). From the thirteenth century, however, the short-handled axe was in use among knights, while the long-handled was used by the infantry (France, 23).
- 4627** *pikes:* The pike was a type of very long spear – about 15ft long – with a small iron head, usually used by the infantry (DeVries & Smith, 299; De Vries, 15, 30); plate 18.
- 4649** *rabittes:* See note 2345.
- 4702** *Philipe, þe Kyng of Frawnce:* See note 3804.

- 4708** *oper some blode to lett*: Bloodletting is the withdrawal of often considerable quantities of blood from a patient to cure or prevent illness. It was the most common medical treatment from antiquity up to the nineteenth century.
- 4739-4752** Note how both Thomas of Multon's and Fulk Doly's words duplicate Richard's; the three characters' utterances seem variations of the same theme. The reiteration is probably intended to flatter Multon and Doly, presenting them as duplications of Richard, and the English knights in general as brave and skilled, in contrast to the cowardly French; cf. l. 4759.
- 4748** *And badd þam alle the gude*: Note the use of irony; cf. notes **1446**, **2032**, **2719**, **3776**, **4081**, **5163**, **5399**, **6803**.
- 4750** *Ebidye*: See note **641**.
- 4834** *I ne will neuer syne*: 'Sin' here might refer to 'commit a sexual sin' (*MED*).
- 4845-4846** *Kyng cowarde ... Here hafe þou loste for euer thi praye*: As if the narrator's deprecation of the French (note **3867**) – and the following confirmation of their cowardice by avoiding fighting (note **3919**) – had not been enough, here the romancer makes the Saracens themselves insult the French king.
- 4881** *Of golde þou sall hafe alle thi fille*: After winning the battle for Philip, Richard ironically comments on the winnings that Philip will have, thus illustrating how the French king could have gained much more by capturing the town in the first place.
- 4895** *nauye*: See note **2093**.
- 4896-4897** *cogges*: Cog is the type name for a medieval ship built with flush-laid flat bottom, straight sterns, and clinker-built hulls (i.e. built with a method whereby overlapping edges of planks are fastened together to create a shell of planking); see Hutchinson, 154, 184. Clogs were not propelled by oars; therefore, even during battles at sea, the sail had to be up. See Flatman 81-6, and plate 22.
- galie ... dromoundes*: See note **1433**.
- 4901** *Sayne James tyde*: The feast of St James, 25 July. Historically, the crusader army left Acre in mid-August 1191 (Ambroise, l. 5570, trans. 109). Note that, from this line, the narration (loosely) resumes the historical events after the fall of Acre.
- fowlles begynnes for to chide*: Cf. l. 3776.
- 4903- 4908** *to Cayphas ... by the maryn*: Historically, after the fall of Acre, the crusader army started their march towards Ascalon travelling along the coast, with Saladin's horse-archers attacking them. The first city they reach was Cayphas (Haifa), outside which they encamp (*IP*, Bk 4 Ch. 5-11, 232-9; Ambroise, l.

5714 ff, trans., 111-12, Bahā' al-Din, 166-7).

ryuere þat highte Chalyn: There is no evidence of a river called Chalyn, but *IP* (Bk 4 Ch. 10-11, 239) mentions that the army reached the river Kichon as they approached Cayphas.

- 4919** *Fauelle of Sypris*: See note **2342**.
- 4920** *als swyfte als ... þe swalowe*: Whiting S923; see note **68**.
- 4939-4943** *Thurgh a carte þat was Sir Howbertes Gawntere*: The incident in which a Saracen cuts the right hand of one Everard, who was in the service of Hubert Walter, is recorded by *IP* (Bk 4 Ch. 10, 238) and Ambroise (l. 5769-75, trans., 111); for Hubert Walter, see note **2831**.
- 4955** *þe Langespraye*: See note **1824**.
- 4973-4976** *Saynt George ... with armours whitte ... and a crosse of rede coloure*: The appearance of St George, dressed like a crusader (or a Knight Templar) and leading the Christian armies to victory, dates from the First Crusade, and is narrated – among other sources – in *La Chanson de Antioche*, which has other intertextual connections with *Richard* (cf. notes **163** and **3408**); see Matzke, 152-4; see vol. 1 'Sources', pp. 119-20.
- 4985** *Sir Brawdysche, a stowte Lumbarde*: It is not clear to whom this character refers; see note **3963**.
- 4986** *Robert Thorne*: See notes **1667** and **2107**.
- 4994-4998** *Chaphas*: The chronicles do not record that the crusaders captured Cayphas (Haifa); see note **4903**.
- 5001-5002** *cite of Palatyne*: This reference may point to the city of Caesarea Palestina (a town between Acre and Jaffa) (Jentsch, 186); according to *IP* and Ambroise, the crusader army marched towards Caesarea (*IP*, Bk 4 Ch. 12-14, 240-3; Ambroise, l. 5861 ff, trans., 113-14); see map 5.
- 5005-5006** *theire vetaile þat come by þe watir*: As the crusaders marched along the coast, their supplies were carried by their ships, which also protected the army (Ambroise, l. 6000 ff, trans., 114; Bahā' al-Din, 169; for discussion of this military tactic, see Verbruggen, 232-9; Lyons & Jackson, 334-8).
- 5011-5029** *To bette downn the castells*: As a result of the defeat of the Saracen army at the battle of Arsuf, Saladin orders that a number of fortifications in the region be destroyed to prevent the crusaders from having a safe place from which they could launch an attack on Jerusalem (*IP*, Bk 4 Ch. 23, 261; Ambroise, l. 6826 ff, trans., 124; Bahā' al-Din, 178). In the romance, however, the order of events is inverted; the demolition of the fortifications takes place before the battle of Arsuf. For all fortifications, see maps 5 and 6.

Mirabelle ... the castel off Aukes lande: Although the incident has its origin in history, the list of castles knocked down by Saladin's men is partly historical (Mirabel, Toron, Jaffa, and Saint George) and partly fictional; for a list of the demolished fortifications, see *IP* (Bk 4 Ch. 23, 261), Ambroise (l. 6826 ff, trans., 124-5), and Bahā' al-Din, 177-8.

There is no positive identification of *Calaphyn*; Schellekens (2: 120) suggests it could be the fortification of Calansua (Calansue), which was situated 25 km north of Mirabel.

Sessarye may refer to one of several places called Caesarea, but there is no record of its destruction. As the demolition of fortifications historically took place after the battle of Arsuf, the city was in Christian hands at the time; therefore, Saladin was not in a position to demolish it (l. 5018).

Castelle Pelgryme (Pilgrim Castle or Chastel Pelerin) was not built until 1218 (see Kennedy 1994, 124-7).

Castelle Jasare refers to Lazare, a castle and nunnery close to Jerusalem (Schellekens, 2:166); see Textual Note **5022**.

Saladin did not demolish the walls of Jerusalem, and Bethlehem – a suitable rhyme-word – is not mentioned by the chroniclers.

Maydenes castel may refer to Casal Maen (*IP*, Bk 4 Ch. 23, 261) which was demolished by Saladin.

Aukes lande has not been identified.

- 5040-5260** *Vndyr the forest of Arsour ... Kyng Richerde wanne Arsoure*: The battle of Arsuf (7 September 1191) was an important victory in Richard's campaign; historically, it happened before the demolition of the fortifications (*IP*, Bk 4 Ch. 17-22, 246-61; Ambroise, l. 6122 ff, trans., 116 ff; Bahā' al-Din, 172-77); see map 5.
- 5050** *Seynt Marye euen þe Natyuyte*: The date of the battle was 7 September 1191, the Eve of the Feast of the Nativity of the Virgin Mary (*IP*, Bk 4 Ch. 17, 246).
- 5054-5057** *Off Inde, off Perse, off Babyloyne ... þe lande of Alexandry*: Cf. notes **619-51**, **3722**, **6688**.
- 5084-5085** *Sykelatoun ... sendel*: For ciclatoun, see note **3369**. Cendal was similar to modern taffeta, and was woven in rich and varied colours, scarlet being most popular (Walkup, 94). Ciclatoun, samite and cendal were used in the manufacture of the same kinds of garment.
- 5091** *bowe Turkeys*: See note **2592**.
- 5098** *splentes of steel*: For plates of metal armour, see note **373**. These plates were worn over a full mail hauberk or habergoun, as explained on ll. 5802-3 (for hauberk and habergoun, see note **374**).
- 5099** *Fauel*: See note **2342**.
- 5106**
5118 ff *Jakes de Neys & Jhon de Neles ... Jakes de Neys was a noble knyzt*: Jacques (James) d'Avesnes who is described as a 'wonderful knight' by *IP* (Bk 4 Ch.

20, 258), and as ‘valiant’ and ‘worthy’ by Ambroise (l. 6628, trans., 121) was cut off, surrounded and killed by the Saracens. The account of Jacques’s death in the romance is similar to the chronicles’; *IP* and Ambroise mention that on that day some of Jacques’s ‘relatives’ had also died, without specifying whether they were his sons.

Jhon de Neles: See note **2826**.

5113 *launse*: See note **2119**.

5115 *Mahoun & Appolyn*: See note **2714**.

5132-5133 *Duke off Burgoyne*: See note **1321**.

De Eerl off Boloyn: There is no evidence of the existence of this knight; the name may function as a suitable rhyme-word.

5144-5145 *Templere ... Hospytalere*: Ambroise (ll. 6644-9, trans., 122) and *IP* (Bk 4 Ch. 20, 258) mention that the one who failed to help Jacques d’Avesnes was the Count of Dreux. For the knights Templar and Hospitaller, see notes **645** and **1776**.

5154-5180 *Whenne Kyng Richard wyste þis*: Richard’s reaction to the death of Jacques d’Avesnes and his driving thousands of Saracens towards a cliff (ll. 5205-6) is not recorded in any of the chronicles.

5163 *I vndyrstande it gan hym smerte*: Note the romancer’s use of irony; talking about a spear piercing the Saracen’s heart, he believes that ‘it hurt him’; cf. notes **1446**, **2032**, **2719**, **3776**, **4081**, **5399**, **6803**.

5179-5180 *De Frenssche says he slow3 an hundrid ... whereof is maad þis Ynglyssche sawe*: The different readings of this line (see Textual Notes) appear to point to a French source (which is not Ambroise, as this incident is not recorded by him). If a French source for this incident existed, however, it could not have been the hypothetical AN original from which *Richard* might have been translated, as this incident occurs in an interpolated passage; see vol. 1, ‘Date of Composition’, pp. 96-8.

5189 *Als grewhoundes dose with hares*: Whiting G461.

5225-5241 *Flede fro the Batelle of Arsoure ... Þat þay wiste neuer where þaire gudis to done*: Saladin’s escape from the battlefield is the romancer’s creation. The chronicles, however, report the confusion among the Saracens, and how they escaped from Arsuf, leaving tents and equipment behind (*IP*, Bk 4 Ch. 21, 259; Ambroise, l. 6735 ff, trans., 123).

5236 *Of tygris, of dragouns, of lyouns, & of leoparde*: These animals have strong heraldic overtones. They were extensively used on shields, crests and badges (Oliver, 59-65). Here they are decorating Saladin’s pavilion.

5248-5249 *Of Napills ... Sir Gauthere, Þat was Maister Ospetulere*: Garnier was born in Nablus, in the Holy Land (map 5) and was Master of the Order of the Hospital

between 1190-92. He was with Richard in Messina and took part in the battle of Arsuf (Riley-Smith, 107-8). *IP* (Bk 4 Ch. 20, 258-9) and Ambroise (l. 6689 ff, trans., 122) say that the Templars and the Hospitallers looked for Jacques d'Avesnes's body in the battlefield and buried him in the church of Our Lady in Arsuf. The romancer here uses a synecdoche – Garnier for the Hospitallers.

- 5254-5255** *And ledis Sir Jakes ... into Jerusalem:* The chronicles state that Jacques d'Avesnes was buried in Arsuf (see note **5248**). This passage, however, could be conflating the story of Jacques d'Avesnes and that of Frederick Barbarossa; *IP* (Bk 1 Ch. 24, 66) says that the emperor's son, Frederick of Swabia, boiled his father's body, separated flesh from bones, buried the flesh in Antioch, and carried the bones with the aim of burying them in Jerusalem. This procedure, practised from the Second Crusade onwards, was known as *Mos teutonicus* (German custom); see Brown, 221-70. See also notes **1323** and **2743**.
- 5266** *Wende wille we to þe cite of Nyneue:* The following episodes (until l. 6024) are fictional interpolations. For Niniveh, see note **638**.
- 5270-5271** *Babyloyne ... Macedoyne:* See note **635**.
- 5278** *playnes of Toke:* Neither Toke nor Odok (variant reading in C) correspond to any place mentioned in the chronicles.
- 5287-5297** *the Sarazenes balde ... Sarazenes þat ware so stowte:* The romance is full of praise for the Saracens' bravery (cf. ll. 5375, 5436), as are the chronicles (*IP*, Bk 3 Ch. 15, 216; Ambroise, l. 3410 ff, trans., 80).
- 5338-5350** *With bowes, with abblasters, & oþer gynn ... And many leddirs sett þe walle vntoo:* For the fictional attack on the city of Niniveh, the romancer deploys a wide variety of tactics used in medieval siege warfare.
- Mawngonells:* See note **2650**.
Staffe-slyngers: See note **3972**.
- Tripgettis:* The siege machine called 'trepeget' (also known as trebuchet) had been in use since antiquity in the defence and attack of walled cities or castles, either to knock down fortifications or to hurl projectiles over the walls. The counterweight trebuchet appeared around the end of the twelfth century; it could hurl very heavy stones at high speed. Sometimes, instead of stones, infected corpses were thrown into cities (or from the cities towards the besiegers' camp) in an attempt to spread disease among the enemy (DeVries, 133-8). A famous trebuchet, nicknamed Warwolf, used by Edward I at the siege of Caerlaverock castle, was capable of hurling 200-pound missiles; see plates 30.1, 30.2 and 30.3.
- Many leddirs sett þe walle vntoo:* Cf. ll. 4031-4.
Wylde fire: See note **1912**.
- 5357-5358** *Of batelle bytwene three: Thre of theym and thre of his:* The romance motif of

the triple challenge also appears in *King Horn* (Fellows, 22, l. 810); cf. notes **271, 272, 754, 1647**. See vol. 1, 'Sources', pp. 116-17.

- 5378-5380** *Sir Arcolyn ... Sir Coudrebras ... Sir Galabere*: Fictional Saracen names; cf. ll. 3902, 4015.
- 5399** *Kyng Richerd was his preste*: Note the romancer's use of irony; the reference to 'the priest' points to the administration of the last rites and to the priest being the last person a dying person sees. Cf. notes **1446, 2032, 2719, 3776, 4081, 5163, 6803**.
- 5414** *mace of brasse*: See note **4619**.
- 5423** *Hym lykede þat day werke nothyng wele*: After narrating the gruesome deaths of the first two Saracens, it seems an ironic understatement to say that the third Saracen thought that, 'He was not pleased with the day's work'; cf. notes **1446, 2032, 2719, 3776, 4081, 5163, 5399, 6803**.
- 5452** *And of hym holden that ilke cite*: The inhabitants of Niniveh would hold their land from Richard, the feudal expression denoting that they have become Richard's vassals, having paid homage to him; cf. note **2361**.
- 5464-5937** *Chefe Sowdane of alle Heythynnesse*: See note **1279**; cf. l. 5847. The passage narrating the fictional single combat between Richard and Saladin is enclosed in a larger episode which starts with the also fictional siege of Babylon; for discussion of fictional sieges, see vol. 1, 'History versus Fiction', p. 158 ff.
- 5482** *in buke as I fynde*: Either the fictional siege of Babylon (Cairo) is the romancer's creation, and, consequently, the reference to 'the book' is also fictional, or a source once existed but has not survived; see vol. 1, 'History versus Fiction', p. 160-1.
- 5485** *For Philippe & his men weryn bot ille*: Cf. ll. 3804, 3867, 4739, 4845, 4881, 5504, and 5763.
- 5492** *Gud spryngells*: See note **1838**, but note that in this episode, the springalds are used by the attacker.
- 5520-5521** *arowes ful thikke gane flye / Als powder dose vndir þe sky*: Whiting P344; see note **68**.
- 5538** *For a porcyoun of betyn golde*: Note the interesting choice of adjective – *betyn* – for 'gold', meaning gold leaf, used here to emphasise the low price for which Philip is willing to favour the Saracens. Indeed, the romancer could have chosen the adjectives *fyne* or *brende*, both of which mean 'pure' when qualifying 'gold'.
- 5565-5873** The fictional duel between Richard and Saladin – who never met – is briefly reported by Langtoft, 102, and depicted on the Chertsey Tiles (c. 1280) and in the Luttrell Psalter (1320-40); see plates 36.1 and 36.2. For discussion of the

duel, see vol. 1, 'History versus Fiction', p. 158 ff.

- 5585** *Jubitere*: See note **2714**.
- 5587** *Giff þat þou will ane horse of his*: This part of the episode may have been inspired by a historical event. At the battle of Jaffa, Richard's men were being unhorsed; at that, out of courtesy, Saphadin, Saladin's brother, made Richard a gift of two Arab horses (*IP*, Bk 6 Ch. 22, 364).
- 5595** *Saynt Michaelle*: St Michael, the Archangel, is one of the principal angels; his name was the war cry of the good angels in the battle fought in heaven. Christian tradition gives St Michael the offices of fighting against Satan, and rescuing the souls of the faithful from the power of the enemy. He was the patron of the Church and of chivalric orders (e.g. Templar, Hospitaller) during the Middle Ages (Holweck). The mention of *Saynt Michaelle* at this point is relevant, as Richard is about to receive a demon-horse, about which an angel will warn him.
- 5637-5649** *þat þe sall come ane horse to hande ... it es a fende*: Demon-horses usually appear in medieval texts connected with Lucifer or with hellish punishment. The romancer has changed the negative implication of the demon-horse by supplying the angelical warning, which in turn leads to a humorous conclusion; see vol. 1, 'History versus Fiction' p. 158 ff. For demon-horses, see Owen, 131; McAlindon, 328; and cf. *Le Morte Darthur*, 'The Noble Tale of the Sankgreal' (Caxton XIV).
- 5681** *alle þe fendis myghte gan felle*: Note the assimilation of Christ with a knight who fells demons, as the crusading knights fell Saracens.
- 5698-5701** *tent nowe to my tale ... þat was full trewe, sance faile, And done in dede, withowtten tale*: The self-referential use of the possessive adjective 'my' (*my tale*) seems to indicate that the story's authority does not come from any *auctoritas*. However, the following four phrases ('full trewe', 'sance faile', 'done in dede', 'withowtten tale') over-emphasize the veracity of the story. Although these phrases are frequently used as line fillers, the concentration of four of them in two lines is infrequent enough to regard them as merely a coincidence. As with the references to unknown 'bokes', these phrases may help create a 'truth' whose reference is not found outside the romance; see vol. 1, 'History versus Fiction', pp. 160-1.
- 5746-5747** *Hafe this ilke nyghte to his wage*: Note the subtle use of an idiom of economics to convey military matters, compare *wage* here with l. 5752; cf. also the legal terms used in the romance (ll. 954, 1024).
Ane hede of a Sarazyne: This expression brings to mind the anthropophagy episode; cf. note **3650**.
- 5752** *þay schall speken of my paye*: Compare *paye* here with l. 5746.
- 5754** *Bothe in iryn and in stele*: Cf note **2548**.

- 5761-5763** *Bot in geste, als it es talde, nane of theym was so balde; Pay ne dorste noghte come þe haythyn nere:* Cf. ll. 3804, 3867, 4739, 4845, 4881, 5485.
- 5792** *his peytrelle:* The breastplate, or peytral, protected the horse's chest. In addition, heraldic emblems could be displayed on this piece; see plate 3.
- 5795** *four lebardes:* See note **5808**.
- 5802-5803** *platis þat weren of stele:* See notes **373** and **5098**.
Ane hawberke: See note **374**.
- 5804** *wroghte of Tracy werke:* The reference to Thracian metalwork cannot be found in any chronicles of the Third Crusade.
- 5805** *Hose and gloues of stele:* For hose (plate armour to protect legs) and gauntlets (plate armour to protect hands and lower arms), see plate 3.
- 5808** *thre leberdis departed full wele:* Richard's banner at the time of the crusade was two lions rampant (plate 37.1). In 1198, however, he adopted the three lions (plate 37.2). As French is the language of heraldic terminology, a lion *passant guardant* – one that is walking across while facing the viewer – is always called a *léopard*. The heraldic terms describe the animal's posture, not his species; therefore, 'thre leberdis' describes 'three lions passant guardant' (see Ailes, 71-2; Oliver, 61).
- 5810** *auentayle:* The aventail was the mail attached to the bottom edge of the helmet, to cover neck and shoulders, plate 7.
- 5811-5812** *And one his creste a doffe whytte, in sygnyfycacoune of the Saynt Espyritte:* The expression 'in significacyoun' recalls ll. 281, 339 and especially 391-92, where the same symbolic meaning for a white dove is given; this suggests a conscious intention to render the romance cohesive and coherent. See also plates 6.1. and 6.2.
- 5847** *Chefe Sowdane callede of Damas:* See notes **1279**, **5464**.
- 5849-5850** *als þe boke vs tellis ... the sowdane hange his cropour full of bellys:* This reference to a book could support Loomis's (1915, 513-14) claim that this episode was adapted from another source; however, as noted on note **5482**, it is more likely that the romancer provides fictional – or formulaic – references to books.
- 5868** *paytrelle:* See note **5792**.
- 5871** *His fete towarde the firmament:* The graphic description of the sultan's fall must have been reproduced humorously by the romance performers; cf. note **5936**.

- 5902** *Of Salysberye the Longspey*: See note **1824**.
- 5926-5936** *And bygane to flye onane ... Kyng Richerde myght noghte in for his tree*: As with l. 5871, this incident must have been used to raise audience laughter. Note however, that here it is Richard who provides the laughter.
- 5982** *Mawmettis*: See note **2714**.
- 5996** *Saynt Austyn*: This reference may point to Augustine of Hippo (354-430), author of *Confessions* and *The City of God* among many other works (see Portalié), or to Augustine (d. 604) who was the first Archbishop of Canterbury (see Clifford).
- 6006** *a floreyne to þe cite warde*: The word *floreyne* may be a corruption of *flayn(e)* or *floyne(e)*, variants of *flone* (*MED*), which denotes an arrow used for long-bows; see l. 2209.
- 6008-6017** *And þan for irre wexe seke þe Kyng of Fraunce ... he went to Fraunce in hye ... And seyde he dide grete velanye to wende hame for any maladye*: Historically, Philip Augustus had left the Holy Land immediately after the fall of Acre, for which all the chronicles criticise him; see note **3804**.
- 6014** *Alle-Halowmesse ... All Saints' Day* (the Feast of All Saints), 1 November.
- 6026** *Jaffe*: The city of Jaffa, situated on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, south of Arsuf; see map 5.
From this line, the romance (loosely) resumes the historical itinerary of the crusader army (*IP*, Bk 4 Ch. 25-7, 263-5; Ambroise, l. 6932 ff, trans., 126-7).
- 6041-6130** *Chaloyne*: The city of Ascalon, situated on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea between Jaffa and Darum; see map 5. *IP* and Ambroise report that, after the battle of Arsuf, Richard desired to rebuild the walls of Ascalon, but the French disagreed and their opinion prevailed (see references for note **6026**).
Later, however, Richard persuaded the others and the walls of Ascalon were rebuilt, *IP*, Bk 5 Ch. 6, 288-9. The romancer merged these two events in one episode.
- 6050-6073** *Sawe the Duke of Ostrike ... the duke agayne þe breste he smate*: In the romance, the argument between Richard and Leopold, Duke of Austria, happens when the crusaders are rebuilding the walls of Ascalon. According to Richard of Devizes (*Cronicon*, 46-7), however, the argument had taken place at Acre, when Leopold had placed his banner at the top of the walls with those of Richard and Philip Augustus. *Cronicon* reports that, when Richard saw Leopold's banner, he threw it over the wall.
Duke of Ostrike: For Leopold, Duke of Austria, see note **1321**.
- 6091-6092** *Bot I sall take thi banere and caste it into the ryuere*: The mention of Leopold's banner by the romancer suggests that, either he knew when the argument had historically taken place (note **6050**) and wittingly changed it, or he may have

known of the circumstances of the argument but not when it had taken place.

- 6098-6106** *Mighte he euer his tyme see ... Þat sythen torned alle Ynglande vnto grame:* The romancer refers here to the historical imprisonment of Richard, who was ambushed by Leopold of Austria when the king was on his way back from the Holy Land; see Gillingham 1999, chapter 13.
- 6115-6116** *the Duke of Burgoyne ... þe Erle of Boloyn:* Cf. note **5132**.
- 6134** *Femaly:* This place name has not been identified.
- 6138** *To Albarye, a castelle gent:* This castle has not been identified.
- 6157** *Sayne James daye:* 25 July; note that the same day has been used repeatedly. This may derive from the importance of St James for pilgrims (Santiago de Compostella). Note that crusaders considered themselves pilgrims. Cf. ll 2775, 4901.
- 6158** *castell Daroun:* Castle Darum was situated on the Mediterranean coast south of Gaza; it was one of the few fortifications that Saladin did not demolish after the battle of Arsuf. See note **5011**, and map 5. For Richard's journey to reconnoitre Gaza and Darum, see *IP*, Bk 5 Ch. 19, 298-9. For Richard's attack on – and capture of – the castle, see *IP*, Bk 5 Ch. 39, 316; Ambroise, l. 9127 ff, trans., 155 ff.
- 6184** *by watire:* See note **5005**.
- 6190** *emangonelle:* See note **1885**.
- 6193-6194** *into the dike þam to caste ... playne the dyke þay made:* Cf. note **4357**.
- 6204** *þe Robynett and þe Matgriffoun:* The reiteration of the names of Richard's siege machines gives the romance cohesion; see notes **1416**, **1859** and **2898**.
- 6217** *destere:* Destrer or destrier does not refer to a breed, but to a type, of horse: the finest, strongest warhorse. Destrers were more suitable for jousting, while coursers were preferred for other types of warfare (Oakeshott, 11); cf. note **2345**.
- 6228** *Robert Thorname:* See notes **1667** and **2107**.
- with his fawchoun:* The falchion, a variation of the long sword, was introduced in the late Middle Ages. It was a short, single-edge weapon with a very broad curved blade; it combined the weight and power of an axe with the versatility of a sword. Falchions are found in different forms from around the eleventh century up to the sixteenth century. It is possible that the Islamic scimitars have influenced the falchion's design (DeVries, 25; Al-Sharraf, 167-73); see plate 20.

- 6330** *spryngals*: See note **1838**, but note that, in this episode, the springalds are used by the attacker.
- 6308** *Gaytris*: Refers to the coastal city of Gaza, situated between Darum and Ascalon, map 5. For Richard's journey to reconnoitre Gaza, see IP, Bk 5 Ch. 19, 298-9. The chronicles, however, do not describe the successful attack on the city.
- 6311-6312** *a doughty mane ... full stowtte werryoure & in fighte full qwaynte*: Cf. ll 5287, 5375, 5436, 5488.
- 6371** *ane angelle and na man*: Cf. ll. 370, 498, 1108, 2582, 3659, 6613, and especially 6730.
- 6379** *Poghe þat he leude to Adams elde*: Adam was traditionally thought to have lived nine hundred and thirty years.
- 6387** *Castelle Pilgryme*: Also known as Chastel Pelerin, Pilgrim Castle was a Templar fortification, completed in 1218; see note **645** and map 6.
- 6389** *The castelle was callede Lefruyde*: This may refer to the Castle of the Figs (Chastel des Figues); IP (Bk 5 Ch. 41, 320) and Ambroise (l. 9370 ff, trans., 158) report that when Richard attacked the castle everybody ran away; see map 5.
- 6400** *he went to Gebelyn*: Ibelin of the Hospitallers, which is about eight miles from Hebron, was granted to the Hospitallers in 1136. The chronicles mention Richard's arrival there (IP, Bk 5 Ch. 44, 322; Ambroise, l. 9484 ff, trans., 159-60), but do not mention Baldwin. See map 5.
- 6404** *Sir Bawdewyne was slayne with*: It is not clear which Baldwin is referred to here. If it is the King of Jerusalem (see notes **1277**, **1281**, **1308**), this could be another example of analepsis – albeit erroneous, as Baldwin was not killed in battle, but died of his illness. Schelleckens (2:129) suggests that the name refers to Baldwin of Ibelin, Lord of Ramlah.
- 6410** *Sayne Jame*: See note **6157**.
- 6413** *Richerd Couere de Lyone*: Cf. notes **1114**, **2202**, **2526**.
- 6414** *his brothir John*: News from England about John's intentions to seize the throne are recorded in the chronicles (IP, Bk 5 Ch. 42, 320-1; Ambroise, ll. 9408-35, trans., 159).
- 6415** *alle þe fendys prey, flesche & bone*: This reference brings Cassodoren to mind; cf. l. 60 ff. Note, however, that this reference also appears in the versions of the romance that do not include the episode of Richard's demon-mother.
- 6420** *At the Paske tyde*: Easter time; cf. ll. 6429, 6443.

- 6437** *To Bethanye, a castelle gent*: It is not clear to what place this name refers; Jentsch, 215, suggests that the name is a corruption of Betenoble (or Betenopolis) mentioned by *IP* (Bk 4 Ch. 34, 278-9), map 5. But this place name may also refer to the biblical city of Bethany, famous as the home town of Lazarus and his sisters Martha and Mary. Like Niniveh (note **638**), Bethany may have been easily recognised by a medieval audience as a place in the Holy Land, even though it had no connection with Richard's campaign.
- 6460-6461** *Jaffe*: See note **6026**. Historically, when Saladin hears that Richard is leaving from Acre to England, he attacks Jaffa. The city's garrison then sends a message to Richard, who returns by sea. Historically, Henry of Champagne was not there, neither was he sent; he arrived at Jaffa after the battle (*IP*, Bk 6 Ch. 12-14, 349-54; Ambroise, l. 10758 ff, trans., 175 ff).
- 6475** *Chalyn*: See note **4905**. Both occurrences of *Chalyn* in the romance are part of the same rhyme: *Chalyn/maryn*.
- 6479-6489** *He fledde agayne ... pou vile cowarde*: See note **5485**.
- 6497** *Schowse forthe enkerli my galy*: See note **6460**.
- 6509-6517** *Of Partynope ... ne zitt of Achilles*: This list of (romance) heroes brings to mind the beginning of the romance (cf. note **11-19**), and connects with Ambroise (ll. 4173-96, trans., 89-90) who makes a similar list, albeit in a different context. For a study of similar lists in romances, see Fewster, and Liu. See vol. 1 'History versus Fiction', pp. 137-43.

Partynope ... Ypomedone: Note the romancer's decision to start with two romance heroes.

Kyng Arthoure ... Sir Gawayne ... Sir Launcelott de Lake: See note **11-19**.

Of Beues ... Sir Gy ... Errake: Although Beves of Hampton and Guy of Warwick are arguably two of the most famous romance heroes, it is not clear to whom *Errake* (vrr. *Vrrake*, *Sydrake*, *Cydrak*) may refer. It is possible that the phrase '*Sir Gy ne of Errake*' is a corruption of 'Guy of Warwick'.

Vly (vrr. *Ely*, *Vry*): May refer to Ulysses (Odysseus), King of Ithaca, husband of Penelope and father of Telemachus, hero of the *Odyssey*. Ulysses also features in Virgil's *Aeneid* as the one who creates the 'Trojan horse' stratagem.

Sir Octouyane refers to the first emperor of Rome, Augustus, whose name was Octavius. It may also refer to the romance hero called Octavian.

For *Ectore*, see note **11-19**.

Of Jasone ne zitt of Ercules: Jason, son of the King of Iolcus, Aeson, and husband of Medea was a Greek mythological figure famous as the leader of the Argonauts and their quest for the Golden Fleece. Ovid mentions the Argonauts in his *Metamorphoses* and Chaucer retells the story in the *Legend of Good Women*.

Ercules refers to Hercules, who like Jason and Ulysses, was a hero of Greek mythology. The three heroes are famous for their wisdom.

Eneas ... Achilles: Aeneas, son of Venus, is the hero of Virgil's *Aeneid*. For Achilles, see note **11-19**.

- 6524-6525** *Att Jaffe in this ilke bataylle with his axe and his spere*: For the battle of Jaffa, see *IP*, Bk 6 Ch. 15, 354-5; Ambroise, l. 11079 ff, trans., 179-80. Note, however, that the chronicles say that Richard wielded a sword; for the use of axes, see notes **2219**, **4625**.
- 6540** *Slayne I wote es Sir Robert of Leycestre*: The Earl of Leicester could not have been in the citadel at Jaffa, because he was with Richard in the attack (Ambroise, ll. 11386-7, trans., 182).
- 6544** *Sir Bertrame and Sir Piparde*: Bertram de Verdun is said to have been appointed to guard the Hospital of St John after the capture of Acre (1191). He died at Jaffa in 1192 (*Gesta*, 2, 149-50). Gilbert Pipard accompanied Richard on crusade but died in Brindisi (*Peerage*, 10, 527, quoted by Schellekens, 2: 132).
- 6560** *nauys*: See note **2093**.
- 6610** *Malcan starram naire arbrn lor fermor toir femorn*: Note the romancer's intention to reproduce the Saracen language. It is impossible to ascertain whether these lines, which make no sense in the form they are preserved in the different versions, were originally accurate in Arabic; however, as the translation is provided (ll. 6613-14), they may only have been intended to recreate a sound (note the profusion of letter r), which the audience may have interpreted as the sound of Arabic.
- 6613** *deuyll*: Cf. ll. 370, 498, 1108, 2582, 3659, 6730.
- 6638-6639** *also swythe /Als girse fallys fro the sythe*: Whiting S102; see note **68**.
- 6661-6669** *He comforthed his barouns smarte: Fill þe coppe oneane righte*: This passage, which summarises the story that will be narrated in detail later, might indicate a pause in the performance (cf. note **3776**). To resume the story, the romancer recapitulates by repeating a phrase: '*comforthede his barouns*' (ll. 6661 and 6671); for discussion on romance performance, see Vitz, Ragalado and Lawrence 1-11; Zaerr, 193-200; Busby, 61-71; Coleman, especially 76-147.
- 6673** *messangers fro Saladyne ...* This incident is not recorded in chronicles.
- 6688-6695** *Of Egere and Gregeys ... & also of Barbary*: Cf. this list of geographical names with previous ones (ll. 619-51, 3722-28, 5054-57); see maps 5 and 7.

Egere might refer to the Aegean coast.

Maroyns: If this refers to the Maronites, it is a mistake, as Maronites, who lived and still live mainly in Lebanon, are Christian.

Baschells: It is not possible to identify to which nation this reference points.
Nubyens: Nubians inhabited in part of the present-day Sudan, and in the south of Egypt.

Babyloyne: See note 635.

Ynde the More: One of the regions into which *Ynde* can be divided; it was also called *Ynde Major* or *Gret Ynde*. It is not clear which geographical area it referred to; it might have indicated Northern India. *Ynde the Lesse*, Lesser India, referred to the southern part of the Indian peninsula; for *Ynde*, see note 1649.

Askaloyne: Ascalon does not make sense in this context, as its walls had been rebuilt by Richard and occupied by Christians. Note, however, that when referring to Ascalon, the romancer uses *Chaloyne*.

Orygenes has not been identified.

Capadosy: Cappadocia is a region in modern central Turkey.

Sydones: Sidon is a coastal town in present-day Lebanon.

Barbary: The Barbary Coast (present-day Maghreb) was so called after its Berber inhabitants, some of which were the privateers known as Barbary Corsairs (Ottoman Corsairs or Barbary Pirates). These were Muslim pirates, based in the North of Africa, who operated from the time of the crusades (eleventh century) until the nineteenth century.

- 6723 *polaxe*: A knightly staff weapon, it was a combination of spear and axe. It developed early in the fourteenth century, but only in the late fourteenth and fifteenth centuries was it adopted as the chief weapon for the knight on foot (DeVries, 30-2).
- 6730 *deuyll or ells a saynt*: Cf. ll. 370, 498, 1108, 2582, 3659, 6613, but note that, on this line, a change is introduced, the possibility of his being a saint; cf. l. 6371 when he is said to be an angel.
- 6735 *For by nyghte he thoghte to take Kyng Richerde*: IP (Bk 6 Ch. 19, 359) and Ambroise (ll. 11314-77, trans., 182) record that some Mamluks and Kurds boasted that they would capture Richard.
- 6740 *ane angelle of heuen*: Paris 1897, 384, regards the angelical intervention as the best possible excuse for abandoning the crusade; cf. notes 3768, 5637.
- 6749-6754 *With Saladyn the byhoues to make pese*: The chronicles report the terms of the truce (IP, Bk 6 Ch. 27, 370-1; Ambroise l. 11718 ff; trans., 186-7). *Caluarye* (Calvary or Golgotha) refers to the site, outside the walls of Jerusalem, where the crucifixion of Jesus is believed to have taken place.
- 6771-6939 *His oste he myzte nozte for haste ordeyne ... Wanne into the cite of Jafes*: The final episode describing a fierce battle of Jaffa partly agrees with the chronicles

(*IP*, Bk 6 Ch. 22-4, 361-9); Ambroise, l. 11396 ff, trans., 182 ff).

- 6782-6783** *Als thikke flyes / Als fra the hyves dose the bees*: Whiting B167; see note **68**.
- 6796** *A mirre was there withowtten Jaffe Castelle*: This incident does not feature in the chronicles.
- 6803** *Day dranke of Kyngis Richerdis cope*: Note the ironic way of expressing that they were killed by Richard, which may derive from an older expression: 'drinken dethes drinche' (to drink Death's cup, i.e. to die; *MED*); for the romance use of irony, see notes **1446**, **2032**, **2719**, **3776**, **4081**, **5163**, **5399**. See also note **4445**.
- 6808** *Als it was in the Franche romance yfounde*: The French source alluded to here cannot be Ambroise; see note **6796**.
- 6816** *His eme, Sir Henry of Champayne*: The chronicles say that it was Robert of Leicester who was dismounted (*IP*, Bk 6 Ch. 22, 363; Ambroise, ll. 11489-92, trans., 184).
- 6872** *the Patriarke he taken es*: Heraclius or Eraclius (c. 1128-1190/1) was Archbishop of Caesarea and Latin Patriarch of Jerusalem. After Saladin captured Jerusalem (1187), Heraclius took refuge in Antioch and participated in the siege of Acre, where he died during the winter 1190-1.
- 6873-6874** *Sir John the Nele...* See note **2826**.
Sir Willyam of Arsour & Sir Gerarde: Neither of these names can be identified; they are not mentioned in the chronicles.
- 6875** *Sir Bertrame Braundis, þe gud Lumbarde*: See notes **3964**, **4985**.
- 6884** *For þay slewe Fawelle vndir hym ...* The chronicles do not mention the death of Richard's horse; see note **2342**.
- 6895** *as we wretyn fynde*: This reference to a written source might point to either *IP* or Ambroise (see note **6671**); however, more often than not the romancer uses references to sources formulaically. Cf. notes **5482**, **5849**.
- 6898** *With that come Saladyne sonnes two*: The chronicles do not mention Saladin's sons.
- 6905-6906** *Þat his hede fell euen in two ... now am I sekire*: Note the ironic speech of Richard who, after cutting the Saracen's head in two, says that now he is sure of him; cf. notes **1446**, **2032**, **2719**, **3776**, **4081**, **5163**, **5399**, **6803**.
- 6940** The rhyme *Glorye ... victorye* recalls the opening of the romance, ll. 1-2.
- 6944** *Sir Robert Sabuelle*: Robert de Sabloel was one of Richard's vassals, a commander of Richard's fleet and one of the treasurers of the crusade; he was

one of the knights who took part in the negotiations with Tancred in Sicily. He became Lord of Cyprus (1191-2) and Grand Master of the Templars (1191-3); he is frequently mentioned in the chronicles (*IP*, Bk 2 Ch18, 165; *Chronica*, 36, 42, 45, etc.; Ambroise, l. 882, trans., 43) but he has not been connected with the negotiations with Saladin.

- 6955-6973** *thre zere, thre monethes, & thre dayes ... Withowtten harme or any damage:* The formula – three years, three months and three days – brings to mind terms in other romances. For the terms of the three-year truce agreed with Saladin on 2 September 1192, see note **6749**.
- 6975** *Torned hamwarde into Ynglande:* After the truce with Saladin, the romance ends in five lines (except for the version in **A**, see Textual Notes, and vol. 1 ‘Manuscripts’, p. 29 ff). Ambroise and Richard of Devizes also end after the truce has been agreed but *IP* concludes with Richard’s release after his captivity in Austria.
- 6978-6979** *Sythyn was slayne ... At the Castelle Galyarde:* Richard died from a wound sustained at the siege of Chalus castle, near Limoges, in 1199 (*Chronica*, 82-3; *Polichronicon*, 168). The erroneous location of castle Gaillard is understandable, as Richard designed and built this famous castle in a single year (1197-1198). Like the romance, Walter of Guisborough’s chronicle, which ends in 1346, places Richard’s death at Castle Gaillard. Moreover, Walter states that the truce between Richard and Saladin lasted for three years, three months, and three days. These coincidences may suggest that either both the romancer and the Guisborough chronicle have drawn upon the same source, or that the romance may have influenced the chronicle; see vol. 1 ‘Sources’, pp. 111-12. For a longer version of the end of the romance, see Textual Note.

Textual Notes

The following notes are designed to show how the text was established in case of emendations (the reading of the text appears as the lemma, followed by the readings of other manuscripts according to their *sigla*, with ‘MS’ indicating **B**). They also provide significant variant manuscript readings so that the reader can judge the differences and similarities between the versions; however, there has been no attempt to record every variant.¹ Finally, these notes draw attention to interesting linguistic features in the text and record the scribe’s self-corrections, with ~~æ~~ indicating that the letter/word crossed out is illegible. The sources for these notes are my own transcriptions of **ABCDEH** and, for **L**, *King Richard* in *The Auchinleck Manuscript*, eds David Burnley and Alison Wiggins, National Library of Scotland, July 2003, <http://www.nls.uk/auchinleck/mss/richard.html>.

- 1** Apart from **B** and **C**, the only other witness in which the opening lines have survived is **L**; they are reproduced here *in extenso* because they show noteworthy differences. For example, lines 1-24 are two tail-rhyme stanzas – *aab, aab, ccb, ddb* – instead of rhyming couplets. **L** fol. 326^{ra}:

<i>Lord Ihesu, kyng of glorie,</i>		<i>& of Danys le fiz Oger,</i>	
<i>Swiche auentour & swiche victorie</i>		<i>Of Arthour & of Gaweyn.</i>	
<i>Dou sentest king Richard,</i>		<i>As þis romaunce of Freyns wrouȝt,</i>	
<i>Miri it is to heren his stori</i>		<i>Þat mani lewed no knowe nouȝt</i>	20
<i>& of him to han in memorie</i>	5	<i>In gest as-so we seyn;</i>	
<i>Þat neuer no was couward.</i>		<i>Þis lewed no can Freyns non;</i>	
<i>Bokes men makeþ of Latyn,</i>		<i>Among an hundred vnneþe on,</i>	
<i>Clerkes witen what is þerin</i>		<i>In lede is nouȝt to leyn.</i>	
<i>Boþe Almaundes & Pikard;</i>		<i>Nopheles, wiþ gode chere</i>	25
<i>Romaunce make folk of Fraunce</i>	10	<i>Fele of hem wald yhere</i>	
<i>Of kniȝtes þat were in destaunce</i>		<i>Noble gestes, ich vnderstond,</i>	
<i>Þat dyed þurth dint of sward:</i>		<i>Of douȝti kniȝtes of Ingland.</i>	
<i>Of Rouland & of Oliuer</i>		<i>Þerfore now ichil zou rede</i>	
<i>& of þe oþer dusseper,</i>		<i>Of a king douhti of dede,</i>	30
<i>Of Alisander & Charlmeyn</i>	15	<i>King Richard þe werroun best</i>	
<i>& Ector þe gret werrer</i>		<i>Þat men findeþ in ani gest.</i>	

7 nowe] **C** *newe*

25 The abbreviation of *with* is expanded in conformity with the spelling of the word elsewhere in the MS.

¹ Karl Brunner’s edition gives a complete listing of all variants.

- 35 **L** *A Freyns kni3t, þe douke Miloun* (cf. l. 1277 in this edition); **L** passes from the introduction directly to preparations for the crusade.
- 66 From this line to the end of the column the MS is damaged.
- 67 fane] MS *fff[.]e*; **C** *ropes*.
- 81 MS *And they ansuerde righte sone ~~at~~ with*
- 83 MS *To wyde landes hafe we ~~went~~ ment*
- 86 ewre] MS *owre*
- 115 MS *And when þay hade ~~mere~~ nerehand etyn*
- 133 turn] **C** *tour*
- 146 cornen] **C** *icorn*.
- 165 MS *And tolde the kyng^{alle} þer in resoun*
- 171 Than] MS *That*
- 185 The] MS *Bhe*
- 228-446 Not in **C** due to missing folios; **228-269**, unique to **B**.
- 235 this] MS *þis this*
- 243 nynetene 3ere] **W** *fifteen*. See Explanatory Notes **239-240**.
- 245 gaffe too] **C** *gaue hym to*
- 257 wyfe] **C** *lyfe*
- 269 **D** starts.
- 290-318 **D** fol. 1^r:

*On his scheld a dynt he sette
That top ouer tayl to grounde he zede.
ffor al þe strenthe of his stede,
Bothe hors and man he fel to gronde,
Wel ny he hadde his dedes wonde. 5
Anoder knyth, hardy and goode,
Vpon a stede rede so blode,
He dede hym arme wel þat tyde.*

*And thowte ageyne þe kyng to ryde.
A goode spere on hende he bare, 10
Kyng Richard of hyme was ware.
In to þe felde he thowte to ryde
Ageyne þat knyte wiþ mekyl pride.
Trompis begunne forth to blowe,
And Kyng Richard in a throwe 1:
Met with in the ffeld.*

325 renkes] MS *renk[.]*; end of the word illegible, but it appears to be the standard abbreviation for *-es*.

330 forthe] MS *for thi forthe*

349 ff Note that, in **D**, it is Richard who strikes Multon; **D** fol. 1^v:

<i>He tok his squyere his shaft to bere,</i>	[]	<i>Jeyne into þe same forest,</i>	
<i>Tyl þat he was comyn hyme nere.</i>	[]	<i>Jtyn ony bost or pryde,</i>	
<i>His spere hymeself he tok thanne,</i>	[]	<i>Jt o squyere be his syde.</i>	10
<i>And prekyd his stede, and let hym renne.</i>	[]	<i>Jo his logge he rode ful stoure,</i>	
[] <i>Je kinge hym hytte one þe scheld,</i>	5	[] <i>dede on hym a queynt armoure,</i>	
<i>þat he ffley down in þe ffeld.</i>		<i>that was as qwyth as mylke,</i>	
[] <i>Jhanne kynge Richard rode west,</i>		[] <i>his stede was al swylke.</i>	

384 MS *And in the thride atire ~~hid~~ he dide hym do*

395 ff Note that, in **D**, Richard strikes Doly; **D** fol. 1^v-2^r:

<i>Qwanne he was dyth rychely,</i>		<i>Hit wele brekyn for no nede,</i>	
<i>He tok a schaft, sekyrly,</i>		<i>He sittyth vpon a gude stede,</i>	30
<i>That was a wol stronge tre.</i>		<i>Jhesu, þat dyid for mannys synne,</i>	
<i>Towarde þe place þo went he,</i>		<i>Zeue me grace þat stede to wynne.</i>	
<i>Vpone and ouer, I 3ow plyth,</i>	5	<i>Sire ffouke wyste it no thyng</i>	
<i>To loke for þer were any knythe.</i>		<i>That yt was Richard oure kyng.</i>	*
<i>Thanne was there a knyth hardy,</i>		<i>He wende, he had bene at Salisbery</i>	35
<i>þat was clepyd Ser Fouke Doly,</i>		<i>In the castel to make hyme mery.</i>	
<i>A nobyl man, and a queyent of craftie,</i>		<i>They preked here stedis & togeder set,</i>	
<i>A master for to brekyn a schaft.</i>	10	<i>Wiþ a strok þe kyng hyme mette,</i>	
<i>To the knyth he gan to call,</i>		<i>Amyd þe schelde, wiþowtyn tale,</i>	
<i>And seyde to heme: 'ffrendes all,</i>		<i>That yt clefe one peces smale.</i>	40
<i>Gret scorne yt ys, Gode almyth,</i>		<i>And wiþ þat dynt so faste he thraste,</i>	
<i>That we all schul lete a knyth</i>		<i>That the schaft al tobraste.</i>	
<i>Gete honoure of þis game.</i>	15	<i>Sir ffouke fel done, þe sothe to say.</i>	
<i>Now wyl I, ne Goddes name,</i>		<i>The kyng rode forth in his way,</i>	
<i>Brekyn a schafte wiþ hym to day.</i>		<i>Into the forest þe weye he name,</i>	45
<i>Thow we on faste he gane to []</i>		<i>There wyst no mane qwere he become.</i>	
<i>That ys styffe and wyl not fff []</i>		<i>Sir ffouke Doly wiþ mechil payne,</i>	
<i>And wiþ þat knyth þat knyth þat ys</i>		<i>On hors was he set ageyne.</i>	
<i>so bold,]</i>	20	<i>This was þe ferst tyme, I 3ow plythe,</i>	**
<i>I schal wiþ hyme juste, jwys,</i>		<i>That Kyng Richard asayid his mythe,</i>	50
<i>To loke qwedyr schal have þe []</i>		<i>And of his strengthe he hade game.</i>	
<i>Thereof schulde be grete scornynge.</i>		<i>And went hyme home, in Goddes name,</i>	
<i>And men keme and tolde þe kyng,</i>		<i>Into þe castel be a derne way</i>	
<i>That a knyth had done vs þis</i>		<i>That no man knewe hym of all þat day</i>	
<i>schame]</i>	25	<i>He vnarmyd hym, sekyr þou be.</i>	55
<i>And getyn þe honour of oure game.</i>		<i>Now of þe knytes speke we,</i>	
<i>With a schaft he justid al day,</i>		<i>And of þat justes þat was þat day,</i>	
<i>And ever he beryth yt hol away.</i>		<i>And how þei partyd away.</i>	

* **H** starts.

**A starts.

- 441 ff** A fol. 252^{ra}:
*They hyeden yerne in her way
 And come to hym vpon a day.
 Tho þey come þe kyng was glade,
 And mucche joy wiþ hem he made.
 And seide to hem in mery soune:
 'Ye bene welcome, by Seynt Symoun!'*
- 450** MS *Tellis me þe sothe nowe I 3ow praye*
- 463** swarte] MS *smarte*; C *swart*.
- 470** MS *A course for his leman & lufe*
leman lufe: There are a number of examples of inflectionless genitives in the romance; cf. ll. 1760, 2141, 2253, etc.
- 527** wherever] MS *whereever*
- 574** MS *For æ come þou efte one this manere*
- Between 606-607** ADH narrate the episode inverting the order of events: When Richard summons Multon and Doly, he first tells them they will go to the Holy Land disguised as palmers, and then he asks them about the tournament at Salisbury; A fol. 252^{tb}:
- | | |
|---|--|
| <p><i>Whan her couenant was ymade,
 The kyng spake with hert glade:
 'My leue frendes, with gode entent,
 How ferde ye atte tornament?
 Cam any strong knyght to your play? 5
 'Ye!', they seiden, 'parmafay.
 An adventures knyght ther cam ryde,
 In dyuers atyre, with mucche pride.
 He felde both hors and man,
 Hym ne myght non withstond þan.' 10</i></p> | <p><i>'Ye,' quothe þe kyng, 'my frendes bothe,
 Of that knyght I seye þe sothe:
 Ich was thuder, ygon for certe!'
 Tho were they glad and blithe in herte,
 That he loued her felawred, 15
 ffor he was dowty man of dede,
 And also queynte in many case,
 Therfor they maden gret solas.</i></p> |
|---|--|
- 610** 610. Weren] MS *Are weren*
- 613-614** Unique to B.
- 653 ff** The episode of the capture of Richard and his barons in Almayne presents some differences in the A version; A fol. 252^{va-vb}:
- | | |
|--|--|
| <p><i>And he that in Almayne was kyng,
 Hated Kyng Richard ouer all thing.
 Richard and his felawes twoo,
 Into a towne they weren agoo.
 They toke her inne a Sebelie, 5
 And yede o towne her mete to bye.</i></p> | <p><i>He swor his othe by heuene kyng, 40
 The minstrell that hath do this dede,
 fful well he shall have his mede.
 The kyng comaunded his knyghte þo,
 Blyue to the cite for to go
 'And nyme the palmers al three, 45</i></p> |
|--|--|

They bought a gos to her mete,
 Hem longed sore soche flesch to ete.
 Kyng Richard the fer bette,
 ffouk Doly to the spite him sette, 10
 Thomas of Multon stamped the wose,
 Wel dere they aboughte thulke gos.
 Whenne the gos was rosted well,
 In ther cam a mynstrell,
 And if hit hure wille were, 15
 Of his myrthe for to hure.
 Richard hym answerde and seyde: 'Nay,
 We mote eten and go oure way.'
 'Ye buthe vncurteys, so me thenke,
 Ye ne biddeth this mynstrell
 no drynke.] 20
 Ye were well better by this day!
 Thus by himselfe he gan to say.
 His way he taketh faire and wel,
 Tille he com to þe castell,
 Ther the kyng of Almayne was. 25
 And to the porter he made his pas,
 And seyde: 'Wende in an hyng,
 And sey þus to my lorde the kyng:
 Ther buth ycom vpon his londe
 Thre palmers, Ich vnderstonde, 30
 The strongest men in Cristiante,
 And ic wol telle whiche þey be.
 Kyng Richard that is so grym,
 And ij barons that beþ wiþ hym:
 Sir ffouke Doly of renoune, 35
 And Sir Thomas of Multoune.'
 The porter yede into þe halle.
 And tolde the lorde thes wordes all.
 The kyng was glad of þat tythyng,
 And bryngeth hem all byfore me.'
 fforth ther way they nomen,
 To Richardes ynthey comen,
 And axed: 'Ho is at june here?'
 Kyng Richard answerde with
 mylde chere:] 50
 'We buth here palemers three
 Oute of hethenesse now come we.'
 The knyghtes seyde on hyng:
 'Ye shall speke wiþ oure lorde þe kyng,
 ffor tythyng he wold hure fayne.' 55
 They toke the palmers and went agayne.
 Whenne þe kyng sey King Richarde,
 He seyde: 'This is he, so Deue me garde!
 This is my dedlich foo.
 He shall abigge or that he go!' 60
 The kyng axed the palmers three:
 'In my lond what seche ye?'
 He seyde to them: 'Wiþ felonye
 Ye bene ycome my londe to spye,
 And some tresoure meto done.' 65
 Than seide Kyng Richard swithe sone:
 'We ernn palmers, for sothe to sey,
 And wenden here in Goddes way.'
 The kyng named hym kyng by name,
 And cleped him taylarde, and seid hym
 shame:] 70
 'But as mychell as thou art kyng,
 And thes thy barons, withoute lesyng,
 Ne semeth nought thus to be dight,
 Therfor ich saye þat hit is right,
 Ye shull bene in a prison, 75
 And that is skele and resoun.'

- 668 þam] C hym. With þam, the line means that Richard's words cause their sorrow (i.e. their imprisonment); C gives an ambiguous reading; Richard's words may cause either him (i.e. Richard himself) or him (i.e. the minstrel) sorrow.
- 679-796 Not in C.
- 704 MS *Of Ynglande þai seid Sir forthe forsothe bene wee*
- 707 thou] MS *þou thou*
- 733 At the bottom of fol. 129, a later hand added: *the king commanded them.* See also note for lines 1117-1120.
- 742 ff A fol. 253^{rb}:
He thought to do Kyng Richard shame,

*ffor he was holden, Ic vnderstonde,
The strongest man of þat londe.
To the porter than seide he*

- 751-752** Note the rhyme *anone:nobleman*; *on:an* rhymes are frequent and suggest that both vowels were interchangeable in NME. See vol. 1, p. 91.
- 778-780** The sone schane bothe clere and bryghte] **AD** *And toke wax clere and bryghte*; **W** *Waxe he toke clere and bryght*.
And waxid his handis agayne þe fire] **A** *And waxid his handis agayne þe fire*; **D** *Be þe fere he waxid his honde*; **W** *And wexed his hondes by the fyre*.
- Between 798-799** **A** fol. 253^{va}:
And þus he yaf his buffet, / God yeue his sowle in heuen part.
- 827-828** In **ABDHW** but not in **C**.
- 857-858** Note the rhyme *smate:rade*; rhymes formed with both voiced plosive alveolar consonants appear elsewhere in the text, cf. ll. 1281-2, 3967-8, 4367-8, 6844-5.
- 874** vnwreste] **MS** *vnpreste*; **C** *vnwrest*
- 903** **MS** *The mayden therof hade ~~the~~ grete pite*
- Between 918-919** **C** p. 11^a
Tyl þe seuenth day, sykyrly / He zede and com fol priuily
- 923 ff** This passage is abbreviated in **ADH**; **A** fol. 254^{rb}:
- | | | |
|---|--------------------|--|
| <p><i>Thanne was the kyng sore amayde.
'Alas,' he seide, 'Ich am betrayed,
That traitour hath my sone aslayne,
And my fayre doughter forlayne.'</i></p> <p><i>Smertly the kyng, wipoute faille,
Let of sende all his counseill,
And of hem he axed rede
How he myght do Richard to dede.
He tolde hem all hough he had done.
The barons radde him also sone,
He hadde a lyon ina cage,
A wilde best and a sauage.</i></p> | <p>5</p> <p>10</p> | <p><i>Men seide, were they togeder steke,
On him wolde þis best awreke.
All they seiden hit schulde be so. 15
Thanne was the kynges doughter wo;
Whenne euerych man slepte in the castell,
The mayde wente to the gaylere,
Her bedde she hadde therin ydight,
Bi Richard she lay all the nyghte. 20
And alltogeders she tolde hym tho
How they hadde dampned hym to slo.</i></p> |
|---|--------------------|--|
- 1008** **MS** *þat he solde^{dy} thus thurghe false tresoune*
- 1016** ther] **MS** *the*
- 1028** na] **C** *now*

- Between 1032-1033** In **ADH** Margery also gives Richard an Irish knife; **A** fol. 254^{va}:
And a scharpe Irissh knyf / As thow wolde saf my lyf
- 1087** *MS What ~~hym~~ was beste and to hym sterte*
- 1109-1110** Note the rhyme *slayne:tane*, where a diphthong rhymes with a single vowel; this frequently occurs in the text, cf. ll. 1843-4, 2129-30, 2167-8, 2485-6, 2513-14, 2697-8, 3804-5, 4027-8, 4889-90.
- 1114** Quere de Lyoun] **A** *Quere de Lyon*; **C** *Coer de Lyoun*; **D** *Queor de Lyon*; **H** *Conquer de Lyoune*.
- 1115-1122** In this short passage, the romancer uses historical present to inform the audience about King Moderd's sorrow.
In the margin, next to lines 1117-1120, the same hand as in note **733** has added: *King Richard sones*. Evidently, the anonymous glosser misunderstood the passage, as the narrator is not referring to Richard's son but to Moderd's.
- 1137** *MS There ð twa chaleces in be*
- Between 1158-1159** **C** p. 14^b:
Anf 3iff þer bee moo þen þoo / þe haluyndel schal come me too
- 1175** Although the abbreviation of the the word 'lettir' – *lre* – may suggest that the expanded form should read *lettre*, *lettir* is used in conformity with Thornton's spelling; see l. 1199.
- 1183** *MS And in no manere þat þe ~~ter~~ lre faile*
- 1191** *MS To London he rapede hym ~~onene~~ onone*
- Between 1242-1243** **C** p. 16^b:
þey þankyð God al so blyue / þat þey sey3 here lord on lyue
- 1250** Unique to **B**.
- 1254** *MS Paire childre þaire londis or þaire ~~lyfe~~ wyfe*
- Between 1276-1277** **C** p. 17^a:
ffond he no man hym to myssay, / Ne wiþ euele hondes on hym to lay
- 1281-1282** Note the *-d:-t* rhyme; cf. note **857**.
- 1296** *MS And the erle hym grauntede hym in þat stownde*
- 1304** so says þe cronykyls] **C** *so says our tale*

- 1306 MS *And fled awaye with his wyffe lyffe*; **C** *Wyff*.
- 1343 ff **L** fol. 326^{1b}:
King Richard fenge his dignete
[Bope] þe kynges 3erd & þe croun,
At Winchester, in þe gode toun
- 1345 Final four minims of *bygun* subpunctuated.
- 1351 kynges] **C** *knyztes*; **C** appears more accurate, see Explanatory Notes.
- 1361-1390 Unique to **B**.
- Between 1400-1401 **C** p. 18^b:
Wendes and grauntes þe Pope his bon / As oþere Crystene kynges haue don
- 1406 then] MS *when*
- 1450 MS *The Erchebisech Erchbischof Bawdwyns*
- 1455 ff **A** fol. 255^{va}:
To Marcellly he wente ful right
With barons and many a knyght,
Wiþ schippes, galies, grete and smale,
Ne couthe no man but God that tale
- 1475-1478 Unique to **B**.
- 1492 þat] MS *at*
- 1517-1518 Unique to **B**.
- 1524 day] MS *þe thirde hythyn 3e schall þam sene*; **C** *þe thirde day*.
- 1535-1536 Unique to **B**.
- 1568 MS *And talowe ~~ande~~ and grese amang also*
- 1586 Wannowe fadir, now what] MS *Wannowe, ffadir, what now what*;
C *What now fadyr hou is þat*.
- 1590 gentill] MS *gentill gentill*
- 1591 3ow] MS *Giffe þat wille be mylde of mode*; **C** *3yff 3e wole be mylde off mood*
- 1616 MS *þat it redy*; **C** *Ready is it I off þe took / Redy is al þy tresore*. It is evident that the repetition of *redy* is not Thornton's error; the duplication must have happened earlier in the manuscript transmission, as **C** suggests.

- 1622 &] MS *pan*
- 1654 Thefe] **C** *ffyr*
- 1675 wynd] MS *wynde wynd*
- 1685-1686 Unique to **B**.
- Between **C** p. 24^a:
1704-1705 *Hou Kyng Richard was come fro ferre, / Wiþ gret strengþe on hym to werre*
In **ACH** but not in **BDL**.
- 1705 MS Kyng *Richard* Rogere smote pese with his gloue
- 1720 Pys] **C** *Rys*; **L** *Riis*; see Explanatory Notes.
- 1732 MS *For to slee in heythynesse faste of þe blode* ^{of þe} *panym*
- 1745-2476 Not in **C** due to missing folios.
- 1767 swyne] MS *swyne swynne*
- 1808 MS *Now lufly lorde now takes þoure* ~~frere~~ *gere*
- 1825-1826 Unique to **B**.
- 1835-1836 The rhyme *zatis: therat* seems wrong; the mistake may be in the use of the plural, instead of the singular *zate*; cf. ll. 4303-04, 4393-4, 6628-9.
- 1842 MS *Righte* ^{her} *sall men garre þow habide*
- 1851 MS *At morne he sent* ^{to} *his conselers*
- 1852 MS *And of the see* ^{to} *his maryners*
- 1861 sere] **DHL** *sex*; **W** *syxe*.
- 1864 men] MS *me*
- 1866 Matte Griffoun] **A** *Mau de Griffoun*; **C** *Mate Gryffon*; **D** *Mat de Grifone*; **H** *Mawngre Gryffoune*; **L** *M. Griffoun*
- 1867 Legible part of **E** starts.
- 1929 Here] MS *He*; **DL** *Her*; **W** *Here*.
- Between **D** fol. 11^v:
1944-1945 *Wiþ a swerd oone hond ydrawe Many a Grefone he has yslawe*

- 1956 vigours] MS *viours*
- 2017 Last letters of the line missing through trimming.
- Between
2048-2049** The following passage, in **ADEH**, mentions Richard's historical mother, Eleanor of Aquitaine, and his marriage to Berengaria of Navarre; cf. notes **2052**, **2070**, **2464**, **6034**. See also Explanatory Notes **37-229**.
A fol. 258^{ra}:
*His moder sent hym a faire present.
Elianore brought him Beringer,
The kinges doughter of Nauere.
Kyng Rogeris wife cam wip here than,
Jhoan sche hyghte, a ffayr woman.
Kyng Ric the precyous Beringer he schulde spouse,
And he sayde: 'Nay, not in þat sesouns!'
He nolde her spouse amonge þe Griffouns.
After Ester, yf he hade lyf,
He wolde her spouse to his wyf.
Alianore her leue toke,
And wende home, so seþ þe boke.*
- Between
2052-2053** **A** fol. 258^{ra}:
*Johan and Beringer his wyf
Dude him byfore to arif.
Kyng Ric. come after, so seith þe boke,
All his grete nawes for to loke,
ffor the tempeste, and for the wawes,
and eke for the maistres outlawes
Also in **DH**.*
- 2054 MS *Towarde Cipirs als þat with fynde þe wynde*
- 2064 Launson] **ADH** Lymatoun; **C** Lymosowne.
- Between
2070-2071** **A** fol. 258^{rb}:
Therin was Johan and Beringer, / That folke þan was Kyng Ric. dere
Also in **DH**.
- 2129-2130 Note the diphthong rhyming with a single vowel; cf. note **1109**.
- 2136 MS *Aþ þe hauen to do*
- 2199-2200 Unique to **B**.
- 2225 he tofrappede] MS *he to for frappede*; **A** *he tofrapede*; **W** *tofrapped*
- 2241 come] MS *Bot than the tydynges to the emperour*; **ADH** *tydyng (was) come*; **W** *tydinges came*.
- 2263 bihete] MS *hete*; **A** *byhote*; **D** *beheyt*; **H** *behight*.

- 2273 On fol. 139v the name 'Nettlyton' is written several times along the right margin; cf. fol. 49r where 'John Nettleton his boke' is written on the margin.
- 2307-2308 The rhyme *vs. Jhesu* (cf. ll. 2881-2, 2887-8) suggests that, although the abbreviation is not explicit, the final *-s* in *Jhesu* was understood.
- 2379 MS *And that he come arely to ~~more~~ morowe*
- 2381 MS *And homage to me ~~by zeld by zere to me~~ or bere*
- 2411 MS *And there he fand ~~may~~ many a full grete sire*
- 2413-2414 Inverted in MS.
- 2429 MS *And I the saye ~~wordes~~ with wordes ~~fewe~~ balde*
- 2455 MS *And keste hym into a ~~galaye~~ galy*
- 2458 werne] ?error for *were* (war); the rhyme requires *-erne* and the word *werre* on the next line suggests that Thornton intended to write *werne*; **ADH** *werre*.
- Between
2464-2465 **ADH** include Richard's historical marriage with Berengaria of Navarre: A fol. 260^{va}:
*There Kyng Ric spoused Berenger,
The kynges doughter of Nauuer,
And made ther the richest spousyng
That euer maked any kyng,
And corouned himself emperour,
and her emperice wiþ honoure.
And thus Kyng R. wonne Cipres,
God graunte his soule heuene blys!*
- 2466 *bis Kyng Richerd*] MS *bis Kyng bis Richerd*
- 2485-2486 Note the diphthong rhyming with a single vowel; cf. note 1109.
- Between
2490-2491 C p. 25^a:
*Aleyn quyk, and men jnowe
To þat drowmound begunne to rowe
And askyd wiþ whom þat þey ware
And what þey hadde in chaffare.*
Thornton, or his exemplar, probably failed to copy these lines because of an eyeslip, mistaking the second occurrence of *chafere* four lines below the first.
- 2513-2514 Note the diphthong rhyming with a single vowel; cf. note 1109.

- 2524 MS *þat þay Sarazenes*; **C** *þay were Sarezines*.
- 2530 that] MS *theire*; **ADH** *that*.
- 2531 axe] MS *with myn I schall*; **C** *myn axe*.
- 2533 MS *Than his auxe als tite was* ^{to hym} *broghte* ~~hym~~ ^{þe}
- 2558 MS *þat Kyng Richerd was neuer his dede so* ~~ney~~ ^{nye}
- 2570 wane] **AH** *entred*; **D** *came*; **E** *come*.
- Between
2580-2581 **C** p. 26^b:
For non armour wiþstood hys ax / No more þan a knyff dos þe wax.
- 2593 MS *Hoked* ~~and quarelle~~ *arowes & quarells*
- Between
2605-2706 **C** p. 27^a:
þus Kyng Richard wan þe drowmound / þorwʒ Goddes help & Seynt Edmound.
- Between
2636-2637 **D** fol. 20^a:
He carf þe chayne þat þei myth se, / þat bothyn endys fellyn in þe see.
- Between
2648-2649 **C** p. 27^b:
Taboures & hornes Sarezynes / þe see brente all off ffyr Gregeys.
- A** fol. 261^{vb}:
*The Saracenes were in Acres toune
To þe walles rone wiþ gret randoun
And of þe fare þey hadde wonder;
For wilde fer brent aboue and vnder
And alle Cristen kinges and pages
Erles barons and bondages
To þe see wente afterward
To see the comyng of Kyng Ric,
ffor to see the galies saile
His mynstrallsye and his apparaille,
ffor they ne sey neuer suche a comyng
Into Acres of no Cristen kyng.*
- 2673-2677 Unique to **B**; but ll. 2673, 2674 and 2677 in **W**.
- 2697-2698 Note the diphthong rhyming with a single vowel; cf. note 1109.
- 2722 dedly] MS *dedy*
- 2747 The word 'And' has been written outside the ruling, then crossed out and re-written further on the right.

- 2764 þay] MS *þe þay*
- 2775 Seynt John daye] **C** *Seynt James*; **E** *Seynt Jones*.
- 2783 **AE** *They saye þe Sarazenes weren prowde*; **C** *Seyzen*; **D** *They seydyn*;
L *þai seyze*.
- Between** ll. 979-998 (fol. 131) have been mistankenly copied and then crossed out.
2785-2786 A possible explanation is that Thornton inadvertently started copying
from a quire he had used before.
- 2812 *And comen afftyr ffaste fflyngyng*] missing in **B**, supplied from **C** p. 30^b;
also in **ADL**. Thornton, or his exemplar, must have failed to copy the line.
- 2830 baroun] MS *broun*
- 2831 Ynglande] MS *Ynglange*
- 2881-2882 The rhyme *Jhesu:vs* (cf. ll. 2307-8, 2887-8) suggests that, although the
abbreviation is not explicit, the final *-s* in *Jhesu* was intended.
- 2898 areryde] MS *arereryde*
- Between** **C** p. 32^a:
2916-2917 *And hydde hem in a deep seler / þat non off hem durste come ner*
- 2919 Final word illegible through binding.
- 2935 In] MS *I*
- 2958 seene] MS *men myghte it þe contre*; **A** *se it*; **C** *it sen*; **D** *hem sen*.
- 2981 depaintede] MS *departede*; **AD** *ipeynted*; **C** *depayntyd*; **E** *peynted*.
- 3010 **C** *Suse Seynours has armes tost*; also in **ADE**.
- 3028 **C** *þou3 his pauyloun hadde be on fere*; similar in **ADE**.
- 3070 men] MS *giff þat his solde*; **C** *his men scholde*.
- 3077 slyke] **C** *swyche*; missing in **B** through trimming.
- 3088 **C** *Openyd & hys hyde off fflayn*
- 3106 Three folios, which have been torn out, are missing in **B**; their text will
be supplied from **C**. The same editorial decisions apply to the
transcription from **C**. See vol. 1, pp. 43-5.
- 3126 MS *And hadden ny3 entryd* ^{*in þe*} *comoun*

- 3166 Gage] **A** *Gage*; **D** *Solage*; **W** *Cage*.
- 3190 MS *When Kyng Richard hadde restyd a why^{le}*
- 3276 MS *Pat^{ye} neuere zit dede amis*
- 3292 styrte] **DW** *vnderfonge*
- 3315 Final letters in ‘fable’ not visible through binding.
- 3327 MS *And into presoun toke^{hem} zare*
- 3396 MS *brouzt^e*
- 3409 MS *Stylly goo^{you} to þe presoun*
- 3412 MS *Priuyly lat slee~~hym~~ hem withinne*
- 3429 Final letter in ‘born’ illegible through binding.
- 3436 MS *Anon dede þe kynges^{by} heste*
- 3440 Final letters in ‘welcome’ not visible through binding.
- 3455-3463 First letter of each line illegible through binding.
- 3460 **E** *þey hadden all grame*
- 3469 MS *Off here kynde blood þey we^ere*
- 3559-3560 Final letters illegible through binding.
- 3562 Kyng] MS *Kyn*
- 3575 tables] **E** *Richardes table nyze*; MS damaged.
- 3582 MS *An hed soden off^a Sarezyn*
- 3586 on] MS *non*
- 3629-3633 Note the group of five lines with the same rhyme; cf. ll. 6952-6 and 6147-9.
- Between**
3632-3633 **C** p. 43^b: *Ne eete off flesch baken ne brede*
- 3636 MS damaged; first word illegible. **C** *ze schole gon in saff condyte*; **E** *ze shal go hoome i. s. c.*

- 3660-3681** Unique to **B**.
- 3668** sipptede] An example of metathesis.
- 3677** MS *Why soffre^{pou} pam thus to done vs this schame*
- 3691** *C Geue hym sibpe he wole no golde*
- 3713** MS *And also in were to ~~xx~~ bee bolde & wysse*
- 3715** lyffes] MS *lyffves*
- 3716** Saladyn] MS *Ssaladyn*
- 3726** Bogy] **A** *Auboge graundre*; **C** *Bogye*; **D** *Bossye*; **E** *Libie*; **W** *Voygre*.
- 3732-3733** Unique to **B**.
- 3753** wote] MS *wote wote*
- 3768** Sayntours] **A** *seynours*; **C** *seynyours*; **D** *sargnures*; **E** *seignour*.
tues tues] **A** *tweys tweys*; **C** *tuez tuese*; **D** *tues tues*; **E** *touz touz*.
- 3773 ff** The upper part of fol. 145 has been torn out; as a result, the first eight lines of fol. 145^r and 145^v are either incomplete or missing (cf. notes **3811**, **3851**, **3877**). These lines are supplied from **C** p. 45^b ff. The incomplete lines in **B** fol. 145^{ra} are transcribed below:
And ...
And thus ...
God graunte ...
Mery es ...
When leues ...
And floures spryngen ...
And smalle birdis syngen ...
- Between** **3775-3776** **C** p. 45^b:
Hys douzty dedes whoso wyl lere, / Herkenes now, & ze mowe here.
Also in **ADE**.
- Between** **3793-3794** **C** p. 46^a:
To herawdes, & to dysours,
To taboures, & to trumpours
- 3800-3801** Unique to **B**.
- 3804-3805** Note the diphthong rhyming with a single vowel; cf. note **1109**.
- 3811** The missing lines at the beginning of fol. 145^{rb} are supplied from **C** p. 46^a (cf. notes **3773**, **3851**, **2897**); l. 3818, the only partially legible in **B** reads:

Dat ... this townn to wynn

- 3819** MS *To ride forthe forthe and we begynn*; **C** *To ryde fforþ lat vs begynne*.
- 3851 ff** The missing lines at the beginning of fol. 145^{va} are supplied from **C** p. 46^b (cf. notes **3773**, **3811**, **3897**); l. 3859, the only partially legible in **B**, reads: *Als Kyng Richerd ...*
- 3860-3861** Unique to **B**.
- 3887** Toborett] MS *Roborett*; **C** *Taburette*. Note that on ll. 646, 4760, and 4801, Thornton spells it as *Taborett* (vr. *Taboreth*).
- 3897 ff** The missing lines at the beginning of fol. 145^{vb} are supplied from **C** p. 47^b (cf. notes **3773**, **3811**, **3851**). Only ll. 3901-03 are legible – albeit incomplete – in **B**:
...yralle
...erryabaut
...de or þou gyff vs assaute
- 3905** **C** *Profere hem to knele adoun*
- 3911** **C** *Grauntip þe wiþ herte ffyn*
- 3945** vnryde] **C** *gan ryde*
- 3971-3976** Unique to **B**.
- 3975-3976** Note the rhyme *hundrethe-wondre*, which suggests that the final *-the* in *hundrethe* may have been voiceless.
- 4018** MS *Gaa to w þe walles*
- 4027-4028** Note the diphthong rhyming with a single vowel; cf. note **1109**.
- 4030** MS *And Kyng Richerd sent of¹⁰ his folkes*
- 4031** **C** *On heyze laddres for to gon in*
- 4048** MS *Kyng Richerde ne sall .. neuer saffe .. þam ..*
- 4051** **C** *ffor scorn he gan to lawze schrylle*
- 4055** MS *Sarazenes ther ful strongly kyd þer myghte*; **C** *Þe Sarazynes kydden here myzt*.
- 4069-4070** **C** *Sauely þou schalt in come / In lytyl whyle it schal be nome*.
- 4088** **C** *Al so mekyl as þey wolde haue*.

- 4090 MS *And in the prys toure an heghe þay sett*; **C** *But in a tour on an heyȝ schaffie.*
- 4107 MS *To sla hym and his folke ~~bede~~ to þe dede to lede*
- 4107-4108 Unique to **B**.
- 4117-4118 Unique to **B**.
- 4123 MS *salle suffre^{he} dedis dayes*
- 4124-4127 Unique to **B**.
- 4125 Stryke] MS *Sryke*
- 4140 MS *and lystenys ~~nowe~~ how*
- 4144 MS *Couerde ~~full~~ full close*
- 4159-4166 Unique to **B**.
- 4166 tydandes] MS *tydanes*
- 4169 sayd þe Saraȝyne] MS *sayd þe said þe*; *putafile*] trimmed.
- 4175 MS *Into the slynge a stane grete*; **C** *Into þe toun þou slynge a ston grete*
- 4206 **C** *Stondynge hous wil he non lete*
- 4289 MS *sethe their flesche & ~~reste~~ roste*
- 4299-4300 Unique to **B**.
- 4316 yschewede owte] **C** *wenten out*
- 4320 ȝate] MS *strete*; **C** *ȝatis*; Ynglys] **C** *Cristyn*
- 4323 Ynglys] **C** *Cristene*
- 4332-4333 Unique to **B**.
- 4340 MS *be riche ~~yn~~ ynoghe þerone*
- 4349-4350 Unique to **B**.
- 4361-4362 Unique to **B**.
- 4367-4368 Note the *-d:-t* rhyme; cf. note 857.

- 4372 amountte] MS *a* ~~an~~ *mountte*
- 4374 *C* *but fewe Sarazynes*
- 4385-4386 Unique to **B**.
- 4387-4388 Note the unusual rhyme *threwe:ynoghe*; the most frequent rhyme-word for *ynoghe* is another word ending in *-oghe* (cf. ll. 55-6, 1043-4, 2147-8, 2675-6, 4741-2, 6744-5). Note, however, ll. 4433-4 where *ynoghe* rhymes with *abowte*, which suggests that the final consonant may have been rendered voiceless when reading aloud or performing.
- 4419 *gromme*] *C* *grut*
- 4422 *C* *þe archers al off þis lande*
- 4424 *C* *toun folk ne gaff no tale*
- 4430 MS *..ffuke..* *And when Sir.. was warre of þat ilke case*
- 4433-4434 Note the unusual rhyme *abowte:ynoghe*; cf. note 4387.
- 4438 *þeche*] MS *3ett*; *C* *þach*.
- 4441 *dore*] *C* *þach*
- 4445 *beuerage*] MS *buerage*.
- 4447 MS *Inglys slewe alle that they toke*; *C* *þe Ynglyssche*.
- 4449-4452 Unique to **B**.
- 4469-4479 Unique to **B**.
- 4471 MS *Amanges þe townn folkes þer was gamen*; *C* *Among þe toun ffolk was no game*.
- 4475 MS *es grete* [&] *this fire*
- 4534 *C* *þe soþ to say in sertayn tales*
- 4549 MS *& þe holy* ~~*gaste*~~ *goste*
- 4569-4574 Unique to **B**.
- 4570 MS *Thurghe* ~~*Sir*~~ *sydis and thurgh throte*
- 4615-4616 Unique to **B**.

- 4619-4620 Unique to **B**.
- 4627-4628 Unique to **B**.
- 4635-4636 Unique to **B**.
- 4681-4682 Unique to **B**.
- 4684 *C In euery lane & in euery strete*
- 4686 werde] MS *By nyghte & day were for to make*; **C** *warde to make*.
- 4707-4710 Unique to **B**.
- 4716 MS *Pay þat þay broghte*
- 4725-4726 Note the rhyme *fische-Ynglis*, which suggests a change in pronunciation from the alveolar (s) to the post alveolar (sh) fricative.
- 4733-4734 Unique to **B**.
- 4747 MS *oste Myn. þay slewe alle there als þay forthe zede*
- 4766-4769 Unique to **B**.
- 4774 *C Cursyd be he þat þy werk alowe*
- 4792 zitt] Probably an error for *zede*; however, *zitt* is more appropriate to rhyme with *wiete*.
- 4836 Thornton self-corrects by superimposing *ff* (of *ffuke*) on an illegible letter.
- 4847 MS *Pou gaffe lyfe for oure tresoure*; **C** *Pou gaff vs lyff for tresore*
- 4868 *C Certes Phelyp þou art nouzt wys.*
- 4883 *C He glouryd & gan to syke*
- 4889-4890 Note the diphthong rhyming with a single vowel; cf. note 1109.
- 4900 MS *At no ~~ne~~ thyng to þe oste solde faile*
- 4906 MS *By a faire ~~re~~ ryuere þat highte Chalyn*
- 4921-4922 In **BDE** but not in **ACW**.
- 4927 *þe Cristyn*] **AD** *Kyng Richard*.

- Between** A fol. 266th:
4934-4935 *And gan to crie with voys of mounde:
'Sleith dounrightes thes hethyne hounde!
Thus he gan to his men calle,
Abouten hym they comen alle.*
- 4935-4936** In **BDE** but not in **ACW**.
- 4941-4942** In **ABDEW** but not in **C**.
- 4951-4952** In **BDE** but not in **ACW**.
- 4958** swerde] **CDE** *fawchoun*; **W** *swerde*.
- 4964** MS *·pay·* Pat. *·felle down dede one the sandys*
- 4972** wretyn] unique to **B**.
- 4977** MS *And alle þat he smate þan in that stownnde*
- 4985** Sir Brawndische] **A** *Bertram Braundirs*; **C** *Bertram Braundys*; **D** *Sir Brandyse*; **E** *Sir Braundys*.
- 4995-4996** Inverted in **C**.
- 4999** MS *Sone at ~~xxx~~ mornne þan lete he crye*
- 5001** Palatyne] **AE** *Palastyn*; **C** *Palestyn*.
- 5002** MS *And aye one ~~futh~~ forthe by þe maryn*
- 5005** vetaile] MS *vetalle*; the emendation is based on the usual spelling of the word throughout the text – *vetayle* (vr. *Vitaile*, *vytaile*, *vytayle*) cf ll. 1320, 1642, 1659, 2590, 2805, 3534 – which renders it more suitable to rhyme with *fyale*.
- 5022** Jasare] **A** *Offere*; **C** *Lafere*; **DE** *Lazare*.
- 5023** Seynt George] MS *Seynt j George*
- 5024** Part of fol. 152 has been torn out; as a result, the best part of *recto a* and *verso b*, and all of *recto b* and *verso a*, are lost. The missing lines are provided from **C** p. 64^a ff. Line 5024 is transcribed from **B** despite being incomplete because it does not appear in **C**. The incomplete lines of **B** fol. 152^{ra} are transcribed below:

<i>Þay felled dow ...</i>		<i>He wolde mete hym the ...</i>	
<i>Þe walles also ...</i>		<i>Bot Kyng Richerd ne made ...</i>	
<i>And the walles ...</i>		<i>Bot for þat tythynges fas ...</i>	
<i>Bot Maydenys ...</i>		<i>And swythe lete crye thorow ...</i>	20
<i>And the castel ...</i>	5	<i>In the name of the heghe h ...</i>	
<i>And by þat coste ...</i>		<i>Þat þay scholde alle with ho ...</i>	
<i>Þat þay ne we ...</i>		<i>Lygge alle þat nyghte byfore ...</i>	
<i>And alle this he ...</i>		<i>And dighte theym alle redy ...</i>	
<i>Þat Kyng Richerde ...</i>		<i>For to feghte one þe morne with ...</i>	25
<i>And when he hade ...</i>	10	<i>One Saynt Marye euen, þe ...</i>	
<i>Kyng Richerd than ...</i>		<i>This ilke batelle done sch ...</i>	
<i>And sayd þer he wolde ...</i>		<i>Full many was the hey ...</i>	
<i>Mete hym in the feld ...</i>		<i>Þat with þe sowdane come the ...</i>	
<i>And with a launce aga ...</i>		<i>Off Ynde, of Pers, and also of Bab ...</i>	30
<i>Giffe so were þat he dor ...</i>	15	<i>Off Araby, of Egipt, and of Sessoy ...</i>	
<i>Vndir þe cite of Arsoure ...</i>			

Between 5057-5058 C p.64^b:
Off Grete Grece and off Tyre / And off many another empyre

5060 Final letters of *Arsour* are illegible owing to damage; see note **5024**.

5062 hym] MS *And with ther was*; C *wip hym þer were*.

5067 Fol. 152th and 152^{va} are missing and supplied from C p. 64^b ff; cf. note **5024**.

5108 ne] MS *þenne* (a possible eyeslip as *þenne* occurs on the following line); **AE** *there nere*; **D** *was þere nere*.

5144 had] MS *He non help*; **AE** *had no help*.

5154 Owing to the damage of fol. 152, only part of recto a and verso b have survived (cf. note **5024**). The missing part is supplied by C p. 66. The incomplete lines of **B** fol 152^{vb} are transcribed below:

<i>...wiste of this</i>		<i>...his for Arsoure gan hynge</i>	
<i>...de Nys</i>		<i>...hent Richerde oure kyng</i>	20
<i>...range</i>		<i>...one the scholdre bane</i>	
<i>...le to lange</i>		<i>...d hym to þe sadill oneane</i>	
<i>...rres of golde</i>	5	<i>...parede so the crownn</i>	
<i>...euer wolde</i>		<i>...and hede helme felle þer ryght down.</i>	
<i>...he helde</i>		<i>...one armours wroghte with hande</i>	25
<i>...ale in þe felde.</i>		<i>...te Kyng Richerd axe withstande</i>	
<i>...thyn manes hert,</i>		<i>...ale ne bese nozte awoundrede</i>	
<i>...sore smarte.</i>	10	<i>...unce men sware he slewe ten hundrethe</i>	
<i>...nde withdrewe</i>		<i>...als this es owte into Ynglys ydrawe</i>	
<i>...a kyng he slewe</i>		<i>...he ristede hym any thrawe</i>	30
<i>...amyralle</i>		<i>...wed hym many a doughety knyghte</i>	
<i>...withowtten fayle</i>		<i>...helped full manly for to fyghte</i>	
<i>...nce itselfe</i>	15	<i>...layde one faste als þay were wode</i>	

...heytheyn kyngis twelue.
 ...chyn he keruede
 ...braste & þe Sarazene steruede

...þat þe valays rane alle one blode
 ...Sarazenes sayde in theire pauylouns 35

- Between 5175-5176** **E** fol. 20^v:
*And of some he parede so þe croun
 þat helme and hed fel adoune*
 Also in **AD**.
- 5179** þe Frenssche says] **A** *The French sey*; **B** *[Fra]unce men sware*; **D** *The romance seth*.
- 5198** euer newe] **C** *jnowʒ*; **A** *ynogh*; **D** *inow*.
- Between 5199-5200** **C** p.67^a:
*He þouʒte rescue Jakes de Nayn
 And ar he come he was jslayn
 ffor he & his sones anon
 Were toffrusschyd flesch & bon
 He ledde hym to hys pauyloun
 In despyt of here god Mahoun*
 Also in **ADE**.
- 5209** bakwarde] **A** *adounward*; **CD** *dounward*.
- Between 5241-5242** **A** fol. 268^{rb}:
*Bacon, carcois, and veneson
 Oure Cristene hadde so gret foison
 That ther was nother more ne lasse
 That wiste where hure good to tasse;*
 Also in **DE**.
- 5258** 5258. ryste] **ACE** *cheste*; **D** *reste*.
- 5262-5263** Unique to **B**.
- 5272** MS *And thane myghte* "safely gange and ryde" "we"
- 5278** Toke] **C** *Odok*
- 5285** nynete] **C** *seuenize*
- 5309** **C** *And sloʒ many an hebyn hounde*
- 5314-5315** Unique to **B**.
- 5320-5321** Unique to **B**.
- 5322-5323** **C** *Nynyue agayn þoo / þerfore was Kyng Richard woo*

- 5386-5389 Unique to **B**.
- Between** C p.70^b:
5439-5400 *And hys on arme þertoo / þenne was hys ffyzytyng doo*
- 5458-5459 Unique to **B**.
- Between** C p.71^a:
5461-5462 *Of alle þat he wip hym brozte / Betere myzte þay serue hym nouzte*
- 5462-5463 Unique to **B**.
- Between** E fol. 22^f:
5465-5466
- | | | |
|---|--|----|
| <i>Therefore Ric. without distaunce</i> | <i>þif he wolde withoute essoyn,</i> | |
| <i>Sent after þe kyng of Fraunce</i> | <i>Wende with him to Babyloyn;</i> | |
| <i>He sojourned in Acres citee</i> | <i>ffor had he þat citee woon</i> | |
| <i>þat tyme, as y telle it bee.</i> | <i>þanne had we wel oure game bygonne.</i> | |
| <i>He com to Ric. without faile,</i> | <i>The sawdan ful of couetis,</i> | 5 |
| <i>And he him asked consaile,</i> | <i>þeder he is fled, forsoth ywys.</i> | 10 |
| | <i>As Ric. and Philip þeder gon wynde,</i> | |
| | <i>þe sowdan sent faire and hende</i> | |
- 5494-5495 Unique to **BW**.
- Between** C p.71^b:
5495-5496 *There was no Sarazyn so stoute / That ouyr þe walles durst loken oute*
Also in E.
- 5497 þat] MS *At*
- 5506 MS *þare hade neuer with scapede thane*
- 5526-5527 Unique to **B**.
- 5635 gud] CE *Goddes*
- 5638-5639 Unique to **B**.
- 5662 MS *þane full. .agayne to heuen he went .suythe.*
- 5666 crowchis] C *arsouns*
- 5672 crowche] C *arsoun*
- Between** C p.74^b:

- 5681-5682** *And afflyr steyȝ vp into heuene / Now God for his names seuene*
- 5698-5706** Unique to **B**.
- 5711-5712** Unique to **BW**.
- 5715** Kyng Richerde] **CE** *Kyng Phelyp & Kyng Richard*
- 5724** MS *And alle of .haythyn powere .pe.*
- 5727** MS *And scholde the fourte party^{falle} adoun*
- 5733-5734** Unique to **B**.
- Between** **C** p. 75^b:
5758-5759 *And forstopyd þe lande wayes
 þey myȝte nouȝt flee in þe countrayes
 Ne no socour to hem come
 But ȝiff þey were slayn or nome*
- 5769-5771** Unique to **BW**.
- 5795** tellde] ?error for *beten*; possibly to rhyme with *felde*.
- 5795-5796** Unique to **B**.
- 5800** taen] MS *taren*
- 5805-5806** Unique to **B**.
- 5812** *In sygnifycacoune] C Significacyoun; E þat signified; 'In significacyoun'
 recalls lines 281, 339 and especially 391-92, where the same suymbolic
 meaning for a white dove is given.*
- Between** **C** p. 76^b:
5814-5815 *God hymselff, Marye and Jhon / As he was naylyd þe roode vpon*
- 5824** MS *At their wille euere ~~ik~~ ilkane*
- Between** **C** p. 77^a:
5850-5851 *And hys peytrel & his arsoun / þree myle men myȝten here þe soun*
- Between** **C** p. 77^b:
5868-5869 *Hys gerþes & hys stropes alsoo / His mere to þe grounde gan goo*
- 5889** MS *An^e hundrethe*
- 5889-5890** Unique to **B**.
- Between** **C** p. 78^b:

- 5936-5937** *Kyng R. Wente þe wode nere / He doutyd of encumbrere*
- 5947** storye] **C** jeste; **E** bataile.
- 5959-5961** Unique to **B**.
- 5961** MS *This was appon .. Jhones daye .. Sayne ..*
- 5987** Both] MS *Bot*
- Between 6002-6003** **E** fol. 28^f:
*And fonde yf þou haue grace
 Of Saladyne to gete purchace
 ffor by Seynt Thomas of Jnde
 Of my purchase þou art bihinde*
- Between 6006-6007** **C** p. 79^b:
þat was in signyfaunce / Jhesu Cryste to honouraunce
- Between 6034-6035** **A** fol. 268^{va}:
*Therinne Kyng Richard dude Berynger
 His quene that was hym leof and der
 And Johane of Sisile, his suster-quen
 For the myghte atte seo bene
 Also in **D**; cf. notes **2048**, **2052**, **2070**, and **2464**.*
- Between 6036-6037** **C** p.80^a:
*þedyr myzte come be þe see
 Off euery good gret plente
 He made here warde of noble knyȝtes
 Stoute in armes, stronge in fyȝtes*
- 6037-6038** Unique to **B**.
- Between 6040-6041** **C** p. 80^a:
Kyng R. Dwellyd wiþ honoure / Tyl þat Jaffe was maad al sure.
- A** fol. 268^{va}:

<i>To Turrien they dude hem by Drem ffour myle fro Jerusalem. Tho made oure Cristen ost gret blisse, For they wende wel ywys, Whenne þey had wonne Jerusalem citee. 5 þey shuld haue gon homward a zen in her iourne] So they hadde do withoute faille Ne had be Gauteris counsaile, Sir Gauter of Naples, þe hospitiler, Ther was he no good consailer 10 'Kynge Richard', he seide, 'and thugh winne,]</i>	<i>That God was on to dethe don High and lowe, sweyn and grom, 15 Smartly than wille wend hom Ac turne ayen to Chaloyne The wey lith toward Babiloyne And drawe the vp to the paynym And thugh shalt wel bisette thy tym. 20 Saladyn, the heygh soudan, Thugh shalt hym sle or al quyke tan.' Kynge Richard to his consail luste, They hit nere with the beste. Many earles and barons bothe 25 For that consail were wrothe,</i>
--	---

Jerusalem with thy gynne *And wente hom to hure contre*
Alle the folk shal seche the stede anon *And left Kyng Richard stille be.*

- 6070 MS *I ne schall ~~helpe~~ neuer helpe þam to make*
- 6079 *qwitly faste owte*] **A** *quic out*; **C** *quyckly out*; **D** *faste*; **E** *quyckly*. If *quitly* is but a mistake for *quicly* (or *quikly*), it is possible that Thornton – or his exemplar – may have duplicated the meaning by adding *faste*. Alternatively, the Thornton version may have emphasised the expulsion of the Duke of Austria by means of two adverbs denoting the complete and swift removal of the duke from the crusader army.
- 6094 *A Hys owene l. gan wexe loþ*; **C** *Hys owne l. hym wax loþ*; **D** *Hys owene l. was hym ful loth*; **E** *To lese hys l. he was ful loþ*.
- Between**
6122-6123 **C** p. 81^b:
þe duke away prekyd þenne / For ire his herte began to brenne
- 6129-6134 In **ABEW** but not in **C**.
- 6147-6149 Unique to **B**. Note that instead of a couplet, these three lines form a rhyming group; cf. ll. 3629-33 and 6952-6.
- 6158 The first ‘s’ in *byssege* has been written over a letter that looks like a ‘g’.
- 6191 MS *þat was sett to anothinge ~~hille~~ turrelle*
- 6213 MS *þe beste body of one of alle medilerde*
- Between**
6229-6230 **C** p. 83^a:
þe Longespay, þe Eerl off Rychemound / Wolde spare non heþene hound.
- E** fol. 31^v:
Longespay and þe Eerl off Rychemonde
They wolde spare non heþene hound
Al þat euer her swerdes rauzt
They cleuyd at the fyrst drauzt
Ther dyed mony a Cristen man
- 6244 do] MS *for to soo*; **A** *do so*; **C** *to don soo*; **E** *so do*.
- 6258 MS *And þay myghte suffre that no langere thrawe*
- 6281 MS *Till payed be zoure ~~raws~~ rawnsoun*
- Between**
6283-6284 **C** p. 81^a:
Or elles ze schole ryzt there sterue / Lord þey sayde we schole þe serue
Also in **AE**.
- 6286-6287 In **ABEW** but not in **C**.

- Between** E fol. 32^v:
6303-6304 *Herkeneth, lordynges, at þis tyme*
Now cometh þe best of þis ryme
 These lines also occur in **D**.
- 6309** MS *For to ensegge that ilke eite cite*
- 6312** Above *qwaynte*, a later hand wrote: 'for lye was en[.]'.
- Between** C p. 81^b:
6317-6318 *ffor he was fallen into elde / þat he myȝte non armes welde*
 Also in **ADE**.
- 6319** Above *wyse* a different hand wrote: 'for þer'.
- 6326** MS *þat þay na noþer lorde* 'of dignytee' 'hade'
- 6344-6347** In **ABDEW** but not in **C**.
- 6371** *angelle*] also in **CE**; **W** *deuyll*
- 6397** MS *þay dorste* ~~xxx~~ *noghte byde*
- 6399** MS *Kyng Richerde withowtten dynt*; **ACE** *K. R. wan w.d.*
- 6404** A stain obscures the last word of the line.
- Between** C p. 86^b:
6427-6428 *I wole me so off hym bewreke / þat al þe world þeroff schal speke*
 Also in **D**.
- Between** C p. 86^b:
6433-6434 *zis certes quod þe messangere / He wyl soo do by Seynt Rychere*
- 6443** MS *þe crown at Pasche, he* ^{bi} *gane* ^{to} *swere*
- 6455** Thornton leaves the second column of fol. 160^r blank and resumes on fol. 160^v. Thompson (*Robert Thornton*, 68) suggests that 'the fragmentary nature of his exemplar is ... the most likely explanation for the deficiency in Thornton's copy at this point'. The missing passage (which deals with Richard's returning to Acre in order to sail for England, and Saladin's learning of this and attacking Jaffa) occupies about three hundred lines in **C**, but Thornton left only one column blank, which suggests that he did not know how much of the text was missing from his exemplar. Some questions arise; for example, if his exemplar was a booklet which ended before the missing lines, what happened when he found a new exemplar? If his exemplar had the missing lines but they were illegible, why did he leave only one column? It is possible, however,

that his exemplar had a blank column, probably to be completed at a later stage, and Thornton followed it. For the missing lines, as supplied by **C**, see Appendix 2.

- 6497** enkerli] MS *Schowse forthe enberli my ~~Barly~~ galy*; **A** *Grethe smartly*; **C** *Schewe me quickly*; **E** *Take me quickly*.
- 6509-6517** The list of heroes also occurs in **ACE**; see Explanatory Notes and vol. 1, 'History versus Fiction', p. 139 ff.
- Between 6549-6550** **C** p.93^b:
Hadde I be tyme comen hedyr / I myzte haue sauyd al togedyr
- 6555** MS *And pipede a note wondirly welle schille*
- 6582-6584** In **ABEW** but not in **C**.
- 6583** MS *Pat was wroghte in mery Yg Ynglande*
- 6588** MS *And thurgh the ~~of Godes~~ grace of God in Trinyte*
- 6603** The only occurrence of *gatis*, instead of the usual spelling *zatis*.
- 6626** MS *And full^{many} come owte*
- 6632-6633, 6634-6635** Inverted in **ACEW**.
- 6633** girdille-stede] MS *girdille stille*
- 6635** MS *That vn ~~to~~ to the sadill*
- 6640** no] MS *mo*
- 6644** Twa hundreth] MS *Twa C hundreth*; **C** *Twoo and pryty*; **EW** *Sixty housand*.
- 6645-6769** Not in **C** due to a missing folio.
- 6668-6670** Unique to **B**.
- 6669** The word *Amen*, which is separated from the end of the sentence, might have been added by Thornton himself, as it is not part of the rhyme; cf. l. 6981.
- 6705** Ynglande] **W** *thyn owne lande*
- 6706** MS fra ~~the~~^{thy} dede flee

- 6712-6713,
6714-6715 Inverted in **AE**.
- 6781 MS *Wete Wolde hafe had hym*
- 6788-6789 In **ABEW** but not in **C**.
- 6804 **C** *What þere were drownyd & what were slawe*
- 6808 in the Franche romance] **ACE** *In (the) Frensche yfounde*
- Between** **C** p. 95^b:
6811-6812 *Now he was þere now he was here / To gouerne hys hoost wip his powere*
- 6819 A blot obscures the first letters of *fande*.
- 6823 MS *Helpe now lord*^{god} *and the holy croyce*
- 6839 dales] unique to **B**.
- Between** **E** fol. 43^r:
6843-6844 *þe King of Marrok met him in þe felde,*
Wip a spere he smot him in þe shelde
þat he tumbled, samfaile,
Top saile ouer his hors taile
þat on his hed he lyzt
He brak his nek I zow plyzt.
- 6844-6845** Note the *-t:-d* rhyme; cf. note **857**.
- Between** **C** p. 97^a:
6905-6906 *þere halff þe body fel adoun / And þat opir halff leffte in þe arsoun*
- 6923 MS *Bot thase fyve .. sone hade he slawe .. dukes..*
- 6936 playne & den] A variation of the expression 'doun and den', here used to emphasize the number of corpses, which covered all plains and valleys.
- 6940 *Glorye* rhyming with *victorye* (in **BCEW**) recalls the opening of the romance, ll. 1-2.
- 6944 ff** **C** p. 97^b:
And Sere Wyllyam Wateuyle,
Huberd & Robert Tourneham,
Gawter, Gyffard & Jhon Seynt Jhan
And bad hem...
- 6952-6956** Note the rhyming group of five lines instead of two couplets; cf. ll. 3629-33 and 6147-9.

Between C p. 97^b:
6963-6964 *þus he tolde þe messangers / And þey it tolde Richard þe fers*
 Also in AEW.

6979 ff The end of the romance in the **A** version is unique on two counts; first it is longer than the other versions, and second, it combines verse and prose. Note that the words 'prose' and 'verse' were written by the scribe in the same way as they appear in the following transcription.

A fol. 275^c:

*The duk of Ostrich in the castel
 With his ost was dight ful wel.
 The wedur was hot in someres tide,
 King Richard thoghte ther to abide
 At Gailard, vndur the castel, 5
 He wende he myghte haue kelid hym wel
 And bysegid the castel Gailard. Prose
 Bysyde Lemoes & strongly assailed it
 so that the vii kln of Aprille, as the
 kyng went aboute the castelle to 10
 avise hit – vnarmed – a knyght cleped
 Peris Besile, sodenly bende his
 arblast vppon the walles and haply with
 a gayn smot the kyng in the lifte
 shuldre & made dedelu wounde. 15
 Kyng Richard tho let his men calle
 And bad hem dighte alle,
 & swor by see and sunne,
 Til that castel weren wonne,
 Sholde mete ne drinke 20
 Neuere in his body sinke.
 He sett vp Robynet in that tyde,
 On that on castel side,
 & on that othur half of the toun
 He let arere the Maude Griffoun; 25
 And to the castel hii threw stones
 & breke the walles for the nones.
 And withinne a litel tide
 Into the castel he gan ryde
 & slogh bifore & bihinde, 30
 That he myghte to fore hym fynde.
 And euere byleued the quarell
 Stikyng faste in his shelder
 And when the kyng sey that he was Prose
 in perile of deth he let ofsende iij 35
 abbotes of Cisteaux ordre, that is of grey ...[ends abruptly]*

6980 romaunce] Unique to **B**.

6981 Amen: See note **6669**.

Appendix 2

The following lines, supplied from **C** (Gonville & Caius College Library, MS 175/96), complete the gap of two hundred and eighty-nine lines in the text between lines 6455 and 6456. The same editorial decisions apply to the transcription from **C**.

C p.87^a

And as he pouzte *in* hys herte,
 A stout Sarezyn gan *in* sterte
 þat ouzte Kyng *Richard* raunsoun
 For þe wynnynge off Daroun.
 5 He spak to þe kyng apertelyche
 Among þe peple þore & ryche:
 ‘Sere, þou schalt aquyte me here,
 And alle oure oþer hostagere,
 þow3 my queyntyse & my gynne,
 10 I schal doo þe gret tresore wynne.
 More þen an hundryd þousand pounde
 Off floryns boþe rede & sounde
 Off Saladynes cheeff tresore,
 And mekyl ryhchesse of here store.
 15 þerto I laye *in* hostage my lyff,
 And my chyldre and my wyff.
 But ziff I dooþe to wynne þat preye,
 One euele deþ do me to deye.’
 Quod *Richard*: ‘þou myscreaunt,¹
 20 Tel me now what folk it is,
 I wene it is but al feyntys.’
 ‘þoo þat lede þe tresore, saunt fayle,
 Sere, þey are þre þousand chamayle,
 And fyue hundryd þer are alsoo
 25 Off asses & mules & zit moo
 þat leden gold to Saladyn,
 Tryyd sylvyr & tresore fyn,
 Flour off whete & spysory,
 Cloþis of sylk & gold þerby.’
 30 Sayde Kyng *Richard*: ‘So God þe deme,
 Is þer mekyl peple þe tresore to zeme?’
 ‘Ze, sere,’ he sayde, ‘þer are before
 Knyztes rydande syxty score,
 And afftyrward þousandes ten
 35 Off swyþe stronge heþene men.
 I herde hem speke *in* rownyng,
 þey were afferyd off þe, Sere Kyng.’
 Quod Kyng *Richard*: ‘þey schal it fynde
 þow3 þer were syxty þousynde,
 40 And I were but myselff alone,
 I wolde mete hem euerylkone.
 Doo now sey me anon ryzt,
 Where may I fynde hem þis nyzt?’
 þe Sarezyn sayde: ‘I þe telle
 45 Where þou wylt abyde & dwelle,
 Here be souþe, mylys ten,
 þou may fynde þe heþene men.

C p.87^b

¹ One line of the couplet is missing.

þere þey wole resten & abyde
 Tyl more folk come þer ryde.
 50 þe kyng hym grayþid, & wente anon
 Hys barouns afftyr euerylkon.
 Al þat nyzt wiþ fayr couey,
 þey rede forþ by þe wey.
 þenne sayde þe spye to þe kyng:
 55 ‘Sere, make here þy restyng,
 þey are loggyd in þis toun,
 I wyl goo & aspye þer roun.
 Anon I wole to hem goo,
 And brewe hem a drynk off woo,
 60 And saye to hem þat Kyng Richard
 Is at Jaffe to Yngeland ward.
 þey wole leue me *with* þe beste,
 þenne wole þey gon to reste.
 þenne may þou to hem wende,
 65 And slou hem alle faste slepende.’
 ‘Fy, a debles!’ quod þe kyng,
 God geue þe now an euyl endyng.
 I am no traytour, tak þou kepe,
 To sloo men whyl þey slepe.
 70 And ryzt now her I wole abyde,
 Tyl I see þe Saraþynes come ryde,
 Be cleer day vpon þe feeldes,
 þey schole see clouen helmes & scheldes.
 Be þey dukes, prynces, or kynges,
 75 Here schole þey make her endynges.’
 þe Sareþyn þe kyng answerde:
 ‘þy pere is nouzt in myddylerde,
 Ne non so mekyl off renoun,
 Weel may þou hote Coer de Lyoun.
 80 þerffore, I wole it nouzt hele,
 þer are off Sareþynes twoo so fele
 As þou hase folk in þis cuntree,
 Certaynly, I telle þee.’
 Quod Kyng *Richard*: ‘God geue þe care!
 85 þerfore is nouzt myn herte sare,
 For on off my Crystene men,
 Is wurþ Sareþynes fyue & ten.
 þe moo þer be, þe moo I schal sloo.
 And wreke Jhesu off hys foo.’
 90 Forþ wente þe spye wiþ þen
 To aspye þe heþene men.
 Al he spyyd here compassyng,
 And tolde it *Richard*, oure kyng.
 He gan crye: ‘Aþ armes, þare!
 95 Coer de Lyoun, loo now þey fare!’
 Anon leep Kyng *Richard*
 Vpon hys goode stede Lyard,

C p.88^aC p.88^b

And hys Ynglyssch & his *Templers*
 Lyztly lopen on here destrers,
 100 And flynges into þe heþene hoo[st,]
 In the name off þe Holy Goost.

As þe Sarezyne wip here nobelay
 To þe sawdon were *in here way*,
 Kyng *Richard* smot hem among.
 105 þere aros no blysseful song,
 But to *Termagaunt* & *Mahoun*
 þey cryede faste, & to *Plotoun*.
 Kyng *Richard* a kyng gan bere
 þorw3 þe herte wip a spere.
 110 Aftyrward hys ax he drow3,
 And many an heþyn hound he slow3.
 Some he cleuyd *into þe sadyl*,
 It bewepte þe chyld al *in þe cradyl*.
 A kyng he cleff vnto þe *arsoun*,
 115 þat hym halp nouzt hys god *Mahoun*.
 Many an heþene *Sarezyne*
 He sente þere to helle pyne.
 þe *Templers* & þe *Hospytalers*
 Wunne þere manye fayre destrers.
 120 So longe þey fouzte, so says þe story,
 þat Kyng *Richard* hadde þe vycory.
 þorw3 help off hys gode knyztys,
 Stoute *in armes* & stronge *in fyztes*.
 And manye scapyd wip dedly wounde,
 125 þat ne leuyd nouzt no stounde.
 þey wolde afftyr no more mete
 Kyng *Richard* be wey ne strete.
 Now may 3e here þe wynnyng
 þat þer wan *Richard*, oure kyng.
 130 Hors off prys & gret camayle,
 Fyue hundryd & ten, saun fayle.
 Syxe hundryd hors of grete coursours
 Chargyd al *with riche tresours*,
 þat were *in coffres bounden ferlye*
 135 Wip fyn syluyr & gold ful trye.
 þer were þre hundryd mules & moo
 þat penyys & spyses boren þoo.
 þer afftyr fyfftene hundryd asse
 Bar wyn & oyle, more & lasse.
 140 And als manye wip whete brede,
 It was to *Richard* a gracyous dede.
 When he al þis tresore wan,
 Home he wente to hys men þan,
 Into þe cyte off *Bethany* þe noble
 145 Wip þat tresore & þe moble.
 He gaff þe ryche & þe lowe

C p.89^aC p.89^b

Off his *purchas* good inowe;
 He gaff hem destrers & coursours,
 And delte among hem his tresours.
 150 So Richard partyd hys purchas,
 Off al Crystyndom belouyd he was.
*Þerafty*r in a lytyl stounde,
 Come messangerys off mekyl mounde.
 Þe bysschop off Chestyr was þat on,
 155 þat oþir þe Abbot of Seynt Albon,
 þat b[r]ouȝte hym lettres speciele
 Aselyd *with* þe barouns sele,
 þat tolde hym his broþir Jhon
 Wolde doo corowne hym anon,
 160 At þe Pask, be comen dome,
 But he þe rapir wolde come home,
 For þe Kyng of Fraunce wiþ enuye
 Haþ aryuyd in Normandye.

Quod Kyng *Richard*: ‘Be Goddes payne,
 165 þe deuyl has to mekyl mayne.
 Al here bost & here deray,
 Þey schal abeye it *sum* day.’
 And þere he dwellyd tyl Halewemes
 And þenne he passyd to Jaffes.
 170 For seuene ȝer & ȝit more
 Þe castel he gan astore.
 Fyfftene þousand, I fynde in boke,
 He lefte þat cyte for to loke,
 For to kepe weel þat land
 175 Out off Saladynys hand,
 Tyl he agayn come myȝte
 For to Yngelond, he has tyȝte.
 And þenne he wente to Acres ward
 þe douȝty body Kyng *Richard*.
 180 Now off Saladyn speke we
 What dool he made & pyte,
 Whenne he wyste off þat caas,
 þat hys tresore robbyd was,
 And for hys men þat were slawe,
 185 He waryyd hys god & cursyd his lawe,
 And swor he wolde awroken be,
 Myȝte he euere hys tyme isee.
 Soo þat tyme a spye come in,
 And sayde þus to Saladyn:
 190 ‘Lord,’ he sayde, ‘be blyþe off mode,
 For I þe brynge tydynges goode,
 To þyn herte a blyþe present:
 Kyng *Richard* is to Acres went.
 For ouyr he wole to Yngelonde,
 195 For hym is come swylke a sonde

C p.90^a

þat Jhon hys broþer, I þe swere,
 Wole elles hys corowne bere.
 Jaffes was astoryd aryȝt
 Wiþ many a baroun & gentyl knyȝt.
 200 Fyfftene þousand, I wot ful weel,
 Schal kepen wel þat castel,
 ȝiff he may so weel spede,
 Tyl he come from his thede.
 But see, lord, wiþouten fayle,
 205 Fro his body kyttis þe tayle.⁷
 Offte was Saladyn wel & woo,
 But neuere soo glad as he was þoo.
 Þe spy he gaff an hundrid besauntes
 Þat bouȝte hym þat presauntes.
 210 And alsoo a fayr destrere,
 And a robe iffurryd wiþ blaundenere.
 Þenne wolde he no lengere abyde,
 He sente aboute on ylke a syde,
 Vpon lyeme & vpon lyff,²
 215 Vpon chyldryn & vpon wyff,
 Þat þey come to hym belyue
 To helpe hym out off londe dryue
 Kyng *Richard* wiþ hys grete tayle.
 To hym come many an amyrayle,
 220 Many a duke & many a kyng,
 And many ful gret lordyng
 Off Egypte & off Arabye,
 Off Capados & off Barbarye,
 Off Europ & off Asclauoyne,
 225 Off Ynde & off Babyloyne,
 Off Grece & Tyre alsoo,
 Off empyres & kyngdomes manye moo,
 Off alle heþene land, I fynde,
 Fro þe Grekyssche See to Grete Ynde.

C p.90^b

230 **C**harles kyng ne Alysaundre,
 Off whom has *ben* so gret slaundi[r],
 He hadde neuere swylke an hoost.
 In þe cuntre þer he lay a coost,
 Fyue myle it was off brede,
 235 And more I wene, so God me rede,
 Twenty myle it was of lengþe,
 It was an hoost off gret strengþe.
 To Jaffe cyte þey comen skete,
 Þe Crystene men þe ȝates dede schete,
 240 Þer was *withinne* a lytyl þrawe
 On boþe halff many man slawe.
 So strong & hard was þat batayle

C p.91^a

² lyeme] MS *ly^eme*

þat it ferde, wiþouten fayle,
 As it hadde fro heuene lyzt,
 245 Among þe swerdes þat were so bryzt.
 And euere þe Crystene ful weel fauzt,
 And slowe Sarezynes but it semyd nauzt.
 For it ferde thar no man axen,
 As þey out off þe ground were waxen.
 250 þat no slauztyr off swerdes kene
 Myzte þere noþyng be sene.³
 þe Crystene fledde in to þe castel,
 And kepten þe zatys swyþe wel.
 þe Sarezynes haue þe cyte take,
 255 þe Crystene men þey þouzte to awake.
 þenne began þe Sarezynes
 Vndir þe wal to make mynes.
 þe Crystene men for þe nones
 Al tofrusschyd hem *with* stones.
 260 þe Sarezynys zede aboute þe wal,
 And þrewe & schotten in ouyr al;
 Many a brennande scharp quarel
 þey schotte into Jaffe castel.
 þey souzten where þey myzte beste,
 265 Oure Crystene men agreue meste.
 At þe laste a zate þey founde
 Nouzt faste schet at þat stounde.
 þere þey fond strong metyng,
 Wiþ swerdes & speres ful greuyng.
 270 To wedde þey leffte a þousynd men
 And off þe Crystene were slayn ten.
 þe Sarezynes þouz þey were stoute,
 At þe zate men putte hem oute.
 þe Sarazynes for no nede
 275 þat day ne myzte þey nouzt spede.
 At nyzt, be þe mone cler,
 þe Crystene sente a messenger
 To Kyng *Richard* to Acres cyte,
 And prayde þe kyng for Goddes pyte
 280 þat he scholde come to hem þan,
 Or ellys þey scholde ben alle itan.
 þey tolde hym þe harde caas
 Off þe sawdonys hoost hou it was,
 And but he come to hem anon,
 285 þey were forlorn euerylkon.
 Kyng *Richard* answeyd anon ryzt:
 ‘Weel I knowe þe sawdonys fyzt,
 He wole make a lytyl deray,
 And al so tyt he wole hys way.’

C p. 91^b

³ MS *Myzte* ^{þere} *nobyng*

Glossary

Much of *Richard Coeur de Lion*'s vocabulary is open to a range of interpretations. Since it is not feasible to give all possible meanings in the side-glosses, their fuller range can be found here. Most of the words in the text are included in the glossary; the exceptions are words which have both the same spelling and the same meaning as in modern English (MnE), those whose only difference with MnE is that they are spelt with a final '–e' (e.g. *playe* or *saye*), those which are spelt with a 'y' instead of the MnE 'i', or vice versa (e.g. *bryng*, *hym*, *bi*), and those which are easily recognisable. In the alphabetization, initial *v* is listed separately as vowel and consonant.

All variant spellings of the same word found in the romance are shown in bold at the beginning of the entry, separated by commas. Different meanings are given, sequentially numbered. Infinitives are the main entries for verbs, and its different forms (e.g. past, imperative) are shown in bold at the end of the definition, except for gerunds functioning as nouns and past participles functioning as adjectives, both of which appear in separate entries. The *Middle English Dictionary* and the *Oxford English Dictionary* have been the main sources of this glossary.

Abbreviations:

2sg. second person singular
3sg. third person singular
adj. adjective
adv. adverb
 AN Anglo-Norman
arm. arms & armour
art. article
aux. auxiliary verb
coll. collective
comp. comparative adjective/adverb
conj. conjunction
dem. demonstrative
eccl. church, ecclesiastical usage
fig. figuratively
gen. genitive
ger. gerund
her. heraldry

impers. impersonal
inf. infinitive
int. interjection
intr. intransitive
mil. military usage
MnE Modern English
n. noun
naut. nautical
num. numeral
obj. object
OF Old French
ord. ordinal
p. past tense
phr. phrase
pl. plural
poss. possessive
ppl. past participle
pr. present tense
prep. preposition
pron. pronoun
refl. reflexive
sb. somebody
sg. singular
sth. something
subj. subjunctive
v. verb

- abasched** *ppl.* be upset or perplexed (as by fear, shame, surprise); be afraid, embarrassed, surprised.
- abate** *v.* to put an end to or do away with sth.; stop; *ppl.* **abated.**
- abawnn, aboffe, abouffe, abounne, abownn** *prep.* directly over; in the upper part of something, above.
- abore** *adv.* (?error for **abere**) bring to an end, cause to die.
- abowte** *prep.* in the vicinity of, near to; **alle** ~ on all sides of, surrounding.
- aby** *v.* to pay the penalty for a crime or an offense; to pay a penalty, suffer, be punished.
- abyde** *v.* to wait, be patient; to remain in a place; to face sb. in combat; to dare to do battle.
- accorde** *n.* 1) friendly sentiment, attitude, or disposition; goodwill; 2) agreement in sentiment, harmony of minds, unanimity; **be at one** ~, be of one and the same opinion, be agreed or unanimous; **by one** ~, by mutual agreement.
- accorde** *v.* to come to agreement or an understanding, to agree; *p.* **accordide.**
- acownnte** *v.* to count things.
- actoun** *n. arm.* also known as 'acton' or 'aketon', a padded and quilted garment worn under armour or as armour by itself. See Explanatory Note 373.
- adoun** *prep.* down.
- adrade, adred, adrede** *ppl.* afraid, frightened.
- afferde** *ppl.* frightened, terrified.
- aftire** *adv. & prep.* after.
- aftirwarde** *adv.* afterward.
- agaste** *v.* to frighten, terrify sb.; *ppl.* **agast.**
- agayne, agaynes, azene** *adv.* back or away from something; back to a place, back where one came from, again, homeward.
- agayne, agaynes, azene** *prep.* in front of, facing toward; against.
- agramede** *ppl.* annoyed, provoked, enraged.
- agrefe** *v.* to disturb, trouble, or harrass sb.; 2) to distress or grieve sb.; *ppl.* **agrefede, agreued, agreuede,** incensed, resentful, angry.
- agryse** *v.* to shudder with fear, awe, or dread; be frightened, terrified; feel awe or dread.
- agu** *n.* acute fever or an attack of it.
- ake** *n.* oak wood or timber.
- aknawe** *v.* to recognize sth. as a fact, acknowledge, know; **ben** ~, to acknowledge or admit sth.
- alblaste, alblastire** *n. arm.* a weapon for discharging bolts, stones, etc., consisting of a bow set crosswise on a shaft; a heavy type of crossbow, sometimes used to refer to oversized mounted crossbows meant specifically as siege weapons; an arbalest. ~ **of vyce (or devyce)**, a heavy crossbow drawn by a screw mechanism. See Explanatory Note 1830.
- alblasterers** *n. pl. mil.* those who fought with crossbows or arbalests.
- alde** *adj.* old.
- alkyns** *adj.* of every or any kind; of all kinds; **for ~ case**, by all means, at all costs.
- allanly** *adv.* only.
- alle 3ife** *conj.* even if, even though, although.
- allere** *adj.* followed by a noun, denoting the total number of entities in a class or group: all; all without exception.

- als, alls, as** *conj.* in clauses: in the way that, in the same way as, just as, as; how, as if, as though; used in comparative sentences, **als ... als**, e.g. **als brighte als þe sonne dose thorowe þe glasse** (l. 76); **als whitte als floure** (l. 138).
- alswa** *adv.* connecting sentences: in addition, moreover, also.
- althir** *pref.* with the *superl.* of an *adj.* or *adv.*, of all, very; ~ **laste**, last of all.
- amang, amanges, emange, emanges** *prep.* 1) amid or among (people); in the presence of; 2) in or among (a crowd, a group); 3) between (two parties, persons, or actions).
- ame** see **bee**
- amendement** *n.* improvement in health, recovery.
- amendide** *ppl.* corrected, rectified (a wrong, an injustice, an error) put right.
- amendis** *n. sg.* or *pl.* reparation, retribution, amends (as for an offense or crime, or for harm done); **make** ~, make amends, compensate.
- amis, amys, omys** *adv.* in a wrong or mistaken manner; wrongfully, wickedly, sinfully; with evil intent; **don** ~, do wrong, commit an offense.
- amyde** *prep. & adv.* in or near the center, in the center, in the middle.
- amyrall** *n.* prince or emir under the sultan; any Saracen lord or chieftain.
- amys** see **amis**
- ande, hande, honde** *n.* the human hand; **vntil hande**, close by, handy, available, ready; **come to hande**, to come, become available.
- andys** *n.* the act of breathing.
- ane** *num.* as *n.* (remaining uses are adjectival): the number one.
- ane** *indef. art.* a, an.
- anes** *adv.* one time only, once; **at** ~ at once.
- anguys** *n.* anguish, agony, torment; suffering.
- ankire** *n.* a ship's anchor; **ryde at** ~, to wait on board ship.
- annomerde** *ppl.* numbered.
- anoghe, enewe, enoghe, ynoghe, ynoughe, ynowe** *adj. & adv.* 1) plentiful, generous, abundant, great, plenty of; 2) sufficient, adequate, satisfactory, enough.
- anone** *conj. & adv.* at once, instantly, immediately.
- anoye** *v.* 1) to disturb, annoy, offend; 2) displease, irritate, provoke; *ppl.* **anoyede**.
- apayde** *ppl.* **ben (wel)** ~, be content or satisfied.
- apere** *n.* martial equipment or accouterments, such as armour, engines of war, weapons.
- apertly** *adv.* openly, in public.
- appairen** *v.* to injure a person's reputation or well-being, to slander.
- apparelle** *v.* to prepare sth., make preparations for sth.; make ready.
- appon, vpon** *prep. & adv.* upon.
- appostoille** *n.* 1) one of the twelve apostles of Christ; 2) the Pope.
- aqwaynttes** *n.* elegant clothes or costume.
- aqwite, aqwitte** *v.* to give sth. in return, pay for a service; repay.
- ar** *conj.* or; before.
- araye** *v.* 1) to put sth. in order, arrange; to get sth. ready, prepare; to marshall (men for battle); 2) to plan or plot sth., make plans for an action or occurrence.
- are, ayre** *n.* an oar; oars.
- arere** *v.* 1) to erect, set up a building or an engine of war; 2) place or set on high; raise (a banner) aloft; *p.* **areryde**.
- arghe** *adj.* of a timid nature, cowardly; afraid to do sth.; ignoble, worthless, contemptible.

- arme** *n.* 1) the human arm; 2) a weapon; *pl.* **armes**, the weapons of a warrior; arms and armour; **as armes**, arm yourselves, prepare for battle, to arms!; **dedis of** ~, deeds of arms; **man of** ~, an armed soldier (either mounted or on foot), a man-at-arms.
- arme** *v.* to equip oneself with weapons and armour, to arm oneself; **armed at alle rightes**, completely armed.
- arsoun** *n.* the uptilted front or back of a saddle, saddlebow; **fore** ~, pommel.
- arte** see **bee**
- aschamed** *ppl.* filled with shame or a feeling of disgrace; ashamed, disgraced.
- aschappe, skape** *v.* to escape; *p.* **skaped**.
- aspye** *v.* 1) to make stealthy or covert observations upon a person, place, or action with hostile intent; to scout out a territory; to spy upon; 2) to seek to discover or discover sth. by spying; 3) to catch sight of a person, thing, etc.; to notice visually; 4) to find out, discover, detect (sth.) with the mind; to perceive; *p.* **aspyede, asspyede**.
- assawte** *v.* to attack with arms, assault a city.
- assaye** *v.* 1) to try, test; 2) to engage sb. in combat; to assail or attack sb. or sth.
- assaylle** *v.* to attack or assault an enemy, a city, a person.
- assent** *n.* 1) consent, approval; formal endorsement; 2) mutual agreement (of two or more parties).
- assent** *v.* to express agreement, agree.
- assoyle** *v.* to absolve sb. of sin by divine or sacerdotal authority.
- atent** *n.* intent, purpose; **in** ~, for a purpose.
- athe** *n.* a statement or promise made with an oath.
- atire** *n.* 1) the whole equipment of a knight, i.e. armour, weapons and mount; 2) attire, clothes.
- auentayle** *n. arm.* a piece of chain mail protecting the lower face, neck, and part of the upper chest
- aughtyn** *ord. num.* eighth in order.
- auntirs** see **aventure**
- availe, avayle** *v.* to be successful; to be sufficient for a purpose; do good to sb., benefit.
- avawnced** *adj.* advanced.
- aventure, awnnter, awnntir** *n.* 1) a venture, an enterprise; a knightly quest; an adventure, an exploit, a daring deed; 2) a tale of adventures, an account of marvelous things; 3) fate, fortune, chance; *pl.* **auntirs, awnnters**; **in** ~ 1) in danger, in jeopardy; 2) perchance, perhaps.
- avisyoun, vesyoun** *n.* a supernatural manifestation, a vision.
- avyse** *v.* used as *refl.* to bethink oneself, consider, take thought.
- avysy** *adj.* well-advised, discreet, prudent.
- awe** *n.* fear, terror, dread.
- awe to** *modal v.* used to show when it is necessary, desirable or advantageous to perform the activity referred to by the following verb, ought to.
- awenn, awun** *adj.* (their, his, its) own.
- awnnter, awnnters, awnntir** see **aventure**
- awunterous, awnterows, awunterous** *adj.* adventurous, wandering in search of exploits; ~ **knight**, a knight-errant.
- awoundre** *v.* to be astonished, to marvel, wonder; to be struck with awe or amazement; feel wonder about sth.; *p. & ppl.* **awoundrede, awundryd, woundrede**.

- awtire** *n.* the altar of a church; **heghe** ~, the high altar, the altar on which the Eucharist is offered.
- awun** see **awenn**
- awundryd** see **awoundre**
- awunterous** see **awnterous**
- ay, aye** *adv.* all the time, always, constantly, unceasingly; every time, in every case, on every occasion, again and again; **for** ~, for ever.
- ayer, ayere** *n.* 1) air, the atmosphere; 2) vigour, vehemence, haste.
- ayle** *v.* to trouble, afflict, or harm sb. or sth; **what deuyll hym ayled at me?** what the devil has he against me?
- ayre** see **are**.
- ayther** *pron.* both (of two), both things, both persons.
- ayther, aythere, aythir, aythire** *conj.* either (of two), either (alternative); either ... or.
- azoure** *n & adj.* the colour azure; blue.
- babill** *n.* a cutting, hacking, or grubbing implement: a falchion, halberd, pike, gisarme. See Explanatory Note **4619**.
- bacenett** *n.* open-faced helmet with a rounded or pointed skull, often worn with an aventail and visor, basinet; see Explanatory Note **401**.
- bachelere** *n.* 1) a young man, a youth; 2) one who has taken the lowest degree (in a particular subject) conferred by a university; 3) an aspirant to knighthood; a novice in arms, a squire.
- bad, badde** see **bede**
- bake** *n.* the human – or other animal – back; *pl.* **bakkes**.
- balain** *n.* whalebone, baleen.
- balde, baulde, bolde** *adj.* 1) bold, courageous ; 2) confident, assured, certain; **be thou** ~, you may be sure.
- bande** see **bende**
- bane** *n.* 1) one who destroys life; slayer, murderer; 2) destruction of life; death, doom.
- bane, bone** *n.* a bone of the human body; *pl.* **bonys**; **thee** ~ thigh bone; **souldere** ~ shoulder bone; **cheke** ~ cheek bone; **swire** ~, **nekke** ~, neckbone.
- banere** *n.* the distinctive banner of a lord or country, carried as a rallying-point in the van of battle, flown by a ship, or displayed on state occasions.
- banne** *v.* to curse or condemn; 3*sg.* **bannys**.
- banne** *v.* to pray for sth.
- bannys** see **banne**
- barbycane, berbycane** *n.* an outer fortification of a city or castle; a fortified gate or bridge; a fortification.
- bare** *v.* see **bere** *v.*
- barme** *n.* lap; breast, bosom; **in our lady** ~, at Mary's bosom, in Mary's arms.
- baroun** *n.* a member of the nobility, a lord; specifically a feudal tenant of a king or other superior, holding by military or other service.
- barres** *n.* *pl.* bars for bolting a door or gate.
- barst** see **berst**

batayle, bataylle, batelle, baytaile *n.* 1) armed conflict, warfare, combat; battle; 2) a body of warriors, especially as ready for battle; an army or a division of it; troop, company, battalion.

bate *n.* a boat.

bate *v.* see **bette** *v.*

bate *v.* see **byte** *v.*

batel *v.* 1) to engage in combat or warfare, fight; beset by an enemy; 2) of an army: to line up in battle formation or for an assault; *p.* **batelde.**

batelle see **batayle**

batellynge *ger.* combat, fighting; an assault.

baulde see **balde**

bawdkyn *n.* oriental cloth woven of silk, shot through with gold (or silver) thread, or brocaded; brocade.

bay *adj.* reddish-brown, bay; ~ **stedis** bay horse.

baytaile see **batayle.**

be *prep.* of location: near, close to, next to.

bedde *n.* a bed; *pl.* **beddis.**

bedde *n.* one who shares another's bed, consort, spouse.

bede *v.* 1) to offer sth., to give; 2) to demand, prescribe, or order sth., bid sb. to do sth.; 3) to make a request, beg for sth.; *3sg.* **biddys**; *p.* **bad, badde, bedde.**

bedene *adv.* with *n.* or *pron.* as a group, one and all, all together; **alle** ~, in all, all told.

bee, ben *v.* to be; *1sg.* **ame**; *2sg.* **arte**; *3sg.* **es**; *imp.* **bese**; *p.* **ware, waren, weryn**; *ppl.* **ben, bene.**

begyle *v.* to deceive or delude sb.; be false to, betray.

bekerryng *ger.* fighting, warfare; a skirmish or battle.

bekir, bekire *v.* to make an attack or assault; enter into or engage in combat.

bekyre *n.* a martial encounter or engagement; a skirmish, a battle.

bellys *n. pl.* bells.

belyue, belyve error for **belyues**, *adv.* quickly.

bemys *n. pl.* wooden beams used in the framework of a building, a ship, etc.; timber.

ben see **bee** *v.* *sg.* **ame**; *2sg.* **arte**; *3sg.* **es**; *imp.* **bese**; *p.* **ware, waren, weryn**; *ppl.* **bene.**

bende *v.* to turn, go, hasten; *p.* **bande.**

bendelle *n. her.* a narrow diagonal stripe, a bendlet.

benys *n. pl.* beans.

benysoun *n.* act of invoking a blessing on someone; the words used in blessing, a prayer of benediction.

berbycane see **barbycane**

bere *n.* outcry, clamor.

bere *v.* 1) to carry away; to carry sth., bring; to bear (weapons); 2) to push or thrust sth. or sb.; strike sb. hard; 3) to wear clothing, armour, carry on one's person; to endure sth., to bear; **to** ~ **witnesse**, to testify, bear witness; to act as witness; *p.* **bare**; *ppl.* **borne**; *imp.* **beres.**

berst, brest *v.* to be broken, fall apart, break, shatter; *p.* **barst, brast.**

besaunt, besaunte *n.* 1) a gold coin of Byzantium; 2) any of several similar coins minted in Western Europe.

beseke *v.* to beg, entreat, or pray sb., beseech; *p.* **besou3te, bysoughte.**

besett see **bysette**

bestis *n. pl.* beasts.

beswyke *v.* to act deceitfully, deceive.

besygewe *n. arm.* besagew, small round shield that was laced to the mail at the shoulder to defend the armpit; see Explanatory Note 321.

betake, bitake *v.* to give or grant sth., hand over, bestow; surrender; *p.* **bitoke**.

bete *v.* to kindle or replenish a fire.

beten see **bette**

betide, betyde, bityde *v.* to happen, come to pass.

bette, betyn *v.* 1) to beat, whip; 2) to strike sth., buffet sb., smite, slap; 3) to bombard sth. with missiles; *p.* **bate, bett**; *ppl.* **beten, bett, betyn**.

bettire *comp. adj.* better.

betyn gold *n.* also known as 'heuen gold', gold hammered into a thin sheet or leaf.

betyn *v.* see **bette**

beynge [?error for **begyne**], **bygynn** *v.* to begin; *p.* **bigane**.

bidden *v.* to ask, beg, or plead for sth; *p.* **bad**.

biddys see **bede**.

bifalle, byfalle *v.* to come to pass, come about, happen, occur; *p.* **byfelle**.

bihelde, byhelde *v.* to observe or notice sth.; *p.* **byhalte**.

biheste *n.* a promise or pledge; a commandment.

bihete *v.* to promise sth.; promise to do sth.

binden *v.* 1) to tie sth. up, as with a cord; 2) to wrap sth., as in or with a cloth; envelop, cover; 3) to edge or trim (a chest, a shield, a wagon) with metal, reinforce; *ppl.* **bowndyn**.

bischoppes *n. pl.* bishops.

bisyde *prep.* beside.

bitake see **betake**

bitoke see **betake**

blawe *v.* to blow a horn, etc., play a wind instrument.

blenke *n.* a pass, a thrust; **maken a ~**, to play a trick.

blenke *v.* to move suddenly or sharply; jerk, twist; flinch, wince, dodge.

blere *v.* to have watery or rheumy eyes; ~ **eghe**, to befuddle, hoodwink, delude (sb.).

blethily *adv.* gladly, willingly, eagerly, readily.

blissede *ppl.* blessed; gladdened, full of joy, joyous.

blithe, blysse, blythe *n.* joy, bliss.

blithe, blythe *adj.* joyful, happy, glad.

blode *n.* blood.

blyne *v.* to cease doing sth.

blysse see **blithe** *n.*

blyssynge *ger.* ritual sanction or blessing; benediction.

blythe see **blithe** *n.*

bode *n.* an edict or command, a prescription, a request.

bofete, bofett *n.* a blow delivered with the fist or flat of the hand; a cuff, slap.

boke *n.* 1) a book; 2) the Bible.

bolde see **balde**

bolles *n. pl.* drinking bowls or cups; goblets, tankards.

bolne *v.* to swell, become distended; swell from infection, poison, etc.

- bone** *n.* a petition or request; **to ask a ~**, ask sb. for a favour, make a request, petition or beg sb. for sth.
- bonys** see **bane**
- boost, bost, boste** *n.* 1) a brag, a boast; bragging, self-praise; **maken ~ (of)**, brag (of, about); 2) arrogance, presumption, pride, vanity; **fallen ~**, cast down sb.'s pride, overcome sb.; 3) a band of soldiers; **withowtten any ~**, a) without bragging about it; b) (in a narrational self-referential use) indeed.
- borde** *n.* 1) a table; a dining table; *pl.* **bordis**; 2) **on ~** on board a ship, on deck.
- borne** *v.* see **bere** *v.*
- borthē, bothe** *n. & adj.* two together, both.
- bost, boste** see **boost**
- bot** *conj.* 1) but; 2) unless, ~ **gif**, ~ **if**, unless; 3) and.
- bote** *n.* 1) advantage, help, profit, good, benefit; 2) relief, deliverance; remedy; the cure of a disease or a wound, healing, recovery from illness; salvation, redemption.
- boughe** *n.* a branch of a tree or bush; a main branch; **wode ~** forest boughs, the forest canopy.
- boun, bownn** *adj.* ready, prepared, armed.
- bourre** *n.* a lady's chamber; a suite for ladies, the women's quarters.
- bowespret** *n. naut.* bowsprit: a large spar or boom running out from the stem of a vessel, to which the foremast stays are fastened.
- bowndyn** see **binden**
- bownn** see **boun**
- brade, brayde, brode** *adj.* wide, broad.
- brade** *adv.* of position or extent: over a large space, so as to be extended or spread out, so as to spread sth. out, widely.
- brake, brakke** see **breke**
- brande** *n.* 1) burning fuel, a fire or flame; 2) a sword; a blade; *pl.* **brandis**; 3) a blow or stroke with a weapon; 4) an upright timber (usually carved or otherwise ornamented) at the bow of a ship, beak.
- bras** *n.* copper (ore or metal).
- brase** *v.* to make sth. of bronze; to cover with plates of bronze.
- brast** see **berst**
- braste** see **breste**
- brayde** *adj.* see **brade** *adj.*
- brayde** *n.* 1) a rash or hasty act; a move; 2) a deceptive act; a stratagem, trick, or trap; 3) an unusual occurrence or event; 4) a blow or stroke with a weapon.
- brayne** *n.* the brain.
- bred, brede** *n.* 1) bread; **sour ~**, leavened bread; 2) food.
- brede** *n.* 1) the shorter of two dimensions of a surface, area, or object; width, breadth; **in ~**, in width; **one ~**, abreast, far and wide; 2) a unit of linear measurement equal to the width or thickness of something specified; **straa ~ thikke** the thickness of a straw.
- brede** *v.* to cook meat by roasting or frying.
- breke** *v.* to break sth. into parts; dash to pieces; *p.* **brake, brakke**.
- brekyng** *ger.* wrecking of a ship.
- brende** see **brennen**

brennen *v.* 1) to be consumed by fire; burn, burn down; 2) to shine, glitter, sparkle, glow; 3) to treat sth. with fire or heat; *p.* & *ppl.* **brende**; **brende gold**, gold refined by fire, pure gold.

breſt see **berſt**

breſte *n.* 1) the breast; 2) a breastplate; the part of a garment or armour covering the chest.

breſte *v.* to break sth., shatter, crush; spring forth, burst; *p.* **braſte**.

brethire, brothire *n.* brother.

brissed *ppl.* bruised.

brithe *n.* wrath, anger, vengeful spirit.

brode see **brade**

bruke *v.* 1) to have the benefit of sth., enjoy; 2) to possess sth., get, take, keep.

bryme *n.* a body of water, such as the sea, a pool, spring, river.

brynge of lyue *phr.* to kill.

brynte *v.* to be consumed by fire; burn, burn down.

bulle *n.* a papal edict.

burgays, burgesse *n.* 1) a freeman of a town, a citizen with full rights and privileges; an inhabitant of a town; 2) city merchants and master craftsmen in the guilds.

burghe *n.* a small village.

buse see **byhoue**

by and by *adv. phr.* one by one, one after another, in order; on and on, continuously.

byzonde *prep.* beyond.

byde *v.* 1) to request, beg, or beseech sb.; 2) to address a prayer or entreaty to God or a saint; supplicate, pray.

byde *v.* 1) to stay, remain (in a place); tarry, linger; 2) to wait expectantly, or patiently, to await sth. or sb.

bydene *adv.* 1) completely, entirely, utterly; 2) immediately, forthwith; 3) as an emphatic, or for rhyme's sake: indeed.

byfalle see **bifalle**

byfelle see **bifalle**

byfor, byfore *prep. & adv.* before.

byforne *adv.* in front of, ahead.

bygane see **bygon**

bygon *v.* 1) to cover sth., as with blood; 2) to trim or ornament sth., as with gold, jewels; *ppl.* **bygane**.

bygynn see **beynge**

byhalte see **bihelde**

byhelde see **bihelde**

byheſte *n.* a commandment, request.

byhoue *v.* 1) to be needed, required, requisite, or necessary; 2) to need; 3) to be constrained, compelled, or obliged; 4) must, should; *pr.* **buse**; *p.* **byhouede**; *imp.* **byhouys**.

byhynd *prep.* behind.

bylaye, bylaide see **byligge**

byleftte see **byleue** *v.*

byleue *n.* faith or devotion.

byleue *v.* 1) to depart from or leave a place; 2) to remain in a place, stay; *p.* **byleftte**.

byligge *v.* to besiege a stronghold, an enemy; *p.* **bylaye, bylaide**.

bymene *v.* to signify or mean sth.

bynommen see **nime**

byrefe *v.* to deprive or rob sb.

bysekyng *ger.* as *n.* entreaty, supplication, prayer.

bysette *v.* to invest or besiege a stronghold, an enemy, etc.; ~ **aboute**; *p. & ppl.* and *p.* **besett**, **bysett**, surrounded, enveloped; **wel** ~, well directed.

bysoughte see **beseke**

bystedde *v.* to beset or overtake sb; *ppl.* **bystadde**.

bystrade *v.* to mount a horse, ride a horse; *p.* **bystriden**.

byswyke *v.* to deceive, delude, mislead sb.; betray, defraud, cheat.

bytaken *v.* to be a symbol or emblem of sth., represent symbolically, symbolize; *p.*

bytakenyde, **bytakyned**.

byte, **bytt** *v.* of a weapon: to pierce, penetrate, cut, slash; make a dent; *p.* **bate**.

bythinke *v.* to think, reflect, meditate, ponder; *p.* **bythoughte**; *ppl.* **bythought**, thought out, planned.

bytrappe *v.* to close in upon an enemy on all sides, especially by surprise or a ruse; catch as in a trap.

bytraye *v.* to commit an act of treason against sb., to betray.

bytt see **byte**

bytwene *prep.* between.

cabille *n.* the lines or ropes of a ship collectively; *pl.* **cabills**.

care *n.* 1) sorrow, sadness, grief; annoyance, vexation; 2) fear, dread.

carole *n.* a kind of round dance accompanied by singing; a group of people dancing and singing in a circle.

carolen *v.* 1) to dance and/or sing in a carole; 2) to sing for the dancers in a carole.

cart *n.* a cart, a wagon.

cartare *n.* the driver of a cart or coach; a carter, coachman.

case *n.* state of affairs, circumstances, situation; predicament, fate; an event, incident, occurrence; case; way, manner; **for alkyns** ~, by all means, at all costs.

caste, **keste** *v.* 1) to throw sth. to a distance, fling, hurl; 2) to hurl missiles with a siege engine; cast (stones, fire, etc.) with an engine; cast with a sling; shoot (an arrow); 3) to knock sth. to the ground; 4) to place sth., to put; *p.* **caste**, **keste**; *ppl.* **casten**, **ycaste**.

castell, **castelle** *n.* 1) a castle; 2) a movable tower used in sieges.

catelle *n.* 1) a large ship, a principal ship; 2) property of any kind; goods, treasure, money.

cawdroun *n.* a kettle or pot for heating water or cooking, a caldron.

caytyfe *adj.* unhappy, miserable, unfortunate.

certeyne *adj.* **for** ~, with certainty, for sure, in fact, certainly.

cesse *v.* 1) to take possession; seize sth. by force; 2) put sb. in legal or formal possession of sth., give sb. possession of sth.

chafare *n.* 1) trade in goods, buying and selling, commerce; 2) goods, merchandise.

chalece *n.* the cup or goblet for administering the sacramental wine; *pl.* **chaleces**, **chalessis**.

chambir, **chambire**, **chambre** *n.* a room or apartment for personal use; a private room or suite; chamber, bedroom.

- chancelere, chancellere** *n.* the Lord Chancellor of England, in charge of drawing up, sealing, issuing, and enrolling such documents as charters, letters patent, and letters close while exercising certain equitable jurisdiction.
- charboacle** *n.* a precious stone, any of the gems called carbuncles; especially that carbuncle which shines in the dark.
- charege, charge** *v.* 1) to load a ship, a vehicle, a pack animal with, of sth.; stock a ship with provisions; 2) to order, request, instruct, or direct sb. to do sth.; to urge; *p.* **chargede**.
- charge** *n.* the cargo or freight of a ship, a wagon, a pack animal; a load.
- chargynge** *n.* transportation of goods, a transport; burden.
- charite** *n.* **pur** ~, as an act of kindness, for the sake of charity.
- chase** *n.* the hunting of game; a hunt or chase.
- chastelett** *n.* 1) a small castle; especially a tower forming part of a larger fortification; 2) a small tower, a turret.
- chasty** *v.* to punish sb. for an offense, chastise.
- chaunce** *n.* 1) something that happens or takes place; an occurrence or event; **by** ~, by chance, accidentally; **for** ~ **that may byfalle**, no matter what happens; 2) one's luck, fate (whether good or bad); **euyll** ~, bad luck; 3) an adventure or exploit in arms.
- chayere** *n.* a chair.
- chepis** *n.* **grete** ~ abundance, plenty, large numbers.
- chepyng** *n.* a market or market place in a city or town.
- chere** *n.* 1) the face as expressing emotion, attitude, or character; facial expression; 2) a gesture or act indicative of an attitude or intention; **heuy** ~, sorrowful of countenance; **myld** ~, gracious manner.
- chese** *v.* to select or choose sth. or sb.
- chesse** *n.* the game of chess.
- chide** *v.* 1) of birds: to screech; 2) to engage in an argument or dispute; to quarrel.
- chiltrone** *n.* a group of soldiers or an army in fighting formation; a tight battle formation or phalanx.
- chyne** *n.* a chain; also a chain of metal links used to raise and lower a drawbridge or portcullis or to bar a passage; *pl.* **chynes**.
- cite** *n.* a walled town or city, with its political organization.
- clafe** see **clefe**
- clarre** *n.* a sweet liquor consisting of a mixture of wine, clarified honey, and various spices, as pepper and ginger; clary.
- clede** *ppl.* dressed in a certain way, clothed in a particular garment or kind of clothing.
- clefe** *v.* to split sth.; cut open or apart; to break sth. up; dismember; to slash sb.; ~ **doun**, slice from top to bottom; *p.* **cleuede, clafe, cleff**.
- clene** *adj.* 1) clean; 2) complete, entire, full, thorough; great.
- clenly** *adv.* completely, fully, wholly, entirely; thoroughly.
- clere** *adj.* clear.
- cleuede** see **clefe**
- clos, close** *adv.* tightly, firmly, securely (fastened, closed, held, surrounded).
- clos, close** *n.* 1) an enclosed area: a walled or otherwise fortified place; stronghold; a courtyard or court; a close; 2) a wall or other fortification surrounding a city or castle; ~ **dyke**, a moat.

- clothis** *n.* ~ **of golde**, a piece of gold brocade; also, a garment, hanging, etc., made of cloth of gold.
- clowte** *n.* a blow or slap with the fist or hand; **an ere** ~, a box on the ear.
- cofirs** *n. pl.* a trunk, chest, or case of any size for storing or carrying valuables of any kind.
- cogge** *n. naut.* a ship of some kind (apparently of medium size and used in military expeditions). See Explanatory Note 60.
- cole** *n.* charcoal, or a piece of it; ~ **black** as black as coal.
- cole** *v.* to become cool or cold; to refresh oneself, cool off; *p.* **colyde**.
- com** see **comen**
- comande, comaunde** *v.* to command.
- comandement** *n.* an order, request, or instruction.
- comen** *v.* to come; *3sg.* **commes, commys**; *p.* **come, com**; *ppl.* **ycomen**.
- comon** *v.* to discuss sth.
- comonde** *v.* (?error for **comende**) to compliment or praise sb.; to approve of or praise sth.
- comonyng, comonyng** *n.* the action of conversing, discussing, conferring, negotiating.
- complexyoun** *n.* constitution or general nature resulting from the blending of the four 'humours' in varying proportions; temperament or character as produced by the predominance of one of the four 'humours'.
- conqueroure** *n.* one who wins a country, subjugates a people, or defeats an adversary.
- consaile, consayle, conselle** *n.* 1) a body of advisers to a ruler; an adviser, a counselor; 2) the act of discussing or conferring; 3) counsel, advice, instruction; 4) a meeting, conference, council; 5) a decision; a plan, scheme; 6) a secret, private matter, a secret plan.
- consellers** *n. pl.* counselors, advisers.
- conteke, cunttek** *n.* dissension, discord, conflict, strife; quarreling, brawling; the action of engaging in a physical encounter, in combat, or in warfare.
- contre, contree, countre** *n.* any geographic area or physiographic province, whatever its size: region, district, area, place.
- conysable, conysance** *n.* knowledge, understanding, information; any device, emblem, or badge by which a knight's allegiance, a sovereign's identity, etc., are made known.
- cope** *n.* drinking vessel; a bowl, goblet, cup; *pl.* **coppis**.
- coronalle** *n.* frontal; the frontal bone.
- coronen** *v.* to wear a crown.
- corownnde** *ppl.* ~ **kyng**, a king that has been duly crowned.
- corse** *n.* 1) a dead body, a corpse; 2) the body of a living person.
- corste** *ppl.* under a malediction or imprecation; condemned to misfortune or misery; condemned to hell; damned, accursed.
- cortaisely** *adv.* in a courtly manner; courteously, politely.
- cortays** *adj.* noble, courteous.
- coste** *n.* 1) shore, coast; 2) a boundary, limit; an outlying district, border region; 3) location with reference to direction, side; **bi a** ~, in a certain direction.
- costrells** *n. pl.* flasks or bottles; wine-skins.
- cote armour** *n. arm.* an overgarment with heraldic arms.
- couande, couaunde, couaunt** *n.* an agreement, a contract; a promise.
- couere** *v.* to recover, regain (one's health, strength, courage).
- couertoure** *n.* covering for the body; a garment, vestment.

- course** *n.* a charge in battle or tourney; a passage at arms; a charge with blunted weapons or with weapons of war; **ride a ~** make a charge.
- course** *n.* (?error for **courser**) a swift spirited horse serving as a mount in warfare, tournament, or parade; charger, steed.
- couthe** see **kan**
- cowntir** *v.* 1) to meet sb. in battle or combat, attack, fight with; 2) to encounter; *p.* **cowntirde**.
- craffe** *v.* to ask for sth., beg, pray, request.
- crafte** *n.* strength, force, power.
- crakke** *v.* to utter words, speech; say; speak, talk, especially speak loudly.
- creaunt** *adj.* defeated, vanquished; **crye ~**, to cry '(I am) vanquished', 'I surrender'..
- creste** *n.* the crest on a helmet; a decoration, distinguishing mark, or heraldic device fixed to the top of the helmet; see Explanatory Note 275.
- Cristundome** *n.* 1) Christian faith and doctrines, the Christian religion; 2) the portion of the earth ruled by Christians, Christian countries or territory, Christendom.
- Cristyante** *n.* the Christian faith or doctrines, Christianity.
- Cristynmesse** *n.* Christmas Day; the season of Christmas.
- cronykyll** *n.* a chronicle, a history.
- cropour** *n.* cover for the hindquarters of a horse, or a crupper.
- crose, croyse** *n.* a / the cross.
- crossede** *adj.* as *n.* one who has taken the cross, i.e. who is going on a crusade.
- croun of thorne** *n.* the crown of thorns, one of the Passion relics.
- croun, crownn,** *n.* 1) the top of the head, crown, skull; the head; 2) a crown.
- crowche** *n.* saddlebow; *pl.* **crowchis**.
- crowppe** *n.* the hindquarters of an animal, rump, haunches.
- croysery** *n.* a crusade against pagans.
- cry** *n.* 1) an announcement, a proclamation; 2) a public command, ordinance, decree, edict.
- cry** *v.* 1) to make public announcement of an event; 2) to command publicly that sth. shall be done, decree, proclaim; 3) to make a proclamation, declare sth. publicly.
- cumpanyable** *adj.* sociable, hospitable, kind, friendly, courteous.
- cungir** *n.* a large marine eel.
- cuntek** see **conteke**
- curtaise, curtayse,** *adj.* courtly or refined in manners, well-bred, courteous; considerate, kind; ~ **and hende**.
- curtaisy, curtasye** *n.* 1) refinement of manners; gentlemanly or courteous conduct; courtesy; 2) courtly ideals; chivalry, chivalrous conduct.
- custome** *n.* traditional or customary practice of a nation or group; established usage; a tradition or custom.
- dale** *n.* 1) distribution of alms or gifts; alms; 2) a valley.
- dale, dele** *v.* 1) to separate things or persons; to divide sth., divide into parts; 2) to give sth. to sb.; give sth. away, distribute as alms; *p.* **dalte, delte**.
- dange** see **dinge**
- dare** *v.* to have the courage to do sth., dare; *p.* **dorste, durste**.
- darte** *n. mil.* a metal-pointed missile, such as a javelin or spear, hurled by hand (perhaps also by the crossbow).
- dasche** *v.* to beat or roll drums; of drums: to roll, reverberate.

dawe *n.* death.

dawe *v.* of the day: to dawn.

dawnnynge *n.* the dawn.

dawmse *v.* to dance; *p.* **dawnsed**.

debonaire *n.* gentleness.

dede *adj.* dead.

dede *n.* death; **for dedis dowte**, for fear of death.

dede *n.* 1) deed; 2) a heroic deed, military achievement; ~ **of armes**, a feat of arms; 2) a military action, battle, encounter, fight, tournament; ~ **of armes**, a passage of arms, a fight, combat; *pl.* **dedis**.

defawte *n.* responsibility for evil or failure, fault; **for** ~, for lack of sth.

defende *v.* 1) to defend; 2) to forbid.

dele *n.* a division, part, portion.

dele *v.* see **dale** *v.*

delte *v.* see **dale** *v.*

delyuerede *ppl.* released from prison, captivity.

demayne *v.* to rule sb., control, govern, command; manage.

demene *v.* to use.

demyde *v.* to sentence sb., impose a penalty upon sb.; condemn sb. to death.

dene *n.* a valley; **down and** ~, hill and dale.

departen *v.* to separate persons, things; *ppl.* **departede**, *her.* separated palewise (i.e. following the line of a pale; vertically).

depe *n.* 1) deep water, sea, river; 2) the bottom of the sea, a ditch.

deraye *n.* confusion, disorder, disturbance.

dere *adj.* 1) excellent, fine, valuable, precious, prized; 2) costly, expensive, high-priced; dear.

dere *v.* 1) to dare; 2) to hurt, injure, damage, wound or grieve sb.; *p.* **deryde**.

des, desse *n.* a raised platform, dais, high table; the place occupied by a king, councilors, judges, etc.

dester, destere, dextere (?errors for **destrer**) *n.* riding horse of noble breed, steed, knight's mount.

dett *n.* debt.

deuers *n.* **do** ~, 1) to do one's duty; 2) to do one's best, do all one can.

deuysede see **deyse**

devoide *v.* to leave, go away, abandon.

devyce *n.* intent, desire; **at** ~, at (one's) pleasure or discretion.

deyse *v.* 1) to inspect sth., observe; inspect secretly, spy out; 2) to array a fighting force; make ready; *p.* **deuysede**.

deynte *n.* 1) excellence, elegance; dignity; 2) a luxury; a precious thing.

dighte, dyghte *v.* 1) to make preparations, get ready; prepare sb., marshal an army for oneself; *refl.* prepare oneself, get ready; 2) to give sth. to sb., assign, render; *3sg.* **dightis**; *ppl.* **ydighte**.

dinen *v.* to make a loud and confused noise, resound; fill (a place) with noise; *p.* **donyd**.

dinge *v.* to beat sb., scourge; overcome in fighting, defeat; ~ **doun**, to knock sb. or sth. down; *intr.* to deal blows; *p.* **dange**.

disagyse, disgyse *n.* disguise.

disches *n. pl.* dishes.

dishonoure, dissaynour, disshonoure *n.* dishonour.

dispitt, dispytte *n.* an act designed to humiliate, insult, or harm someone; humiliation, insult, injury, outrage.

dispoyle *n.* spoils, booty.

dispytte see **dispitt**

dissaynour see **dishonoure**

dissayte *n.* the action or practice of deceiving; concealment of the truth in order to mislead; deception, fraud, cheating, false dealing; deceit.

disshonoure see **dishonoure**

disspyse *v.* to speak ill of sth. or sb., disparage; insult, revile; chide.

distance, distaunce *n.* disagreement, discord, strife; **do** ~ to cause trouble, quarrel;

withowtten ~, 1) indisputably, certainly; 2) without delay or hesitation; instantly, forthwith; 3) indistinguishable.

distroye *v.* to destroy.

doande see **don**

dofe *n.* a dove.

dogge *n.* 1) a dog; 2) as a term of abuse or contempt: a worthless or contemptible person; wretch, cur; 3) said of the Devil.

doghetir, doughetir, doughtire *n.* daughter.

dole *n.* pain, suffering, torment.

doloure *n.* pain, sorrow, ache.

dome *n.* the Last Judgment; the judgment of the soul at death.

don, doo *v.* to perform an action, do sth., carry on an activity; ~ **comaundement**, obey sb.'s command; ~ **to (the) dede**, to put sb. to death; *3sg.* **dose**; *pl.* **ydo**; *ger.* **doande**; **the best doande**, the best-doing, most accomplished.

donyd see **dinen**

dore, pore *n.* a doorway serving as entrance and exit of a building or an enclosure, doorway, gateway, door, gate; *pl.* **dores**.

dorste see **dare**

dose see **don**

doste *n.* dust.

doughetir, doughetire see **doghetir**

doughty, doughety *adj.* brave, valiant.

dounrighte, dounryzt, downrighte, downn-righte *adv.* straight down; right down (to the ground); downright (often used as a mere emphatic).

douten *v.* to be anxious, fearful, frightened.

dowe *n.* of actions or things: to have worth or validity; be useful, profitable, helpful, or effective; avail.

down *n.* 1) a hill or elevation; 2) grass-grown upland; 3) open country; ~ **and dene**, hill and dale.

dowtaunce *n.* 1) uncertainty, doubt; 2) perplexity, wonder; 3) fear, awe.

dowte *n.* anxiety; fear, fright.

dowtous *adj.* unpredictable, uncertain.

drafe, draffe see **drife**

drauen *v.* 1) to pull, tug, draw; pull in harness; 2) to remove the entrails from (a fowl, a fish); 3) to punish sb. by dragging (behind a horse, on a cart or sledge); to be drawn; *p.*

drewe, droghe, droughe.

drede *n.* fear, fright, terror; *v. ppl.* to be afraid, become frightened; see also **adred.**

drewe see **drauen**

drife *v.* 1) to chase sb. or sth., pursue, drive; 2) to propel, push; 3) to hurl a missile, shoot an arrow, cast a stone; 4) to go or move rapidly; hasten, dash, rush, charge, plunge; *p.*

drafe, draffe, drofe; ppl. dreuen.

drisse *v.* to place sth., lay, put, set; to arrange sth., put in order; put (a shield, spear) in position; *3pl. & imp. drisses; p. drissed.*

drofe see **drife**

droghe, droughe see **drauen**

dromounde *n.* 1) a very large medieval ship with rowers and a single sail used both in war and commerce; a dromond; 2) a dromedary.

droune *v.* 1) to drown; 2) to sink a ship; **ben drounede**, be sunk; be lost at sea.

dubler *n.* a plate, a platter.

dule, duelle *v.* to dwell, stay; *p. duellede, duellid, duellyde, duelte.*

duggepere *n.* twelve peers, one of the twelve peers or paladins of Charlemagne; one of the twelve great peers, temporal or ecclesiastic, of France at later times.

dure *v.* to continue, go on, last, hold out.

durste see **dare**

dy *v.* to die; *p. dyed.*

dyche, dyke *n.* an excavation narrow in proportion to its length, a long and narrow hollow dug out of the ground; a ditch used as the boundary of lands or fields, as the defence or part of the defences of a camp, castle, town, or other entrenched place; **clos ~**, a moat.

dyghte see **dighte**

dyng see **dinge**

dynt, dynte *n.* the blow of a weapon or combat missile; stroke of a sword or lance, strike of a shot or arrow, thrust of a spear; **withouten ~** without striking a blow, without a fight; **~ of hand**, a blow dealt by a weapon in sb's hand; the dealing of such a blow; assault by arms.

eft *adv.* a second time, another time, once more, again.

eftsone *adv.* a second time, another time, again, the next time.

egere, egre, egree *adj.* fierce, impetuous, grim, bitter, enraged, angry, irritable; bold, spirited; **with ~ mode**, impetuously, angrily.

eghe *n.* the organ of vision, the eye; **blere the ~**, to hoodwink, deceive, make a fool of sb; *pl. eghne, y3e.*

egre, egree see **egere**

eke *adv. conj.* also, too, in the same manner.

eldare *adj.* old.

emange, emanges see **amang**

eme *n.* 1) an uncle; 2) an ancestor; 3) a nephew.

emonge see **amang**

emyddes *prep. & adv.* in the middle.

enchesoun *n.* that which produces an effect; a cause.

- encontre** *v.* 1) to meet (an adversary) in hostile or armed conflict; to fight or do battle; 2) to meet sb.; *p.* **encontrede.**
- ende** *n.* end; **word and ~**, beginning and end, everything, all; from start to finish.
- endite** *v.* to write or compose a book, poem, letter, etc.
- endlange** *adv.* from end to end, lengthwise, longitudinally; **ouerethrowte and ~**, crosswise and lengthwise; in all directions; everywhere; in every way.
- endynge** *ger.* 1) a coming to an end; the final part; the ending or end of life, death; 2) The result or consequence (of an action); upshot, outcome; **make ~**, to result (in sth); 3) ultimate, ordained, or true purpose or significance; destiny, fate.
- enewe** see **anoghe**
- engyne** *n.* a mode or manner of construction; design; **gude ~**, good design or construction.
- engynours** *n. pl.* engineers.
- engynous** *adj.* ingenious, clever, cunning, skilful.
- enhongrede** *ppl.* starved.
- enkerli** *adv.* eagerly, boldly.
- enoghe** see **anoghe**
- enparelde** *ppl.* decorated, adorned.
- enpayren** *v.* to make worse; to injure the quality of sth, or lessen the worth or power of sth.; *p.* **enpayrede.**
- enseyne** *n.* a flag or standard; a symbol.
- entayle** *n.* the cut, fashion, or style of clothing or armour.
- entent** *n.* purpose or intention; aim or object; reason for doing sth.; **with gud ~**, with good will or intention, kindly; in good faith; cheerfully.
- entire** *v.* to enter; *p.* **entrede.**
- entre** *n.* the act or fact of entering physically; entrance.
- entrede** see **entire**
- envenomede** *ppl.* poisoned.
- erande** *n.* a petition or prayer, especially as presented through an intercessor.
- erbischoppe** *n.* archbishop.
- ere** *v.* to make one's home or abode, dwell, to inhabit a place.
- erle, erlle** *n.* earl; baron; *pl.* **erelis, erles, erlles.**
- ern** *n.* an eagle; a representation of an eagle.
- erroure** *n.* deviation from truth, wisdom, good judgment, sound practice, or accuracy made through ignorance or inadvertence.
- es** see **bee**
- ese** *n.* rest, a break.
- este** *n.* east.
- ett** *v.* to eat; *p.* **ete**; *ppl.* **etyn.**
- euenynge, euynn, euynynge** *n.* evening.
- euereylke, euerilkaman, euerilkane, euerilke, euerilkman, euerilkone, euerylkon**, *pron.* every one, every single one; one and all.
- euyll** *adj.* 1) wicked, depraved, sinful; 2) harmful, hurtful, painful; 3) miserable, wretched, unfortunate; ~ **deth**, a miserable death; ~ **ende (endynge)**, a wretched end, a bad end; **in ~ time**, in an evil time, unluckily.

euyll *n.* 1) moral evil, wickedness; a vice, a sin; a state or condition of being wicked; 2) misfortune, trouble, suffering; punishment; a harmful action, an injury, a wrong; **make** ~, do harm.

euynn *adv.* straight, directly; due.

euynn *n.* see **euenyng**

faa, foo *n.* foe, enemy; *pl.* **faase, fase, fose.**

faamen, famen, fomen *n. pl.* personal enemies, foes; enemies of God.

faase see **faa**

fadir, fadire *n.* father; *gen.* **fadirs.**

faire *adj.* highly to be approved of; splendid, excellent; fine, good; *comp.* **fayrere.**

falle *v.* 1) to fall; 2) to be proper, suitable, or necessary under the circumstances; 3) to happen; 4) suffer misfortune; *3sg.* **falles, fallis, fallys**; *p.* **felle.**

falowe *adj.* 1) reddish or brownish yellow colour; bay horse; 2) sallow, dusky, pale, faded; 3) (of land) arable land, tilled or untilled, lying idle; a fallow.

falsede, falsehede *n.* deceitfulness, infidelity, disloyalty, perfidy, treacherousness.

famen see **faamen**

fande see **fynd**

fane *n.* 1) a flag, standard, banner, or emblem; 2) a long, narrow pennant or streamer flown from the mast of a ship.

fange *v.* to grasp or seize sth., take hold of sth.

farde see **fare** *v.*

fare *n.* provision of food, entertainment, hospitality; feasting.

fare *v.* 1) to travel, journey; go on one's way; 2) go about, wander to get along, fare; to behave; ~ **about**e, busy oneself with an activity; *p.* **farde, ferde; fure; it ferde**, it went, happened, turned out.

fase see **faa**

faste *adj.* 1) strong or firm; 2) firm or stable in purpose, belief, behaviour; steadfast, constant, faithful; 3) quick, speedy.

faste *adv.* stoutly, vigorously; intently, hard.

fates *n. pl.* closed containers for liquids; casks, or barrels.

faughte see **fighte**

fawcheoun *n. mil.* a large, broad sword with a curved blade, a falchion.

fawe see **fayne**

fawkon *n.* the peregrine falcon, especially the female of the species as used in falconry.

fay *n.* faith; **in** ~, under obligation of fealty.

fayne, fawe *adj.* joyful, happy, pleased, delighted, glad.

fayne *adv.* willingly, eagerly.

faynt *adj.* deceitful; unreliable; false.

fayrere see **faire**

faytour *n.* a deceiver, imposter, cheat; **false** ~, often used as a term of abuse.

febilnesse *adj.* weakness.

fechid, fechide see **fett**

fede *v.* to feed.

fekien *v.* to move quickly or restlessly; hustle, struggle; to retreat hurriedly; *p.* **fekyde.**

fekyll *adj.* false, treacherous, deceptive, deceitful.

felaw *n.* fellow; *pl.* **felawes, felaws, felles.**

felawrede *n.* 1) a group of associates or companions bound by leadership or kind; a company;
2) the Christian communion or community on earth.

feld, felde see **felle**

felde *n.* 1) a field; a battle field; 2) (?error for **folde**) the Earth, the world.

fele *adj.* excellent, worthy, proper, good.

fele *adj.* fierce in combat; doughty, spirited, bold, audacious.

fele *indef. num.* many, much; ~ **sythe**, many times, often.

felen *v.* to feel; 3*sg.* **felis.**

felle *adj.* 1) treacherous, deceitful, false; guileful, crafty; villainous, base; wicked, evil; 2) wrathful, ruthless, brutal, cruel; 3) shrewd, subtle; clever;

felle *v.* 1) to knock, strike, cut, or shoot down a man or beast in combat; 2) to bring (buildings, walls, etc.) toppling or crumbling down to the ground; to demolish; 3) to fell an adversary; to overthrow, overcome, vanquish; 3*sg.* **fellys**; *p.* **fele, felled**; **feld**; *ppl.*

fellid, felde.

felles see **felaw**

felonye *n.* villainy, wickedness, sin, crime.

fen *n.* marshland; swamp, slough.

fende, fendy *n.* 1) a demon or devil which has entered into a person to cause madness; 2) Satan; **the ~ of helle**, the Devil of (in) hell; *pl.* **fendis.**

fensable *adj.* capable of defence or of carrying on warfare; armed for conflict.

ferde, ferþe *ord. num.* fourth.

ferde *v.* see **fare** *v.*

ferde *v.* see **ferre** *v.*

ferre *adj.* fierce, bold, proud.

ferre *n.* 1) one who accompanies or travels with another, a companion; an armed supporter, a friend; 2) at the same time, (all) at once, together; **in ~, al in ~** in a group, in company, together.

ferre *v.* 1) to fear sth., to be afraid; 2) to frighten sb., terrify; *ppl.* **ferde** frightened; afraid.

ferly *adv.* 1) terribly, horribly; 2) wonderfully, splendidly; 3) exceedingly, extremely; very.

ferlys *n. pl.* wonderful things, adventures.

ferre *adv. & prep.* at a distance, to a distance, afar, far; ~ **& nere**, ~ **or nere**, ~ **and hende**, far and/or near.

fers *adv.* boldly, courageously; violently.

ferse *adj.* fierce.

ferþe see **ferde** *ord. num.*

fesse *v.* 1) to drive or chase; spur a horse; incite to action; 2) put to flight, rout (an enemy); discomfit.

feste *n.* a feast, religious festival; *v.* to cause something to become firmly fixed together, or in position.

fete *n. pl.* feet.

fetirs *n. pl.* shackles or fetters, especially a foot shackle.

fett *v.* 1) to bring, to fetch; 2) to send for or summon sb.; *p. pl.* **fetten**, *p.* **fechid, fechide**; *ppl.* **fett, fetten, fochede, fotchede**; ~ **forth**: to bring someone out. In the ME and Early MnE period **fett** is gradually replaced by **fecchen**, hence the variant spellings of the *p.* and *ppl.* forms.

fighte *v.* to fight, engage in combat; *p.* **faughte**.

fightis *n. pl.* battles.

fille *n.* an amount sufficient to satisfy need or desire; plenty, abundance; **one's ~**, one's heart's desire.

flaes see **flane**

flane *v.* to strip the skin from a person, or a part of someone's body, to flay; **qwife ~**, to skin someone alive; *imp.* **flaes**.

fle *v.* to retreat, run away, flee; *p.* **flowe**.

fleschely *adj.* belonging to man's physical nature; dominated by physical needs or desires, originating in the bodily appetites, carnal.

fley3 see **flye**

flies *n.* insects that fly, such as a fly; **nought (geven) two ~** to reckon something as of the same value as a fly.

fliede see **flye**

flode *n.* a current in the sea; a flowing body of water; river, stream.

floke *n.* 1) a group of beasts; 2) a group of people; 3) a troop of warriors; an army, a host.

flome *n.* a river, a stream of water; ?the river Jordan.

flone, floreyne *n.* an arrow for the long bow.

floreste *adj.* flourished.

floreyne see **flone**

floryne *n.* 1) a gold coin minted at Florence and stamped with the figure of a lily, a florin; 2) any foreign gold coin; 3) an English gold coin worth 6s. 8d., i.e., a noble.

flowe see **fle**

flyande see **flye**

flye *v.* 1) to fly; 2) to move swiftly on land or water: hasten, hurry, rush, dash, charge; 3) to retreat, run away, flee; 3*sg.* **flies**; *ger.* **flyngande, flyande**; *p.* **fliede, fley3**.

flyngyng *ger.* **comen ~**, to come running, come with a rush.

fochede see **fett**

folde *n.* **many ~**, many a time, often, many, much.

fome *v.* to gush or spurt forth (blood); to flood or cover with blood; *ppl.* **fomede**.

fomen see **faamen**

fonge *v.* to grasp or seize sth., take hold of sth.

foo see **faa**

footemen see **fotemane**

forbare, forbarre see **forbere**

forbere *v.* to forego, relinquish, give up, part with, or lose sth.; to become separated from sb. or sth.; to do without; *p.* **forbare, forbarre**.

forbreste *n. mil.* the front rank of an army in battle, forefront.

forby *adv.* past (in space), by; to that place, that way, nearby.

force *n.* 1) physical strength; power, authority, dignity; 2) account, value, worth, importance; **it is no ~**, it does not matter, it is not important.

forehede, forhede *n.* a company of people; a host; an army, a troop.

foreward, forwarde *n.* an agreement, a contract, treaty, terms of an agreement, bargain, promise, oath; **binden ~**, to make an agreement; to bind oneself by a contract, treaty; **hold a ~** keep a pledge; to carry out a contract.

forfare *v.* to perish, be destroyed; go to ruin.

forfetoure *n.* the loss of rights, property or money; forfeiture.

forgetyn *v.* to forget; *p.* **forgot.**

forgo *v.* to give up sth., to surrender or part with sth.

forlayne see **forlede**

forlede *v.* to lead astray, mislead, seduce; *ppl.* **forlayne.**

forlore, forlorne *adj.* alone and unhappy; left alone and not cared for; abandoned.

forne *adv.* before (in time), formerly, previously.

forowtten *prep.* without, lacking; ~ **ly**, without lie.

forsaken *v.* to repudiate sb., withdraw allegiance from; especially, to disavow or deny God, the saints, etc; *p.* **forsoke.**

forschippe *n.* the fore part of a ship or vessel, the prow.

forsoke see **forsaken**

forsothe *adv.* for a truth or fact, as a fact, truthfully.

forthe, forthi *adv.* 1) of motion or direction: forward, onward, ahead; 2) of time, afterward, hereafter, thereafter, later; 3) for this reason, therefore.

forthinke *v.* to regret having done something; *p.* **forthoughte.**

forthire *adv.* forward (in space), ahead.

forthirmaste *adv.* foremost; firstly, first of all.

forthoughte see **forthinke**

forthwith *adv.* at once, immediately.

forthwith *prep.* together with, along with, in company with.

forwarde see **foreward**

fose see **faa**

fotchede see **fett**

fote *n.* foot.

fote-hate *adv.* in haste, quickly, speedily, immediately, suddenly.

fotemane *n.* a soldier who fights on foot as distinguished from a knight; a foot soldier armed with spear, axe, or pike; an archer; *pl.* **fotemen, footemen.**

fothire *n.* a heavy weight; a burden.

foules, fowalle *n.* 1) a domesticated fowl, a table fowl; poultry; 2) a bird; especially a wild bird.

foundre *v.* of a blow: to sink in; *p.* **foundred.**

founden see **fynd**

fowalle see **foules**

fowndyn see **fynd**

fownte-stane *n.* font-stone, baptismal font.

foysoun, fuysoun *n.* abundance of food or drink; **grete** ~, plenty, profusion.

fra *prep.* from.

fraghte *v.* to load a ship with goods, cargo, passengers; *ppl.* **fraughte.**

frame *v.* to join or frame timber; *p.* **framide.**

frappe *v.* to strike, beat.

fraughte see **fraghte**

frayelle *n.* a basket, especially for dry fruit.

fre *adj.* 1) free in rank or condition, having the social status of a noble or a freeman; 2) generous, open-handed.

frehaldande *n.* a freeholder.

frely *adv.* nobly, generously, magnanimously.

freres *n. pl.* a member of one of the religious mendicant orders, a friar.

frwyte *n.* fruit.

frythe *n.* 1) a royal forest, a game preserve; 2) a meadow; any wooded area, woodland; wilderness.

full *adv.* as an intensive particle with *adj.* very, quite, most; much; many.

fure *v.* 1) to kindle a fire; 2) set sth. on fire; 3) to burn.

fure *v.* see **fare** *v.*

furrou **Gregis**, a highly inflammable composition used in warfare; Greek fire; wild fire. See Explanatory Notes 1912.

furthe *adv.* forth.

fuyssoun see **foysoun**

fy *interj.* an exclamation expressing contempt, disapproval, or indignation; ~ **a debylls**.

fyges *n. pl.* figs.

fyle *n.* a worthless person, a base fellow; a wretch or rascal.

fyn *adj.* excellent, of supreme or select quality.

fyn, fyne *n.* a money payment made in order to obtain release from imprisonment or exemption from punishment; a sum of money exacted as punishment for an offense; **maken a ~**, to pay a fine.

fynd *v.* to find; *p.* **fande**; *ppl.* **founden, fowndyn**.

fyndly *adv.* 1) superbly, handsomely, finely; 2) fully, thoroughly; ~ **and wele**, very well indeed, thoroughly.

ga, gaa, gon, goo *v.* to go; *imp.* **gase, gose**; *p.* **went, pl. wentyn**; *ppl.* **gane, gone**.

gadirde *v.* to gather; *p.* **gadrede**.

gafe see **giffe**

galaye, galy *n.* a low flat-built sea-going vessel with one deck, propelled by sails and oars; a galley; see Explanatory Note 1433.

gale *n.* speech, talking.

galy see **galaye**

game, gamen *n.* joy, happiness; pleasure, delight; **no ~**, no laughing matter.

gamen *v.* to rejoice, be merry; joke, jest, play; talk pleasantly.

gan, gun *aux.* with infinitive, it is used as an auxiliary verb with past meaning as in the MnE emphatic construction 'did+infinitive' to form a past simple tense: **gan eten**, did eat, ate.

gange *v.* to walk, travel on foot, go.

gapen *v.* to open the mouth wide; of the mouth: be opened wide; *p.* **gapide**.

garre *aux.* as auxiliary or quasi-auxiliary with infinitive having a personal subject: to cause sb. to do sth., make or compel sb. to do or experience sth.

gart, garte, gerte *aux.* 1) used with infinitive as causative in past tense: made, caused (to); 2) used with infinitives to form phrases denoting actions or events with past meaning, e.g. **garte ordeyne**, ordered.

gase see **ga**

gate *v.* see **getyn**

gaye *adj.* ~ **and stowte** of beautiful appearance, splendidly adorned.

gere *n.* fighting equipment; armour, weapons.

gerte *aux.* see **garte**

gerte *v.* see **girde**

gerthis *n.* belt or strap passing under a horse's belly to secure a saddle.

gesse *v.* 1) to infer sth. from observation; perceive, find out; 2) to consider sth. to be sth., regard sth. as sth.; 3) to assume or suppose, guess; *3pl.* **gessis**; *ppl.* **igessyd**.

geste, jeste *n.* 1) a poem or song about heroic deeds, a chivalric romance; a poem or song of any kind; a prose chronicle or history, a prose romance or tale; 2) an inscription, a picture (l. 5234); see Explanatory Note 5236.

getyn *v.* to get, obtain; *p.* **gate**.

gif, giff, giffe, 3iff, 3ife *conj.* provided that, on condition that, in case that, if.

giffe, gyffe *v.* to give; *imp.* **giffas**; *p.* **gaffe**.

gile *n.* a crafty or fraudulent trick; dishonesty, treachery.

giltyn *adj.* overlaid or decorated with gold, gilded.

girde *v.* 1) to put a belt or girdle about sb.; wrap oneself about the middle; tie or bind sb.; 2) to cut or sever sth; *p.* **gerte**.

girdill *n.* a belt worn around the waist, used for fastening clothes or for carrying a sword or purse.

girdill-stede *n.* the waist, the middle of the body.

girnyde see **grinte**

girse *n.* grass; herbage in general.

girth, grythe *n.* a truce, cessation of fighting; absence of hostility; amity, good will, friendship, peace; **pes and ~**, peace, law and order.

glade see **gliden**

gladi *v.* to make joyful, fill with joy or bliss; cheer; *p.* **gladide**.

glent *v.* to move or turn quickly to one side; dodge, flinch.

glewemen *n. pl.* those who entertain professionally with singing, playing instrumental music, story-telling, etc; a minstrel, gleeman.

gliden *v.* to slip downward, descend, fall; *p.* **glade**.

glose *v.* to obscure the truth of sth., falsify; speak with blandishment, flattery, or deceit.

glosynge *ger.* smooth or deceitful talk; adulation, blandishment, cajolery, flattery.

glotoun *n.* a person with an intemperate or special appetite for food or drink; a glutton or drunkard.

gloue *n. arm.* glove or gauntlet used for armour.

gnawe *v.* to gnaw sth. with the teeth; bite, chew, nibble; ~ **the groundes**, to bite the dust, die; *p.* **gnewe**.

golde *adj.* golden; ~ **wyre**, gold thread, fine gold wire, silver wire covered with gold leaf.

gon, gone see **ga**

golde *n.* the metal gold; ~ **fyne**, pure gold.

gorgere *n. arm.* a piece of armour covering the front of the neck, a gorget; see Explanatory Note 297.

gose *n.* a goose.

gose *v.* see **ga**

gouerny *v.* to rule a country, people, city, etc. by exercise of sovereign or delegated authority; to command an armed force.

grame *adj.* angry, furious, stern, hostile.

grame *n.* 1) rage, anger, hatred, hostility; 2) grief, sorrow; 3) harm, injury, torment.

grande see **grinde**

grant mercy *n. & interj.* (OF) used as an expression of gratitude: thanks, many thanks.

granynge *ger.* the act of groaning or sighing, lamentation.

graunte, grawnte *v.* 1) to consent, assent, to grant; 2) to promise; *p.* **graunted, grauntede.**

graythe *v.* to prepare food, cook; *p.* **graythede.**

grefe *n.* 1) anger, hostility, spite; **take to ~**, to take sth. amiss, take umbrage or offence at sth.;
2) sorrow, mental distress.

Greke *adj.* Greek; ~ **See**, the Mediterranean, especially the Adriatic and Ionian seas.

grene *n.* a grassy place, a field, the ground, the green earth.

grese *n.* grease.

gret, grete, grett *adj.* 1) great; powerful; 2) numerous; *superl.* **gretteste.**

grete *v.* to greet; 3. *pl.* **gretyn**; *imp.* **gretis.**

gretely, gretly *adv.* greatly; much.

gretis see **grete** *v.*

gretyn see **grete** *v.*

grett, gretteste see **gret**

Griffoun *n.* a Greek person; the Greeks.

grinde *v.* to break sth. into small particles; reduce sth. to powder by crushing or braying; *p.*
grande.

grinte *v.* to grind one's teeth, gnash; *p.* **girnyde.**

griste *n.* gristle; the gristle of the nose.

grithe *n.* mercy, clemency; pardon.

grome *n.* a groom; a youth.

gromme *n.* ?mire, slime, filth.

grote *n.* 1) a piece, fragment, particle, speck; **euerilke ~**, every bit, every single one; 2) ?error for grotes, grain hulled, coarsely ground, or crushed; oatmeal; 3) an English silver coin equivalent to four pennies; any of several small European silver coins.

grounde, grownde *n.* ground; **bringe to ~**, to strike (sb. or sth.) to the ground, overpower (sb. or sth.), overcome, subdue.

grym *adj.* fierce, cruel.

grymly *adj.* 1) terrifying in appearance, hideous, horrible; 2) dangerous, formidable; deadly.

grythe see **girth**

gud, gude *adj.* good.

gun see **gan**

gunn *n.* a siege engine that casts missiles; ballista, mangonel, trebuchet; *pl.* **gunnys.**

guttis *n. pl.* entrails, viscera.

gyle *n.* a crafty or fraudulent trick; a plot; stratagem, wile; a lie.

gyng *n.* a band of warriors, a troop; an army or host.

gynn *n.* 1) inventive talent, ingenuity, cleverness, skill; 2) *mil.* a machine or structure used in assaulting or defending fortifications, a siege machine or tower; 3) a weapon of personal combat.

gyoure *n.* a ruler, king; a military leader, commander.

gyse *n.* guise, appearance, disguise.

3aa *interj.* an exclamation used to attract attention.

3are *adj.* prepared, ready; ready for sth.

zare *adv.* readily, promptly; quickly, soon; at once.

zarme *v.* to wail, to bellow; *p.* **zarmede**.

zate *n.* gate; *pl.* **zatis**.

ze, zee *pron.* *2pl.* you; sometimes, ostensibly addressing an individual but apparently referring to the group of which the individual is representative.

zede *v.* to go, move, walk, travel, proceed; *p.* **zode**; *pl.* **zoden**.

zee *adv.* certainly, truly, yes; **sayse ~ or naye**.

zelde *v.* 1) to relinquish sb. or sth. voluntarily, give up; 2) to surrender, yield; 3) to pay (tax, tribute, tithes, etc.) under an imposed obligation; ~ **homage**, to pay homage; *ppl.*

zoldin.

zelve *v.* to boast, brag.

zelpynge *ger.* the act of bragging, boasting.

zeme *n.* **taken** ~, to take care of sb. or sth.

zerde *n.* 1) a yard; an enclosed area around a castle or an estate, the grounds; 2) a stick, pole, rod.

zere *n.* a year.

zerne *adv.* eagerly, in a keen way; forcefully, firmly; sternly; at once, immediately, without delay.

zete, zitt *adv.* yet; **ever** ~, always before, always.

ziff, zife see **gif**

zisterdaye, zistirday, zistirdaye *adv.* yesterday.

zo see **zaa**

zode, zoden see **zede**

zoldin see **zelde**

zone *dem. adj.* that.

zonge, z yng, z ynge *adj.* young.

zottyn *ppl.* cast (metal); ~ **bras** cast copper or bronze, brass.

zou, zow, zowe *pron.* *2sg.* you; see **ze**.

zour, zoure *poss. adj.* *2sg or pl.* your.

z yng, z ynge see **zonge**

habide, habyde *v.* 1) to wait, be patient; to remain in a place, stay, sojourn, live, dwell; 2) to face sb. in combat; to dare to do battle; *p.* **habade**.

hafe *v.* to have; *3sg.* **hase**; *p.* **hade, hadde, hafed**.

hair, hare *n.* 1) an individual hair of a human or an animal; the hair, fur; 2) (of horses) the distinctive type of sort or kind; **of one** ~, of one colour and external quality; hence, the same sort, kind, nature, stamp, character.

halde *n.* imprisonment, confinement; captivity.

halde *v.* to hold; *imp.* **haldis**.

hale *adj.* healthy, cured; in good condition.

halfendele, halfuendele *n.* 1) a half portion of anything; 2) an arithmetical half.

hally *adv.* completely, entirely, fully.

halse *n.* the neck; see **swire**.

hame *n.* home.

hande see **ande**

harawdes *n. pl.* heralds; **harawdes of armys**.

harde see **here** *v.*

hardy *adj.* 1) strong in battle, fearless of danger, stout-hearted; 2) audacious, presumptuous, rash, foolhardy.

hare see **hair**

harmes, harmys *n. pl. mil.* the weapons of a warrior; defensive arms and armour.

harnasse, harnays *n. sg. or pl.* 1) personal fighting equipment, body armour; armour and weapons; 2) saddle pack or bag; 3) a traveller's baggage.

harueste *n.* the season of autumn, variously dated, sometimes from mid-September to November or December; it may also refer to the Nativity of the Virgin Mary, 8 September.

hastyng *ger.* speeding, hastening; **in** ~, hastily, speedily.

hat see **highte**.

hatten see **highte**

hauere *n.* the cereal grain, oats; the oat plant.

haulle *n.* hall.

hawbergoun *n. arm.* haubergen: a shorter version of the **hawberke**, a shirt made of mail, usually laced down the sides; see Explanatory Note 374.

hawberke *n. arm.* a mail shirt, generally extending down to defend the legs; see Explanatory Note 374.

hawnte *v.* to do sth., carry out, execute, perform.

hayl *adj.* free from disease, infirmity, or injury; healthy, sound, unharmed.

hayle *n.* health, welfare, good fortune; **euyll** ~, bad fortune; unfortunately.

haythyne, heythyn *n.* heathen, pagan; ~ **men**.

heche *n.* the lower half of a divided door; a small door, gate, or wicket.

hed, hede, heuede *n.* the human or animal head.

hede *n.* attention, notice, regard.

hede *v.* to behead; *imp.* **hedis**; *ppl.* **hedide**.

hedir, hedire *adv.* to or toward this place, in this direction, hither.

hedis see **hede**

hedouse *adj.* 1) terrifying, horrible, dreadful; 2) great in size, huge, enormous.

hed-schode *n.* the crown of the head.

hee, hy, hye *v.* to go quickly, travel rapidly, hurry to or from a place or person, to hasten; *p.* **hied, hiede**.

heghe *adj.* high.

helde *v.* to fall, sag, collapse.

hele *v.* to conceal sth., hide

helme *n. arm.* a fully enclosed defence for the head developed during the twelfth century; see Explanatory Note 351.

helpe *v.* to help; *imp.* **helpis**.

hem *obj. pron.* them.

hende *adj.* having the approved courtly or knightly qualities, noble, courtly, well-bred, refined, sportsmanlike.

hendely, hendly *adv.* nobly, in a courtly way.

hent *v.* 1) to receive a blow; 2) to take hold of sb. or sth., seize, grasp; 3) to encounter sth., come into contact with; find; 4) ~ **oute**, take sb. or sth. out or away; draw a sword, knife; pull out a spear.

hepis *n. pl.* heaps.

herde see **here** *v.*

here *poss. adj.* their.

here, heryn *v.* to hear; *imp.* **heris**; *p.* **harde, herde.**

herken *v.* to listen attentively, take heed, harken.

herne-panne *n.* the cranium, brainpan, skull.

hert *n.* the human or animal heart.

heryn see **here** *v.*

herytage *n.* something legally inherited or inheritable; inherited or inheritable property, right, office, sovereignty, etc.

hespe *n.* a fastening for a door, gate, chest; a hinged clasp of metal which passes over a staple and is secured by a pin; a hasp.

heste *n.* a command, order, bidding, instruction, admonition.

hete *n.* heat.

hethyn *adv.* from this place, hence, away.

hethyng *n.* a feeling or attitude of contempt, scorn; **on** ~ disdainfully.

heuede see **hed**

hewe *v.* to cut or strike with a weapon in combat; cut sb. or sth. with a weapon; *p.* **hewede.**

heythenesse, heythynesse, heythynesse *n.* 1) the state or condition of being pagan; paganism, heathenism; 2) territory inhabited or ruled by pagans, a heathen country; Muslim territory or country; heathen world.

heythyn see **haythyne**

hide *n.* skin, complexion; **of** ~ **and** ~, in skin and complexion, in every way, entirely.

hied, hiede see **hee** *v.*

highte *n.* 1) height, altitude, stature; 2) **upon** ~, a) in a high position, b) out loud, loudly.

highte *v.* to hope for sth.; to look forward to sth.

highte *v.* 1) to give sb. or sth. a specified proper name; to name sb. or sth.; *refl.* call oneself sth.; 2) to give a promise, make a vow; to promise sth; *p.* **hat**; *ppl.* **hatten.**

hir, hire *pron.* her.

hiynge, hy, hyc *n.* haste, hurry; **in (on)** ~, at once, immediately, quickly, very soon; in haste.

holde *adj.* loyal.

holde, holden *v.* 1) to regard sb., sth. in a certain manner; 2) to rule a kingdom, land, city, stronghold or people, to govern; *ppl.* **holden.**

homage *n.* the ceremony or act of acknowledging one's faithfulness to his feudal lord; **zelde** or **bere** ~, to pay homage.

honde see **ande**

hondrethe, hundrethe *num.* one hundred.

hongrye, hungre *adj.* hungry.

hool *adj.* healthy, whole.

hore *adj.* grey, greyish white especially of the hair or beard.

hose *n. arm.* armour for the lower legs, leg-guards, greaves; hose of chain mail.

hote *v.* to give a command, bid.

houe *n.* **on** ~ ?apart, at a distance.

houe *v.* 1) to wait in readiness or expectation; lie in wait, lurk; wait around, hang about; 2) to move onward, proceed, go; ride; *p.* **houed, houede.**

- hownde** *n.* as a term of abuse: 1) a detested or despicable person; 2) an unbeliever, infidel, pagan.
- hundrethe** see **hondrethe**
- hungre** see **hongrye**
- hurda** *n.* a hurdle used for defence in battles and sieges; a palisade, bulwark, or other structure made of hurdles; *pl.* **hurdasse**.
- hy, hye** *n.* see **hiynge**
- hy, hye** *v.* see **hee**
- hye** *adj.* high, noble.
- hye** *n.* haste, hurry; **on** ~, at once, immediately, quickly, very soon.
- hymselfe, hymseluen** *refl. pron.* himself.
- hyngande** *ger.* hanging.
- hynys** *n.* a household, servants collectively.
- hythen** *adv.* from this present time; after that time, later.
- igessyd** see **gesse**
- ilke** *pron.* same, very, aforementioned, given, specified; every.
- ille** *adj.* 1) deficient, incompetent, unsatisfactory, inferior, poor, inadequate; 2) diseased, ill.
- insonder, insondire, insondre, insowndre** *adv.* to pieces, into two parts.
- irynd** *n.* iron.
- iryndns** *n. pl.* shackles.
- ischewede** see **schewe**
- ismete** see **smytte**
- ivengid** *ppl.* avenged.
- iwisse, ywisse** *adv.* certainly, for certain.
- jauelere** *n.* a jailer.
- jeste** see **geste**
- juggement, juggment** *n.* judgement.
- kan, kane** *v.* can, to have ability, capability, or skill: be able to do sth., know how to do sth.; *p.* **couthe**.
- ken** *v.* to tell, teach.
- kene** *adj.* 1) bold, brave, fearless, stalwart, warlike; 2) eager to do sth., ready, daring; 3) fierce, savage, cruel, bellicose; 4) sharp-pointed, sharp-edged, cutting, trenchant.
- kepe** *n.* attention, heed, notice; **taken** ~, to take notice, take heed.
- kepe** *v.* to keep; *p.* **kepide**.
- kerchofe** *n.* a woman's headcloth or veil, a kerchief; a handkerchief; *pl.* **kerchofes, kerchoffes**.
- kerue** *v.* to carve; *p.* **kerued**.
- keste** see **caste**
- kirke** *n.* church.
- kirnells, kirnelles** *n. pl.* indentations or embrasures in the battlement of a wall; battlements.
- knafe** *n.* 1) a servant, attendant, page; messenger; 2) a commoner, peasant; 3) a footsoldier; *pl.* **knaues**.
- kne** *n.* the knee.

kneche *n.* a bundle of weeds, hay, etc., a bunch, sheaf.

knelen *v.* to kneel.

knokkes *n. pl.* blows.

knytt *v.* to fasten sth. with a thread, rope, etc.; tie sth. to sth. else.

kyd see **kythe**

kyn *n.* 1) a tribe; clan, family; a race; 2) a kinsman, a relative; *coll.* kinsfolk, kindred, relatives.

kynde *n.* a tribe; clan, family; a race.

kyndely *adj.* rightful, lawful.

kythe *v.* 1) to make sth. known without words; reveal a fact, an idea, an action; show that sth. is true, what sth. is; 2) to exhibit, show; *imp.* **kythes**; *p.* **kyd**.

ladill *n.* a ladle used for pouring, stirring, etc.

ladyn *v.* to supply a ship with cargo, provisions, supplies, etc.; fill, load; *ppl.* **ladyn**, of ships: loaded with men or things.

lafe *n.* a loaf of bread.

lakk *n.* fault, failing; misdeed, offense, sin; disfigurement, blemish (spiritual, moral, or physical); **withowten** ~, without fault.

lange *adj.* 1) long, extensive, far-reaching; 2) of periods of time: of great duration, long-lasting; **a ~ houre**, for a whole hour; *comp.* **langare**, **longare**; **no langare**, no longer.

laste *adv.* at last, finally, after all others, the last thing; **althir** ~, last of all.

late, **latyn**, **lete** *v.* 1) to grant sb. land, rights, privileges; 2) to give up sth. material, surrender sth.; 3) to leave (sb. or sth. in or at a place), depart from, leave behind; 4) to make sb. do sth., cause sb. or sth. to do sth.; 5) to allow sb. to do, have, or be sth., permit, to let; 6) to neglect sth., disregard sth.; ~ **in**, set sth. in, insert; put sb. or sth. in; ~ **sen**, to cause or allow sb. to see, know, or learn sth.; as exclamation: look here, see here, hey; *imp.* **lates**, **latis**.

lathe *adj.* unwilling, reluctant; disinclined to do sth.

lathe *n.* something hateful, injury, harm, misfortune.

lathe *v.* to urge sb. to do sth.; to incite sb.

latimer *n.* an interpreter, translator.

latyn see **late**

lauacyonn *n.* the elevation of the consecrated host and chalice in the mass.

laueroke *n.* male lark.

launce *n. arm.* a horseman's spear; a throwing spear, javelin; a lance; see Explanatory Note 2119.

laver *v.* (AN) to wash (one's hands before a meal).

lawe *adj.* low; ~ **and hy**, valleys and hills.

lawe, **laye** *n.* 1) a rule or set of rules prescribing or restraining conduct, law; 2) a religious system, religion, faith; 3) what is right, right, justice; the legal way; **bi** ~, duly; **landys** ~, the law(s) of the land.

layde, **layed** see **laye** *v.*

layden see **laye** *v.*

laye *n.* see **lawe** *n.*

laye *v.* 1) to put sb. or sth., place, set; 2) to place sb., oneself in a recumbent posture, lay down; rest, lean; 3) lodge sb., provide with a place to sleep; 4) ~ **in[to]**, to lay an oar

into the sea, as an accompaniment of setting sail; to lay in the oars, i.e. to unship them; 5) to knock sb. or sth. down; ~ **in**, make an attack; ~ **on**, to deal blows with vigour; to make vigorous attack, assail, strike; 6) to stake sth. as a wager, bet sth.; *p.* **layde**, **layed**; *pl.* **layden**; *imp.* **lays**.

layke *n.* 1) amusement, diversion; fun, mirth, joy; a game; sporting contest; 2) a fight, contest, battle; an encounter; an assault, attack.

leberde *n.* 1) the leopard; 2) one who is like a leopard in cunning and cleverness; 3) *her.* a lion passant guardant; see Explanatory Note 5808; *pl.* **leberdis**.

leche *n.* a physician or surgeon; **saule** ~, a priest, confessor.

lefe *adj.* dear, beloved.

lefe, leue *n.* permission to depart; leave.

lefe, leue *v.* to grant sth. to sb., grant sth.; to give permission; authorize.

lefe, leue *v.* 1) to take one's departure; depart from sb., a place; 2) to stay, remain, tarry, dwell.

lefe, leue *v.* 1) to believe in God, etc.; ~ **in**, have faith in God, an idol; 2) to rely on sb., trust; 3*sg.* **leuys**.

legges *n. pl.* legs.

leman, lemane *n.* beloved, lover.

leme *n.* a flame, fire.

lepe *v.* to leap; *p.* **lepped, lepe**.

lere, leren *v.* 1) to learn; 2) to teach; *p.* **lerede**.

leryd *adj.* learned, educated; able to read Latin.

lese *n.* 1) what is false; falsehood, untruth, lying, lies; 2) a leash.

lese *v.* to lose, to suffer loss; *p.* **lese**.

lesse, lese *adv.* less; **both ~ and mare**, altogether, entirely.

lesse *conj.* that not, lest.

lesse *n.* 1) something that is smaller in size; 2) persons of lower station or rank, more lowly ones.

lesynge *n.* the telling of a lie or lies; **withowten** ~, without lying, in truth, truly; often used as a rhyme tag.

lete *n.* obstruction, obstacle; hindrance, impediment; **withouten** ~, without delay, without interruption; without fail.

lete *v.* see **late**

lett *v.* to hinder sb., impede, delay, slow up.

lettyng *ger.* ~ **of**, hindering or preventing of an action.

leue *n.* see **lefe** *n.*

leue *v.* see **lefe** *v.*

leuen *v.* to live.

leuour *n.* a lever, crowbar; a bar used as a weapon; a carrying pole.

leuys see **lefe** *v.*

levynnyng *n.* lightning, a flash of lightning; a thunderbolt.

lewed, lewede, lewyd *adj.* uneducated, ignorant; unlettered, unable to read Latin; lay, non-clerical.

leyen see **ligge**

liche *n.* an equal, peer; **was non his** ~, he had no peer.

lifte *n.* the air; **foules of the** ~, birds of the air.

ligge, lye *v.* 1) to be in a reclining posture, recline, lie at ease; 2) to be down or cast down; lie wounded or unable to move; 3) of an army, a king: to be encamped; 4) to be lodged, reside, dwell, sojourn; 5) to be situated; 6) to be in prison or in bonds; 3sg. **ligges, lyes**; 3pl. **leyen**; *ger.* **lyande**; *ppl.* **liggen**.

lighte *v.* to arrive (at a place), come (to sb.), stop (in a place).

lofe *n. naut.* a spar holding out and down the windward tack of a square sail while going into the wind.

loge *v.* of an army: to encamp; return to camp; *p.* **loged**.

lo, loo *interj.* 1) indeed, surely, certainly; 2) ah, see, behold, look.

longare see **lange**

looke, luke *v.* to look; *imp.* **lukes**.

lore *n.* loss in battle, casualties.

lorne *ppl. adj.* 1) kept (in prison); kept at a distance; 2) lost, perished, ruined; 3) abandoned, left alone; bereft of; lonely, desolate, wretched.

lose *n.* reputation, fame, renown; **gude** ~, good reputation, fame.

loue, luffe *v.* 1) to feel affection or friendship for sb., to love; 2) to love God, to worship and obey; *p.* **louede**.

loughe *v.* to laugh.

lounge *n.* lungs.

louren *v.* to frown or scowl for fear, anger or hate.

lousengerse *n.* an evil or traitorous counselor; a rascal, coward.

louynge *ger.* praise, honour, fame, glory; praise of God; **giff** ~ to worship, praise.

lowde *adj.* loud.

lowrre *v.* to frown or scowl for anger or hate; *p.* **lowrred**.

lufe, luffe *n.* love.

luffe *v.* see **loue**

lufly *adj.* lovable, beautiful; ~ **lorde**, gracious lord, dear lord, beloved lord.

luke see **looke**

lyande see **ligge**

lyarde *adj. & n.* 1) as *adj.* of a horse: spotted with white or silver grey; also in names of horses; 2) as *n.* a horse spotted with white or silver grey.

lycour *n.* 1) a liquid; a drink; 2) a spice, condiment.

ly *n.* a sheltered position or condition; calmness, peace, tranquillity.

lye, lyes see **ligge**

lyzt *adj.* free of pain; relieved of an illness.

lyfe *v.* to live; *ger.* **lyffande**, alive.

lykyng *ger.* a feeling or experience of sensual pleasure, especially sexual pleasure.

lyste *v. impers.* **hem** ~ they wish, desire, choose or wished, desired, etc. (to do sth.).

lythe, lybe *adj.* 1) gentle, kindly, friendly; meek, obedient; 2) smooth to the taste or touch, pleasant, agreeable.

lythe *v.* to listen, be attentive; to hear; ~ **and here**, pay attention and listen.

ma, mare, moo, more *adj. adv.* more; ~ **and lesse**, the greater and the lesser; all.

mace, masse *n. arm.* a club used in warfare; see Explanatory Notes **3804, 4619**.

maier, mayere *n.* the mayor of a town.

make *v.* to make; *imp.* **makis**; *p.* **maked**; *ppl.* **madyn**.

males, malys *n. pl.* bags, pouches.

maletalent *n.* ill will, anger, hatred, hostility; **forgeven** ~, to give up one's anger, hatred, or displeasure.

malycoly *n.* 1) one of the four humours, black bile; a bodily fluid which helps to form and nourish the body; 2) the complexion, or temperament, dominated by black bile; 3) a mental disorder or emotional disease due to unnatural melancholy; 4) anger, rage, hatred.

malys see **males**

malysone *n.* a curse, a malediction.

manace *n.* 1) the act of threatening or fact of being threatened; 2) a threat.

manchippys *n.* dignity, honour; **hold up our** ~, maintain or raise our spirits.

manne *n.* a man.

manners *n.* the way something is happening or has taken place; the circumstances.

manngonelle, mawngonelle *n. mil.* a machine used for hurling stones or other matter in the siege or defence of castles or cities; see Explanatory Note **1885**.

marchal *n.* the chief officer of a kingdom, steward.

mare see **ma**

marke *n.* 1) a monetary unit equivalent to 160 pennies or 2/3 of a pound sterling; 2) a mark of gold equivalent to 6 lbs. in silver.

maruel *v.* 1) to be filled with wonder, surprise, admiration, or puzzlement; 2) to marvel at sth.; *p.* **maruellde**.

maryn *n.* the seacoast; a region or area along a seacoast.

masse see **mace**

mate *adj.* helpless, powerless; overcome, defeated; confounded, discomfited.

matyns *n. eccl.* matins, the first canonical hour (usually comprising matins and lauds), recited at midnight or in the early morning.

mawgre *adv.* nonetheless, notwithstanding; in spite of everything.

mawgre *n.* shame, dishonour, disgrace, blame, reproach.

mawgrethe *prep.* with genitive: against (one's) will; in spite of (oneself); despite all that (one) can or could do.

mawngonelle see **manngonelle**

mayde, mayden *n.* maiden; virgin; *pl.* **maydynes**.

mayere see **maier**

mayn, mayne *n.* physical strength, vigour.

mayn *v.* (?error for **maynt**) 1) to help sb. or sth., assist, support; 2) to support an evildoer or an evil cause.

maystir *n.* high official, civil or military; a governor, ruler, leader.

maystry *n.* 1) control, dominance, rulership; 2) the upper hand, victory in a contest; 3) superior strength, force, violence; 4) special skill or knowledge, mastery of a subject or an art; a special method or technique; a master skill.

maytene *v.* to maintain an opinion, assert that sth. is the case.

me *pron.* one, someone, a person; they, people.

mede *n.* mead, drink in general.

mede *n.* 1) a gift; a material reward; compensation; ransom; reparation; **for no** ~, under no circumstances, by any means whatsoever; **for** ~, as compensation, as wages; 2) moral consequence or spiritual reward; requital, retribution; **to** ~, as recompense, in return.

- mede** *n.* a meadow; clearing, open field; meadowland, a tract of grassland.
- medlaye** *v.* to interfere, intervene.
- megyre** *adj.* thin or enfeebled by hunger, wasted away, emaciated.
- mekely** *adv.* 1) humbly; 2) courteously, graciously, politely.
- mekil, mekill, myche,** *adv.* much; many; *adj.* great; large, big.
- mele** *n.* meal made by grinding grain usually wheat.
- mene** *v.* to say sth., assert; speak, express; to mention, tell.
- menzee** *n.* a household, household servants and officers; retinue.
- ment** *v.* to intend, plan, attempt; *ppl.* **mynt.**
- mervayle** *n.* a thing, act, or event that causes astonishment or surprise; a wonderful feat; an unnatural occurrence or circumstance; a wonder of nature or art; a monster or monstrosity.
- mes** *n.* a course or a dish of prepared food sent to, and served at, the table.
- meschaunce** *n.* 1) a mishap, piece of bad luck, calamity, injury, destruction, death; 2) wrongdoing, wicked behavior, sin.
- messe** *n.* mass.
- mete** *v.* to meet, *p.* **mett.**
- mete, metis, mette** *n.* a meal, food.
- midwarde, mydwerde** *n.* the middle of a thing, centre spatially.
- mirre, myre** *n.* bog, marsh, swampland; quagmire.
- misbyleue, mysbyleue** *v.* to hold a false religious belief; *p.* **misbyleuyde, mysbyleuede.**
- miselfe, myselven** *refl. pron.* myself.
- missay, myssay** *v.* to speak ill of sb.; insult, slander, abuse; *p.* **myssaide.**
- mistere** *n.* a difficult or dangerous situation, plight, distress, peril, need, time of need.
- modde** *n.* a defensive ditch, moat, fosse; boundary ditch.
- modere** *n.* a mother.
- mon** *v.* 1) as auxiliary in future indicative: shall, will (with *inf.*); 2) in constructions which some grammars would regard as subjunctive or conditional: would, should, may, might (with *inf.*); 3) to be compelled to do or suffer sth., must; ought to, should; 4) to be able, be permitted, can, may; could, might.
- mone** *n.* the moon.
- mony** *adv.* many.
- moo** see **ma**
- more** *n.* a larger number of things or persons.
- morne** *v.* 1) to grieve, sorrow; 2) to worry; be anxious or troubled.
- morne, mournynge** *n.* the morning.
- moserde, mossarde** *n.* term of contempt: fool, dolt, idler, villain, wretch.
- mote** *v. subj.* to be allowed, be permitted, may.
- mounde** *n.* excellence, value; **of so mekil** ~, most excellent, of great value.
- mountenaunce** *n.* amount, quantity, extent.
- mournynge** see **morne**
- mowe** *v.* to be able to do sth.: be capable of.
- moyle** *n.* a mule.
- myche** see **mekill**
- myddis** *n.* middle; **in** ~, in the middle.
- mydwerde** see **midwarde**

myght, myȝt *n.* 1) military might; individual prowess, courage, fortitude; 2) ability, capability, capacity; a skill, knowledge; **don one's ~**, to do all one can.

myn *poss. pron.* mine.

mynede *ppl. mil.* mined.

mynstralle *n.* an instrumental musician, singer, or story-teller; *pl.* **mynstralles**.

mynstralsie *n.* music as produced on an instrument, musical sound; musical entertainment.

mynt see **ment**

myre see **mirre**

myrke *adj.* dark in colour; that cannot be seen.

mys *n.* a sin, an evil deed, a criminal act, an offense.

mysbyleue, mysbyleuede see **misbyleue**

mysdoo *v.* to do wrong or evil, sin, transgress; *p.* **mysdide**.

myselven see **miselfe**

myssay see **missay**

mystaughte *ppl.* misinformed, misled.

nacyouns *n. pl.* nations.

naken *v.* to strip sb. naked or partially naked; *p.* **nakened**.

nakyn, nankyns, nanekyns, nokyns, nonekyns *adv.* no kind of; not any; no.

name see **nime**

nane *pron.* none.

nanegates *adv.* in no way, not at all.

narowe *adv.* 1) closely; 2) strictly; jealously; 3) carefully; 4) harshly; 5) eagerly, intently.

narre *prep.* near in space to sb. or sth., close to, in the vicinity of.

Natyuyte *n.* nativity [of Christ], Christmas.

nauye *n.* a two-masted round ship; *pl.* **nauys**.

nauyll *n.* the human navel, umbilicus.

nayle *n.* nail.

nedlynges *adv.* of necessity, necessarily.

neghe *prep.* in space or physical position: close to, near to.

nekke *n.* the human neck; *pl.* **nekkes**.

nenen, nenyn *v.* (?error for **nemnen**) 1) to mention, specify, or speak of sb. or sth. by name;

2) say, speak, tell.

nerre *prep.* near.

nerhand, nerehande, nerhande *adv.* almost, nearly.

neste *adj. & adv.* nearest, closest, forthcoming.

nepeles *adv.* nevertheless.

neyȝe *prep.* close, near.

nigromansy *n.* sorcery, witchcraft, black magic, occult art; necromancy.

nime *v.* 1) to take sth., draw a weapon, grab sth., grasp, to seize sb. or sth., take sb. by force; to assail sb. with violence; 2) to go, come, arrive, return; 3) to capture; 4) to consider sth., think about sth.; ~ **kepe**, pay attention, take notice; *p.* **name, nome**; *ppl.* **nome, nomyn, nommen, bynommen** deprived of the power of movement, unable to move; captured.

nobill *adj.* noble, of noble birth.

noblaye *n.* 1) high rank or birth; dignity, nobility; one proud of his birth; 2) magnificence, splendor, grandeur; luxury, sumptuousness, wealth.

noghte, noughte *pron.* nothing, naught; none; in verbal combinations, always denoting the absence of the action referred to by the verb.

nokyns see **nakyn**

nome, nommen see **nime**

nomyn see **nime**

none *n.* 1) noon; 2) **at the ~**, right away, presently.

nonekyns see **nakyn**

nones, nonys only in *phr.* **for the ~**, for the nonce, for the particular occasion or purpose, expressly; suitably; usually used as a rhyme filler.

note *v.* to make use of sth., use sth.; put sth. to good use.

noper, nowthir *adv.* neither; ~ ... **nor**, ~ ... **ne**, neither ... nor.

nowthir *adv.* nowhere, at no place.

noyen *v.* to harm sb. or sth., injure; *p.* **noyede**.

nyce *adj.* foolish, frivolous; ignorant.

nyce *n.* a fool.

nye *adj.* near, nearby.

nyȝ *adv.* almost, nearly.

ofdawe *v.* 1) to take off clothing, armour, pull off; 2) strip flesh from one's body.

offerande *n.* an offering; especially an oblation.

offre *v.* 1) to give money, food, goods, etc., to sb.; 2) to bring sth. to sb.

ofweue *v.* to strike off a head, or a helmet; *p.* **ofweuede**.

omys see **amis**

onane, onenone, onone *adv.* at once.

one *prep.* on; ~ **hethyng**, disdainfully, contemptuously.

or *adv.* even; before.

or *conj.* or; ~ **elles**, or else; and; whether.

ordeyne *v.* 1) appoint sb. to an office or position; to choose or appoint sb; 2) to prepare sb. or sth., make ready; to make preparations; get ready for sb. or sth; *p.* **ordeyned, ordeynede**.

ostage *n.* a person given or held as security for the fulfillment of an agreement or as a guarantee of one's good faith, a hostage; **taken to ~**, take sb. as a hostage.

oste *n.* host, company, army; *pl.* **ostes**.

ostelle *n.* lodging, accommodation; a place of sojourn or residence, dwelling place.

oper, ouper, owthir, owthire *adv.* either; ~ ... **or**, either ... or.

operwhile *adv.* sometimes, occasionally, at times, now and then, at one time or another; at various times.

ouerethrowte, ouerthrweter *adv.* across; crosswise, transversely; ~ **and endlange**, crosswise and lengthwise; in all directions; everywhere; in every way.

ouersaile *v.* to vanquish sb., overwhelm; conquer (land); **ouersailede**.

oughte *adv.* in any way, to any extent, in any respect, by any means, at all.

oughte *pron.* anything, whatever; **for ~**, in spite of anything, despite any amount, for all.

outraye *n.* an outrageous act, misdeed, aberrancy; sinfulness.

owthir, owthire see **oper**

owtrage *n.* 1) intemperance, immoderation; extravagance, licentiousness, wantonness; 2) injury, harm, damage; an affliction; affront, indignity.
owtraye *v.* 1) to overcome sb., conquer, vanquish; destroy sb., annihilate; 2) (of an army) to be out of array, be disordered; *p.* **owtrayed**.

paleys *n.* a fence, paling, palisade; a rampart.

palle *n.* 1) a fine cloth; a type of fine cloth, ?satin; fine clothing; 2) a cloak, mantle, robe.

palmer *n.* a pilgrim (originally a pilgrim to the Holy Land); *fig.* a crusader.

panym, paynym *n.* 1) heathen lands, heathendom; 2) a non-Christian, pagan, heathen.

par ma faye *phr.* (OF) by my faith, on my honour, certainly, indeed.

paraile *n.* 1) a fellow, companion; 2) a body of troops; a martial array.

par amours *adv. phr.* (AN **par amor, par amors**) through or out of love or kindness; used chiefly as a supplication when addressing someone: out of your love; as a favour or kindness; if you please.

parde *interj.* (OF **par Deu, ~Dieu**) by God; indeed, in truth.

pardone *n.* forgiveness; pardon of sins or wrongdoing.

parede see **paren**

paren *v.* to chop sth. off; *p.* **parede**.

parlement *n.* 1) discourse, communication, conversation; 2) a parley.

parten *v.* 1) to divide sth.; 2) to depart, leave; *imp.* **partes**.

partye *n.* a part, division, or section; **the gret ~**, the major part.

pase *n.* pace; **a ~**, 1) at a walking speed; 2) quickly, briskly; **a grete ~**, at great speed, swiftly.

passé *v.* to move, advance; travel; come, go, walk; go by, ride by, travel by; go through; *p.*

passedé.

pauelyoun *n.* a tent, especially a large or elaborate one used for military encampments, tournaments, hunting parties, etc; *pl.* **pauelyouns, paulyouns**.

pautenere, pautynere, pawtener *n.* a rascal, scoundrel, villain.

paye *v.* 1) to please sb., satisfy, content; be to the liking of sb.; 2) to pay; *ppl.* **payed**; **be ~**, to be pleased, content, or satisfied.

pays *n.* weight, a weight; a counterweight; **bi ~**, according to weight.

paynym see **panym**

peces, pecys *n. pl.* pieces.

pedayle, pedaylle, putaile *n. mil.* foot soldiers, infantry.

peesse, pes, pese, pesse *n.* peace, silence; **smytte ~**, strike silence, demand silence.

peler *n.* a pillar, a column.

penacle *n.* an architectural construction surmounting a building or structure; a spire, pointed turret.

pensel *n. mil.* small pennon, usually attached to a lance, often used to identify a lord and his men-at-arms.

peny *n.* an English silver coin, weighing approximately 22 grains, decreasing in weight and value from about 1300, equal to 1/12 of a shilling or 1/240 of a pound; 2) money, cash; 3) an unspecified coin, a piece of money.

perche *v.* to thrust a weapon, a horn, etc. through or into sb. or sth., part of the body or armour; to cut into skin or flesh.

pere *n.* 1) a peer, an equal; 2) a friend; *pl.* **peris**.

perelle *n.* peril, danger, jeopardy; exposure to physical injury, death, or destruction.

- pesane** *n. arm.* a piece of metal or mail attached to the helmet and extending over the neck and upper breast; see Explanatory Note 323.
- peytrelle** *n. arm.* a protective breastplate or pectoral armour for a horse; see Explanatory Note 5792.
- picche** *v.* to stick, thrust, or drive; ~ **his pauelyoun**, to pitch a tent, make camp; *p.* **pighte**.
- pilche** *n.* a garment for a man or woman made from the skin or fur of animals, usually worn as an outer garment, a fur pelisse, coat, or cloak; ~ **cloute**, a ragged ~.
- pipe** *v.* to play on a pipe; blow a horn; *p.* **pipede, pipide, pyped**.
- pite** *n.* pity.
- plate** *n. arm.* 1) a general term for iron defences fashioned from sheet iron or steel; plate armour worn by a knight or by a foot soldier; 2) a breastplate and backplate combination, a cuirass; 3) armour composed of overlapping plates; *pl.* **platis**, plate armour, a suit of armour; armour for a horse; see Explanatory Note 373.
- platirs** *n. pl.* platters, chargers; plates, dishes.
- playe** *v.* 1) to play; to amuse oneself; 2) to play amorously; make love, engage in sexual intercourse; 3) to play martial or athletic games; joust, fight.
- playne** *n.* a flat surface, a plain.
- playnte** *n.* lament; a complaint, charge, grievance.
- plene, pleyne** *v.* 1) to complain, make moan, lament; 2) to make a legal complaint or accusation; appeal to; *p.* **pleynede**.
- plente** *n.* abundance, prosperity, wealth.
- plesauce** *n.* satisfaction, liking, or gratification of a superior; a service or favour.
- pleyne, pleynede** see **plene**
- pleynere** *adj.* full, complete, total; **alle** ~, completely, in full.
- pleynly** *adv.* 1) in a clear and distinct manner, clearly, distinctly, exactly; 2) indubitably, certainly, without doubt.
- plighte** *v.* to promise or pledge sth. to sb.; **I you** ~, I assure you.
- plouer** *n.* small to medium-sized, short-billed, gregarious birds, typically feeding beside water but sometimes frequenting grassland, tundra, and mountains; any of various shore-inhabiting birds commonly known as plovers.
- polaxe** *n. arm.* a pole axe was a close combat weapon in which the main fighting part of the weapon, the axe, was placed on the end of a long shaft, typically of wood, thereby extending the user's effective range.
- portecolys, portcolysse** *n.* a portcullis: a strong gate made of bars with points at the bottom that hangs above the entrance to a town or castle and was brought down to the ground in order to close the entrance against enemies.
- posterne** *n.* a side door or gate, small entranceway; **preue** ~, a secret gate or passage.
- pouste** *n.* power; authority; strength.
- powdir** *n.* ground seasoning for food, spicery.
- praye** *n.* booty, spoil, plunder; an object obtained by pillage, a piece of stolen property.
- preche** *v.* to cry out; announce sb. or sth., declare, proclaim.
- preke** *v.* to spur (a horse), cause to gallop; spur on; *p.* **preked, prekede, prikked**; *ger.* **prekande, prikinge, prikyng**.
- pres, prese, presse** *n.* 1) a crowd, a company, a military host, an army, 2) an expedition; 3) the thick or press of combat; a battle, war; **proud in** ~, splendid in the throng; **owte of** ~, away from the multitude.

- present** *n.* the act or fact of being present in a place or together with someone, presence; **in** ~, present, in this or that place, in attendance; **here in** ~, here present.
- presentyng** *ger.* the act of presenting a gift or an offering.
- preste, priste** *adj.* 1) ready for battle, prepared, armed; 2) eager, willing; 3) prompt to act, quick, active.
- preste** *n.* priest; *pl.* **prestis**.
- preualy** *adv.* secretly, covertly, in secret.
- prikinge, prikyng** see **preke**
- prikked** see **preke**
- priours, pryours** *n. pl.* the heads or deputy heads of monasteries or houses of mendicants, priors.
- pris, prys** *n.* 1) the most noble or excellent of a class of persons or things; the paragon, the best; 2) pre-eminence, superiority; victory; distinction; 3) fame, renown; good reputation; **tellen ~ of**, to esteem sb. or sth.; 4) hazardous undertaking, a battle.
- priste** see **preste** *adj.*
- profe, profer, profre** *v.* 1) to make an offer or a proposal; offer sth. to sb; 2) to offer battle, challenge to combat; *3sg & imp.* **profers**.
- prokir** *v.* to cause sth.; bring sth. about.
- proue** *v.* 1) to prove in practice or by test sb. worthy or satisfactory, prove sb. virtuous, false, etc.; prove oneself worthy in action; 2) to strive; undertake a combat; endeavour (to do sth.); 3) to give an explanation (to sb.), explain; declare (sth.), assert, tell; 4) taste (food, water), have experience of sth.
- prowesche** *n.* bravery in battle or combat, valor; martial vigor, might, or skill.
- pryde** *n.* 1) glory, honour; proper pride, personal honour, good repute; 2) glorious state, exalted position; 3) splendour, opulence, magnificence; value.
- prye** *v.* to ask for sth.
- pryme** *n.* 1) the first division of the day, from 6:00 to 9:00 am; a time at the beginning or end of that period; the hour of sunrise; 2) the canonical hour of prime, about 6:00 am.
- pryours** see **priours**
- prys** *adj.* good, excellent, splendid; commendable, praiseworthy.
- prys** *n.* see **pris**
- pryve** *adj.* secret, concealed, confidential.
- puk** *n.* an evil spirit, a devil, a goblin.
- pur charite** *adv. phr.* (OF **par charité**) as an act of kindness, for the sake of charity.
- purchais** *n.* booty, spoil; goods gained by pillage, plunder, or robbery.
- pursuyt** *v.* to follow, pursue.
- purvey, purveye** *v.* 1) to think beforehand, consider, reflect; 2) to make arrangements, make preparations; 3) to provide for the supply of some necessity, supply that which is needed, furnish provisions; 4) to obtain sth., procure, get; *ppl.* **purueyede**, ready.
- putaile** see **pedayle**
- pyke** *n.* a spiked staff, especially one used by pilgrims.
- pyke** *v.* to pick or clean out by picking; **his fyngirs** ~, to pick one's nails.
- pyment** *n.* a sweetened, spiced wine used for refreshment and in medical recipes; ~ **of clare**, clary further spiced or sweetened; see Explanatory Note **2641**.
- pyn** *n.* a peg of wood or metal used as a fastener, nail; bolt.

pyn *n.* 1) pain or injury resulting from punishment, torture, torment, persecution; 2) imprisonment; *pl.* **pynys**.

pyped see **pipe**

quaken *v.* to tremble or shudder because of strong emotion, especially fear; *p.* **quook**.

quarelle *n. mil.* a short, heavy arrow or bolt with a four-sided (typically square) head for shooting from a crossbow or arbalest; a quarrel.

quarter *n.* 1) a measure of capacity usually used for corn of approximately eight bushels (i.e. sixty-four gallons); 2) a unit of weight of twenty-eight pounds; 3) a unit of length, usually for measuring cloth, equal to nine inches; 4) one of four equal parts of a unit of measure specified in the context; 5) a side; a direction; ~ **wind**.

quede *n.* a villain, an enemy, the Devil.

quelle *v.* to kill, slay; *p.* **quelled**.

queme *n.* to ~, satisfactorily, properly.

quere *n.* (OF **coer**, **coeur**, **cour**, **cuer**, **queor**, **quere**, etc.) the heart.

quidden *v.* to say sth., speak; hold sth. true, maintain, believe; *p.* **quod**.

quyte *adv.* completely, altogether, entirely; unreservedly.

qwaynt, **qwaynte** *adj.* 1) wise, clever; skillful, able; crafty, wily; cunning, sly, deceitful; 2) strange, unusual; remarkable, marvelous; peculiar, special; ~ **of gyn**, ingenious; **of ~ gyn**, ingeniously devised, skillfully made.

qwayntely *adv.* cleverly, cunningly, skillfully, elaborately.

qwayntise, **qwaynttes**, **qwayntyse** *n.* 1) wisdom, intelligence, skill; 2) guile, cunning; deceit, trickery; 3) ornamental battle trappings for man or horse; a surcoat or mantle worn over armour and bearing a heraldic device.

qwike *adj.* living, alive.

qwille *n.* a moment, a while.

qwite, **qwitte** *v.* to pay for sth; ~ **hym his mede** to requite sb. ~ **mede (hire, wage)**, pay sb's due.

qwitly *adv.* completely, entirely, wholly.

qwitt *adv.* freely, without hindrance or harm.

qwitt *v.* to take revenge (on sb.), get even with, punish.

rabet, **rabyte**, **rabytt** *n.* an Arab horse; *pl.* **rabittes**.

rafe see **refe**

rage *adj.* mad, insane; angry, furious.

rage *n.* madness, insanity; a fit of madness or frenzy, an act of madness.

rape *v.* to make haste, hasten, hurry; *p.* **rapede**.

rappe *v.* to strike sb. or sth, smite; of shields: clash together; strike off a head; *p.* **rappede**.

rase, **rasse** see **rise**

rape *adj.* early, soon; to ~, too early.

rathe *adv.* immediately, quickly, at once; before long, shortly.

raughte *v.* to strike, strike a blow; beat sb., strike.

raunge, **rawnge** *n.* 1) a line of fighting men assembled for battle or a joust, a rank; 2) the field marked out for a tournament, the lists.

rawe *n.* 1) a company, group; an army; **on a ~**, altogether, thoroughly; in all; 2) order, succession; **on ~**, in order, one after the other, successively.

- rawdoun** *n.* **with gret** ~, with great speed or violence.
- rawnge** see **raunge**
- rawnsone, rawnsoun** *n.* 1) the release of a prisoner of war by payment; 2) the payment made for the release of a prisoner of war; 3) the payment to buy off a hostile army; **schalle gaa no** ~, there shall be no lesser penalty; *pl.* **rawnsounes**.
- rayke** *v.* to go, proceed, set out; rush; *p.* **raykede**.
- recet, recette** *n.* a place of refuge, shelter, or accommodation.
- reche** *v.* to take sth. in one's hand, lay hold of, grasp.
- recche** *v.* to take heed of sb. or sth; *p.* **roghte**.
- reches** *n. pl.* wealth, riches.
- rede, redde** *n.* advice, counsel; **man of** ~, a counselor; **take to** ~, to decide.
- rede** *v.* 1) to read; 2) to teach; instruct; 3) to advise, counsel; 4) to relate a narrative, tell a story, recount sth. to explain something; state sth. in speech or writing; *3pl.* **redis, redys**; *p. & ppl.* **red**; ~ **I**, I advise you.
- refe** *v.* to tear sb. or sth. apart, dismember; tear up; *p.* **rafe**.
- refte** *v.* ?error for berefte, to deprive or rob sb. or sth.; ~ **of life**, put to death.
- reghte** *adv.* 1) as intensifier with adverbial phrases: exactly, precisely, just; 2) very, extremely; also, fully, quite.
- reke** *n.* haste, hurry; **on a** ~, ?in a hurry.
- rekke** *v.* 1) to describe sth.; 2) to tell, speak; speak of sth., mention; 2) to give an accounting, render an account; present an account; make up an account; 3) to impute, calculate; regard; indicate, declare; rate sth., value; *3sg.* **rekkes**; *p.* **roghte**.
- rekkenyng** *ger.* the act or an instance of calculation, accounting; **maken** ~, settle accounts, usually in figurative sense.
- releue** *v.* to alleviate wretchedness, ease, mitigate; to recompense sb.; *p.* **releuede**.
- reme** *n.* a kingdom, realm; the domain under a sovereign.
- remembraunce** *n.* the store of personal or vicarious experiences available to an individual's recollection; his capacity to recall the past; **haven** ~ to remember.
- renaye** *n.* an apostate, a renegade.
- renayyd** *ppl.* (beliefs) forsaken.
- renke** *n.* 1) an area designated for a tournament or sport; a jousting place; 2) a row through the midst of an army; *pl.* **renkes**.
- rent** *v.* 1) to tear cloth; 2) to lacerate flesh, skin, etc.; scratch; tear sb. to pieces.
- rent, rente** *n.* 1) revenue from property, income; 2) a tribute, tax, toll, fee, or payment.
- repaste** *n.* a meal; a feast; food; nourishment.
- rerer** *v.* to lift sth., raise; *p.* **reryde**.
- rereward** *n.* the rear of an army, rear-guard.
- reryde** see **rerer**
- rescove** *v.* to rescue.
- resoune** *n.* 1) reason; 2) a proposal, plan, scheme; **in his** ~, in his wisdom, wisely.
- ressett** *n.* a place of refuge, shelter.
- revere, ryve** *n.* a river; the bank of a river; a body of water; **vp ryve**, upstream.
- rewfully** *adv.* in a sorrowful manner, dolefully, miserably; fearfully.
- righte** *n.* 1) morally right; justice; 2) truth, accuracy, correctness; **at alle** ~ in the best manner, well, completely, fittingly; *pl.* **rightis**.

rise *v.* 1) to stand up, rise to one's feet from a sitting, kneeling, or reclining position; get up from table; 2) to rise from sleep, get out of bed; wake up; *p.* **rased**, **rasse**.

riste *n.* rest.

riste *v.* to rest.

robbery *n.* plunder, spoil, booty; stolen goods.

rode *n.* 1) riding; a ride, journey on horseback; 2) a riding expedition of a military nature; riding into combat; 3) road; 4) *eccl.* the cross.

roʒere *n. naut.* an oar.

rofe *n.* a roof.

roghte see **recche**

roghte see **rekke**

roo *n.* peace, quiet, repose, rest; **riste and ~**.

roste *n.* roast meat; roast beef; a roast.

roste *v.* to roast.

roune, rownn *v.* to speak softly, whisper; to speak about sth. in secret or private.

rowme *n.* a) a space or span of time. b) an extension, or area.

rowte *v.* to snore; snort, grunt; *p.* **rowttede**

rowte, rowtte *n.* 1) a body of attendants or followers, retinue, entourage; 2) an army; 3) a large number of people, a crowd, an assemblage.

rowthe *n.* pity, compassion, sympathy, mercy.

ruelle *n.* ~ **bone**, walrus ivory.

ruyde *adj.* of a spear, an arrow: sturdy; capable of wounding, cruel.

rydande *ger.* riding.

ryʒtes *n.* truth, accuracy, correctness; **bi ~**, correctly, accurately; **to alle ~**, in the best manner, well, completely, fittingly.

rygg *n.* the back of a person.

ryne, rynn, rynne *v.* to run, move quickly on foot.

ryngande *ger.* ringing.

rysse *n.* a living twig, branch or bough.

ryt *v.* to cut through, split; cut open; *p.* **ryt**.

ryve see **revere**

sacrament *n. eccl.* 1) the sacrament of the Eucharist; 2) the eucharistic elements; the consecrated bread in the Eucharist, the host, and the consecrated wine of the Eucharist.

sacrynge *n. eccl.* the consecration of the bread and wine in the service of the mass.

sadill *n.* a saddle.

saferonne *n.* an orange-red product consisting of the dried stigmas of *Crocus sativus* now used chiefly for colouring and flavouring; formerly extensively used in medicine as a cordial and sudorific; saffron.

saff-cundynt *n.* (OF **sauf-conduit**) the officially granted privilege of passing through an overlord's domain undisturbed or under escort; safe-conduct.

saiden see **saye**

sall, schall, schull *aux.* with infinitive, used to form the future tense, shall.

salte *n.* salt; ~ **flode**. the salty sea.

samen *adv.* together, in company; mutually, with each other.

- samyte** *n.* a kind of silken cloth, often embroidered or interwoven with threads of gold or silver, samite.
- sande** *n.* 1) envoy, messenger; *pl.* **sandis**; 2) **thanke Jhesu Cristes** ~, thank Jesus Christ's ordering of events.
- Sarazenes** *n. pl.* Saracens; as medieval Christian called Muslims.
- sare, sore, soure** *adj.* characterized or attended by physical pain, painful.
- sare, sore, soure** *adv.* 1) painfully, injuriously; bitterly; 2) harshly, stringently, severely; 3) loudly; emphatically, fervently, forcefully; 4) as adverb of degree or as an intensive: in great amount, profusely; in great numbers; to a great degree or extent, considerably; utterly, completely; **boughte full** ~ *fig.* to pay dearly for sth.
- sariandis, seriauntis** *n. pl.* servants, officials, envoys; ~ **of mase**, an official bearing a mace.
- satyne** *v.* a smooth, lustrous, silken cloth, satin; a piece of such cloth.
- sauely** *adv.* without harm or injury occasioned or received; safely.
- sauoire** *n.* 1) taste; 2) the flavor or taste of food; 3) smell as an inherent property of matter.
- saule** *n.* soul.
- saunce faile, sance faile** *phr.* (OF) without doubt, doubtless; certainly, truly; used as a common rhyme tag.
- sawe** *n.* 1) what is said, talk, words; a speech, discourse; 2) a story, narrative; a parable; an account, a history; **in (that)** ~, in (that) telling.
- sawser** *n.* a saucer, dish; a ?saltcellar.
- saye, sayne, sey, seye, seyne** *v.* to say; *3sgl.* **seys, saythe**; *3pl.* **saiden**; *p.* **sayde, seyde, seyde**; *imp.* **sayse**.
- sayne, seynte** *adj.* saint.
- saythe** see **saye**
- sayntours** *n. pl.* (?error for *signeurs*) gentlemen.
- scathe, scape** *n.* 1) harm, injury; loss, damage; 2) a matter for regret, sorrow, or pity; **that was** ~, that was a pity.
- schake** *v.* to brandish a spear, sword, etc.; wield a weapon; *ppl.* **schakede**.
- schall** see **sall**
- schame** *n.* 1) the feeling of having offended against propriety or decency; the feeling of having done something disgraceful; **do** ~, to cause sb. to feel shame; 2) disgraceful conduct, immoral behavior; 3) physical damage.
- schane** see **schyne**
- schape** *v.* to give sth. specific or definite shape, form; arrange; *ppl.* **yschapede**.
- schare** see **schere**
- sche, scho, sho** *pron.* she.
- schelde** *n. arm.* a shield.
- schende, schentte** *v.* 1) to do harm to sb., injure; bring sb. to ruin, overcome; damage, afflict; *p.* **schent**; *ppl.* **shent, schent, schente** destroyed; defiled, befouled; disfigured, mutilated; **ben shent**, to be lost, undone, ruined, confounded.
- schene** *adj.* of a person, especially a lady: beautiful, fair, handsome.
- schentschepe** *v.* to disgrace sb.
- schepe** *n.* sheep.
- schere** *v.* to cut or penetrate with a weapon or sharp instrument; *p.* **schare**; *ppl.* **schorne**.
- schethe** *n.* a holder for a sword, knife, etc.; a sheath, scabbard.
- schetis** *n. pl.* any length of cloth, especially linen; a piece of cloth used as a receptacle.

schette *v.* to lock a door or gate; fasten closed; *p.* **schett, schette, schott.**

schewe *v.* to show; to make known sth., that sth. is so, make clear, report; 2) to proclaim; declare sth. to sb; *p.* **schewed, schewyd**; *ppl.* **yschewed, ischewede** *ppl.* (used as an active past) to push, shove; attempt to move sb. or sth. by pushing and shoving; do battle, charge; to drive forward, push on, press forward.

schille *adj.* loud, resounding; shrill, high-pitched.

schille *adv.* loudly, resoundingly; shrilly, with a high pitch.

schip, schipe *n.* a ship, a boat, vessel; *pl.* **schippes, schippis.**

schippe *v.* to board a ship; to sail; *imp.* **schippes.**

scho see **sche**

schold, scholde, sold, solde *v.* (with *inf.*) in subjunctive or conditional constructions, should, would.

schorne see **schere**

schott *v.* *p.* see **schette**

schott *v.* to shoot; *imp.* **schottis.**

shouldere *n.* shoulder.

schrafe see **schriven**

schrewe *n.* a rascal, rogue; a wicked person, an evildoer; a devil.

schrewede *adj.* terrible, dreadful; adverse, bad; unpleasant or dangerous to experience; unfortunate.

schriven *v.* 1) to make confession; 2) to administer the sacrament of penance to sb.; hear the confession; absolve sb.; *p.* **schrafe.**

schull see **sall**

schyde *n.* a piece of hewn timber, a plank or beam.

schydis *n. pl.* 1) pieces of hewn timber, planks, beams; 2) small fragments of wood, splinters, chips.

schyne *v.* to send forth light, be bright; *p.* **schane, shone**; *ger.* **schynyngē.**

schayre *v.* to frighten sb., terrify.

sclendre *adj.* not fat or fleshy, thin, lean, gaunt; slim, slender.

score *n.* twenty, a score; **many (a) ~**, large numbers.

scrippe *n.* a bag or satchel; a pilgrim's wallet.

se, see *n.* the sea.

seche *v.* to seek, look for sth; to search, search about; go hunting, hunt.

secoude *adj. num.* second.

see, sen *v.* to see; *3sg.* **sees, seese, sey3**; *3pl.* **seyen, seyzen**; *p.* **sawe, segh, sowghe**; *ppl.* **ysee, sene.**

segge *n.* the siege of a town or castle.

segh see **see** *v.*

seke *n.* sick; the sick.

seke *n.* in phrases: **for ~ (of, with personal pronoun or noun) for the benefit of sb., a person's soul, etc.; for sb.'s sake; for Goddes ~.**

sekenes *n.* sickness; illness.

sekire *adj.* free from danger or harm; secure, safe.

sekirly *adv.* with certainty, without mistake, definitely, assuredly; really, actually, in fact.

selcouthe *adj.* 1) marvelous, miraculous, preternatural; 2) unusual, strange, peculiar.

sele *n.* a seal.

- semblande, semblaunt** *n.* 1) gracious manner, courteousness; friendliness, hospitality; 2) the face, the countenance, facial expression, an expression, a look.
- sen** *adv.* since.
- sen, sene** *v.* see **see** *v.*
- sendale, sendel, sendelle** *n.* a thin rich silken material; a covering or garment of this material; sendal.
- sengly** *adv.* without adornment, simply, plainly; alone, on one's own.
- sepere, sopere** *n.* evening meal; supper.
- sere** *adv.* 1) physically apart, asunder; 2) a great deal, much; many.
- sere** *n.* a king, lord, ruler, patron; a person of social importance; sire, father.
- sergeande, sergeaunte** *n. mil.* a soldier; a foot soldier; an attendant of a knight, a squire; a tenant by military service under the rank of knight; ~ **of armes**, an officer (of a king, nobleman, etc.) commanding a body of armed men.
- seriauntis** see **sariandis**
- serke** *n.* a garment worn next to the skin, an undergarment; a shirt.
- sertane** *adv.* certainly.
- seruen** *v.* 1) to deserve sth., be worthy of; 2) to guard sb., preserve from death; to keep the peace.
- seruyce** *n.* provision of food; the sequence of dishes served in a meal, menu.
- sesse** *v.* to cease to do sth., cease to be.
- sesyn** *v.* to take possession of a country, city, land, goods, etc.; seize sth. by force; capture sth.;
p. **sesyde**.
- sethe** *v.* to boil, seethe; of solid food: be boiled in a liquid; *p.* **sethide**; *ppl.* **sothen**.
- seue, seuen** *num.* seven.
- sewe** *v.* to follow after; follow sb., walk behind.
- sey, seye** see **saye**
- seyen** see **see** *v.*
- sey3, sey3en** see **see** *v.*
- seyne** see **saye**
- sho** see **sche**
- shyfte** *v.* to divide, separate; share; distribute sth.
- signyficioun, signyficacyoun, sygnyfycacoune** *n.* a symbol; **in** ~, as a symbol, symbolizing; symbolic meaning; 2) a sign, portent; the meaning of an omen, a dream.
- siluyre** *n.* silver.
- sirris** *n. pl.* sirs.
- skape, skaped** see **aschappe**
- skathe** *n.* harm, injury; loss, damage.
- skelpe** *v.* a blow, stroke, slap.
- skete** *adv.* swiftly, quickly; soon; immediately, without delay.
- skille, skylle** *n.* 1) that which is reasonable, fitting, appropriate, proper, correct, right; 2) a logical argument or reasoned exposition.
- skomfite** *v.* to defeat or conquer sb., in battle.
- skrathe** *v.* to scratch; *p.* **skrattede**.
- skynne** *n.* the human skin.

- sla, slec, slone, sloo** *v.* to slay; to kill, commit murder; cause death, destroy; ~ **up**, to kill (a whole group of people), wipe out completely; *3sg.* **slaes**; *p.* **sla, slaa, slewe, sloo, slough, sloughe**; *ppl.* **slayne, yslayne, yslawe**.
- slake** *v.* 1) to end, come to an end, cease; ~ **boste**, put an end to sb.'s pride; 2) to retreat; slacken an attack; cease fighting.
- slawyne** *n.* a cloak, especially a pilgrim's cloak or mantle.
- slayne** see **sla**
- slee, sley** *adj.* 1) wise, prudent; clever, ingenious; skillful, expert, accomplished; gracious, fair; 2) crafty, cunning, deceitful.
- slee** see **sla**
- slewe** see **sla**
- slike** *pron.* a person or thing of the kind referred to.
- slike, slyke** *adj.* with *sg.* or *pl. n.*: of a kind previously mentioned, described, implied; such.
- sloo** see **sla**
- slough, sloughe** see **sla**
- slyng** *n.* a hand-held weapon for throwing stones or similar missiles, a sling; **staffe-slyng(er)**, 1) a sling attached to a staff; 2) a soldier armed with such a sling; see Explanatory Note 3974.
- slynger** *n.* a soldier armed with a sling.
- slyte** *v.* to split sb. or sth. with a knife or other weapon, cleave, split open; *p.* **slytt**.
- smale, smalle** *adj.* small; of low estate, common.
- smarte, smerte** *adv.* in a manner causing pain, sharply, severely; fiercely, vigorously; swiftly.
- smarte** *n.* physical pain; harm.
- smerte** *v.* 1) to cause sb. physical pain, hardship, etc.; 2) to cause sb. to suffer grief, remorse, emotional distress; disturb.
- smate** see **smytte**
- smeten** see **smytte**
- smote** see **smytte**
- smytte** *v.* 1) to deal a blow, strike, beat; do battle, fight; 2) to cut off a part of the body, sever; 3) to pierce or penetrate; 4) to go, move; ~ **awei**, brush off; sweep away; ~ **on**, to strike sb. or sth.; ~ **pese**, strike silence, demand silence; *3pl.* **smeten**; *p.* **smate, smote**; *ppl.* **smyttyn, ismete**.
- snawe** *n.* snow.
- snelle** *adj.* rapid in movement or motion, swift; bold, valiant, courageous.
- snelle** *adv.* 1) swiftly, promptly, at once; 2) eagerly, energetically, heartily; assiduously; 3) roughly, fiercely.
- snelle** *v.* to hasten sb., urge on.
- socoure** *n.* aid, help, protection, refuge, succour.
- socoure** *v.* to help, assist, aid.
- socourrynge** *ger.* assistance, help; military assistance, aid in battle; an act of deliverance from danger, a rescue.
- sodeynly** *adv.* all at once, in an instant, suddenly.
- sogourne** *v.* to stay temporarily in a place, abide for a time; *p.* **sogeorunyde, soiourned**.
- solace** *v.* 1) to entertain sb., amuse; to please, cheer up; 2) to comfort sb., console.
- sold, solde** see **schold**

- somdele, somedelle, somdelle** *adj. & adv.* some small, a little; somewhat, to some degree or extent.
- somekyns** *adj.* some kind of, some kinds of; some.
- somere** *n.* a packhorse.
- somoun** *n.* a command to appear; a call, an entreaty, invitation.
- some** *adv.* soon.
- some** *n.* a son; *pl.* and *gen.* **sonnes**.
- some, sonne** *n.* the sun.
- songen** *ppl.* sung.
- sop** *n.* a piece of bread dipped or soaked in wine, water, milk, or some other liquid; ~ **in wyn**, cloth of red color; a piece of such cloth.
- sope** *n.* soup.
- sopere** see **sepere**
- sore** see **sare**
- sothe** *n.* with *def. art.* or *dem. adj.*: the truth of a situation; the actual fact.
- sothen** see **sethe**
- soure** see **sare**
- sowdane** *n.* 1) the supreme ruler of one of the medieval Muslim states, the sultan; 2) a Saracen ruler; a Saracen knight.
- sowghe** see **see**
- sowme** *n.* 1) a sum of money; 2) the totality of something, the whole.
- sownn** *n.* sound, a sound.
- spane** *n.* a unit of length variously reckoned as corresponding to the distance from the tip of the thumb to the tip of the middle or the little finger when the hand is fully extended, a span, hand's breadth.
- specyell** *n.* a close friend, an intimate associate.
- spede** *n.* 1) luck, fortune; **gude** ~, good fortune, prosperity; 2) the rate of progress or promptness in doing something; **with gude** ~, promptly, right away.
- spede, spedde** *v.* 1) to achieve one's goal, accomplish one's purpose; fulfill one's expectation; 2) to fare, get along, do; 3) to travel swiftly; come or go quickly; depart in haste; 4) in impersonal constructions: it turns out, it happens; with 'that' clause: it happens to sb. that sth. be done; 5) to achieve one's goal, accomplish one's purpose; ~ **of**, succeed in obtaining.
- speke** *v.* to speak; 3*sg.* **spekes**; *p.* **spak, spake, spakke**.
- spere** *v.* to lock or bar a gate, door, window, etc.
- spere** *v.* to make inquiries.
- spere-hede** *n. mil.* the pointed metal end of a spear.
- spere-man** *n. mil.* one who fights with a spear, a spearman.
- spete** *n.* a spit for roasting meat, fish.
- spill, spyll** *v.* to kill especially in a brutal or violent fashion, slay; *ppl.* **spilte**.
- splentes** *n. pl. arm.* the metal plates making up or reinforcing armour; ~ **of steel**.
- sporne** *v.* to kick or strike with the foot; *p.* **spornede**.
- spowrre** *n.* a spur, consisting of either a single spiked projection or a spiked wheel attached to a rider's heel.
- spowssyng** *n.* a wedding; the celebration of a wedding.
- spoyle** *v.* to strip sb. of clothes, undress.

sprange see **sprynge**

sprete *n.* a pole used for propelling a boat, a punting pole.

sprynгалles *n. pl. mil.* 1) siege machines used for hurling stones and other heavy projectiles, catapults; 2) the missiles thrown by such a catapult; see Explanatory Note 1838.

sprynge *v.* 1) of grass, leaves, branches: to come up, come out; of flowers: bloom, open; 2) of the day: to dawn, break; 3) to arise, originate, begin; happen, occur, come about; 4) of fire, flame, a spark: to leap; 5) of news, fame: to spread, be reported, become known;
p. **sprange, spronge.**

spycery, spysorye *n. pl.* spices.

spyll see **spill**

squoymous *adj.* easily nauseated, squeamish; feeling queasy.

sqwyere *n.* a squire; *pl.* **sqwyers.**

stable *v.* to establish or impose order; pacify (a land, town), bring order to; *p.* **stablede.**

stadde *v.* to stop, come to a halt; cease, end sth., bring to a close.

staffe *n.* a stick of wood, rod; *pl.* **staffes, staues.**

staffe-slynger see **slyng**

stale see **stele**

stalworthe *adj.* physically strong, powerful; hardy, robust.

stande *v.* ~ **awe for**, to be afraid, have fear; be afraid to do sth.

stones, stanys, stonys *n. pl.* stones, rocks; **bothe ~ and stokkes**, everything.

stapile, stapill, *n.* 1) a short rod or bar of iron or other metal bent into the form of a **U** or of three sides of a rectangle, and pointed at the ends, to be driven into a post, plank, wall, or other surface, in order to serve as a hold for a hasp, hook, or bolt to secure a door or box; 2) a pillar or column.

starke *adj.* 1) stiff, rigid; stiff with fear; 2) strong, sturdy, mighty.

statte *n.* state, condition; good or normal physical or emotional condition; normal physical function.

staues see **staffe**

stede *n.* 1) a splendid, noble, spirited horse, a steed; a riding horse; 2) a war horse, charger; *pl.* **stedis.**

stede *n.* a particular part of space, of definite location though often of unspecified extent.

stede *v.* to place sb. or sth. somewhere, situate, station; **be stedde**, to be beset or assailed; be afflicted; *ppl.* **stedde.**

steke *v.* to stab sb., an animal to death, to kill; *p.* **stekede, stekide.**

stele *n.* steel.

stele *v.* 1) to steal; 2) to spirit sb. or sth. away secretly; *p.* **stale.**

stepe *adj.* 1) high, elevated; 2) bright, glistening; of eyes: gleaming, glaring.

sterappes, sterappis, sterapys *n. pl.* stirrups.

stere *v.* to steer.

sterfen *v.* to die, perish; cease to exist; *p.* **sterff.**

sterlynge *n.* the English silver penny; the value of such a coin.

sterne *n.* an apparently luminous celestial body; a star, planet; a comet.

sterte, stirtt *v.* to move quickly, dart; hasten, rush; dash forward; ~ **up**, rush up.

steruen *v.* to die, perish; cease to exist.

steryn *adj.* strong, hardy, bold, valiant; daring, valorous.

sterynly *adv.* harshly, severely, sternly.

steuen, steuenn *n.* the human voice.

stiewarde, styward *n.* 1) an official or a servant in charge of the domestic affairs of a household; 2) a principal officer in charge of the domestic affairs of a royal or imperial household, a seneschal; 3) the title of various high offices in royal courts held by great nobles; **heigh** ~, chamberlain.

still *adj.* meek, mild, of gentle disposition.

stille, stilly, stillyly, styll *adv.* 1) silently, noiselessly, without a sound; without speaking; 2) meekly, submissively; mildly, peaceably; 3) secretly, covertly; privately, in private.

stirtt see **sterte**

stode see **stonde**

stodie *v.* to strive to do sth., endeavour, try; direct one's efforts or thoughts toward doing sth.

stodyn see **stonde**

stokke *n.* a piece of cut timber, log, plank; a block of wood; a post or timber used as a weapon, usually in *pl.*; **bothe** ~ **and stanys**, everything.

stonayde, stonayed *ppl.* (?error for **astonyede**) 1) stupified, stunned; insensate, unconscious; 2) overcome with surprise or wonder; surprised, amazed, astonished.

stonde *v.* 1) to stand upright; stand in a place, to be standing; 2) to make a stand in battle, stand and fight, resist an enemy in battle; 3) to be; exist; ~ **drede of**, be afraid of sb. or sth.; ~ **nede**, to be in need of help; *p.* **stode, stodyn.**

stounde, stownde, stownnde *n.* a relatively short space or length of time, a while; **in littill** ~, in a little while, soon, shortly; in a short time, in a moment, in an instant; **at that** ~, at that moment, at that time, then.

stoupe, stowppe *v.* to bend the body forward and downward, stoop.

stownde, stownnde see **stounde**

stowre *n.* armed conflict, combat, warfare, fighting, battle.

stowte, stowtte *adj.* 1) bold, valiant; skilled in battle, strong in fight, mighty; 2) noble, excellent, princely; noble in bearing or appearance, stately; **gaye and** ~ of beautiful appearance, splendidly adorned.

stowtely *adv.* 1) boldly; 2) nobly, excellently.

straa *n.* straw.

strake *n.* a blow or buffet.

strake *v.* see **stryke**

strande *n.* shore; *pl.* **strandis.**

strange *adj.* strong.

strayte *adj.* fierce, violent.

streke *v.* to go quickly, proceed rapidly, rush; *p.* **strekede.**

strewe *v.* of a place or room: to arrange or prepare for a certain purpose.

stroke *n.* a blow delivered with a weapon; a slash, cut; a thrust or stab.

stryfe *n.* 1) dissension, discord, contention; quarreling; 2) eesistance, opposition; objection; **withowtten** ~, without hesitation, unquestionably, no doubt; with no difficulty.

stryfe, stryve *v.* to quarrel; ?*p.* **stryuen.**

stryke *v.* to deliver a blow; strike or slash (with a sword); fight, attack; *imp.* **strakes**; *p.* **strake.**

stryue, stryuen see **stryfe**

stutly *adv.* boldly, valiantly; with skill in battle.

styes *n. pl.* ladders.

style see **stille**

stynte *n.* a pause or stop in an action; **withowtten** ~, without any delay, without ceasing, endlessly, for a long time.

styward see **stiewarde**

suelle *adv.* swiftly, promptly.

suerdis *n. pl.* swords; *gen.* sword's.

suffre *v.* 1) to undergo physical, mental, or spiritual distress or affliction, suffer; 2) to allow sth. to occur or continue, permit, tolerate, fail to prevent or suppress; *p.* **suffrede**.

suoghe, swoughe *n.* a loss of consciousness, faint, swoon; **a dede** ~, a dead faint.

suppe *v.* to drink or swallow; drink in small mouthfuls, taste, sip; *3.sg* **suppes**.

surcote *n.* an outer coat or overgarment of varying style, frequently of rich material, worn by men.

surnownn *n.* an additional name, usually derived from a quality.

suse *interj.* a cry of encouragement: Onwards! Come on!

suspeccyoun *n.* a feeling or belief that someone has committed a crime or done sth. wrong.

sustynauce *n.* that which is essential to sustain life; the necessities of life; a livelihood.

suythe, swith, swithe, swythe *adv.* 1) as an *adv.* of degree modifying a finite verb or *ppl.*, the meaning is largely contextual, depending on the verb being modified; e.g., with great physical force, violently, hard, diligently, laboriously, earnestly, devoutly, insistently, vehemently, swiftly, fast; as adverb of degree modifying an *adj.* or a *ppl.*, very, extremely, much; 2) promptly, without delay, quickly; soon, in a short time; right away, at once, immediately; **ful** ~.

swa *adv.* in the aforesaid manner or way, in the way previously described, in this way, in such a way, in the same way, so.

swagates *adv.* in this or that manner, in such a way; thus.

swalowe *n.* bird of the genus *Hirundo*, especially the European swallow (*Hirundo rustica*).

swarte *adj.* black; dark.

swaunke see **swynke**

swayne *n.* an attendant upon a knight, a squire; a soldier below the rank of knight.

swelte *v.* to cease living, perish, die.

swete *adj.* 1) sweet to the taste; 2) agreeable, delightful, pleasing; pleasurable.

swete *n.* blood, lifeblood.

swilke *adj.* of a kind previously mentioned, described, implied; of the sort, similar, like; also, same, the same; such.

swire, swyre *n.* the neck of a human being; the throat; **bi my** ~.

swith, swithe *adv.* see **suythe**

swithe *adj.* great; excessive, intense.

swoughe see **suoghe**

swoun *n.* a loss of consciousness, faint, swoon; a temporary state or period of unconsciousness.

swoun *v.* to become unconscious, faint, swoon.

swounyng *n.* a state of unconsciousness, swoon; the act of swooning.

swylk *adv.* such.

swynke *n.* 1) physical labor, hard work, toil; 2) effort; trouble, difficulty.

swynke *v.* to engage in physical labour, work hard, toil; to struggle; *p.* **swaunke**.

swythe see **suythe**

syclatoun, sykelatoun *n.* a kind of rich silken fabric woven with gold.

sy3e *v.* to sigh, moan expressing sorrow, grief, or a troubled frame of mind; *p.* **sy3yd.**

sygnfyccacoune see **signyficioun**

syne *v.* to sin, do wrong; 2) to commit a sexual sin; fornicate.

sythe *adv.* afterward, after that, then; subsequently, since then.

sythe *n.* a span of time; **a** ~, one time, once; **other** ~, a second time, the second time.

sythen *conj.* 1) subsequent to the time that, after; once that; 2) because, for; inasmuch as, seeing that.

sythen *prep.* since.

sythen *v.* to go; journey, travel.

taa see **tane** *pron.*

tabrouns *n.* drums.

tailerde, tayliarde *n.* used as a term of contempt; human who are tailed, like dogs; *pl.*

tayllyardis; see Explanatory Note 1784.

taken *v.* to take; to grip, take hold; ~ **to rede**, adopt a course of action, make a plan; decide to do sth.; *3sg.* **tase**; *p.* **toke**; *ppl.* **tane**.

takill, takylle *n. mil.* archery equipment; an arrow; equipment used in operating a mangonel; a bolt shot by a catapult or similar device; weaponry, arms.

tale *n.* that which one tells, the oral or written relation of an event or a series of events purporting to be true, a personal narrative, an account; **bi** ~, according to accounts; **leten** ~, leave a subject, turn from.

talent *n.* 1) feeling, emotion, passion; power, force; disposition, nature, character; **haven** ~, to have physical ability; 2) desire, will; inclination, habit, bent.

talkynge *ger.* 1) the act of relating a story, a recitation, narration; 2) a spoken or written narrative, a story.

talowe *n.* the fatty tissue of an animal.

tane *pron. & adj.* (usually preceded by **the**) 1) one, the one; 2) one of two; **the** ~ **side**, one side; the near side.

tane *v.* see **taken**

tane *v.* see **ten**

tange *v.* to bite sb., sting; *p.* **tangede**.

taen *n. pl.* 1) toes of the human foot; 2) the feet; in phrases denoting the entire length of the body: **from the creste vnto** ~, completely.

targe, targi *n. mil.* 1) a light shield, often small and round in shape; a buckler, targe; 2) a large protective cover of joined or overlapping shields or other improvised materials used in siege warfare; **targis and hurdis**.

tarynge, taryinnge *ger.* the act of delaying, the fact of being delayed; a delay; the fact of being slow to do something; **withowten** ~, without delay, at once.

tase see **taken**

taulde see **tellen**

tayliarde, tayllyardis see **tailerde**

telde see **tellen**.

tellen *v.* 1) to tell; 2) to count, reckon (money, gold); *3sg. and imp.* **tellis**; *p.* **talde, telled**; *ppl.* **taulde, telde**.

tempre *v.* to be mixed with sth.; combine ingredients, blend a mixture of ingredients; *p.* **temprede.**

ten *v.* to drag sb. or sth. somewhere; draw sth. from one place to another; *p.* **tane.**

tene *v.* to do sb. or sth. harm; harass sb., annoy, oppress; *p.* **tenyd.**

tent *v.* 1) to concentrate; think intently about sth.; study sth.; focus one's mind on sth.; 2) to take sth. into account, consider; 3) to listen; attend to someone's words; listen to a tale.

tenyd see **tene**

þaa, thase *dem. adj.* those.

þaire, thaire, theire *poss. adj. 3pl.* their.

þam, theym *obj. pron. 3pl.* them.

þamselþe *refl. pron. 3pl.* themselves.

þan, thane *conj.* then.

thare, þer, þere, ther, there *adv.* there; in that place.

tharmes *n. pl.* entrails, viscera.

thase see **þaa**

þay *pron. 3pl.* they.

þe, the *art.* the.

þe, the *obj. pron. 2sg.* you (thee).

þeche *n.* straw, reeds, or similar material used in covering a roof, thatch.

thedir *adv.* with verbs of motion: to that place, there, thither.

thedirwarde *adv.* with verbs of motion: to or toward that place; in that direction.

thee *n.* thigh; ~ **bane.**

þerappon *adv.* with reference to an action, a circumstance, an event in a temporal sequence, next after that, subsequently, then.

therby, þerby *adv.* 1) near that place; 2) by means of that, through that, thereby.

thereto, therto *adv.* with reference to a promise, an oath, a vow, declaration of intent, etc.: to that or it; in confirmation of that.

therewhills *conj.* while, as long as, then.

therewith, þerwith *adv.* 1) from it or them; with it or them; 2) in response to that, that being done or said, at that, thereupon.

therforne *adv.* on account of that, for that reason.

þerin *adv.* in that place, in it, within it.

therof, þeroffe *adv.* 1) out of that place, out of it, away from it; 2) from that or it.

þerowtte *adv.* out of that place; out in the open, outside.

thethyn *adv.* from that place, from there.

theym see **þam**

þis, this *dem. adj.* this; *pl.* **thies**, these.

tho *adv.* then.

þofe, þoghe *adv.* however, yet, nevertheless, though.

thoght, thoghte see **thynke**

thole *v.* to be made to undergo a penalty for misdeeds; to suffer; *p.* **tholed.**

thonour, thounour *n.* the loud or rumbling noise often heard before or during a rainstorm, thunder; ~ **dynt**, a stroke or clap of thunder; a thunderbolt.

þore see **dore**

- thorghe, thorow, thorowe, thourghe, þorw³, thurgh, thurghe** *prep.* 1) during and to the end or conclusion of a period of time, from beginning to end of a period, over the whole period; 2) by the agency of sb.; through the person of, by; with the help of.
- thorowt, thorowte, thurgheowte** *adv. & prep.* throughout.
- thounour** see **thonour**
- thraсте** *v.* ~ **oute**, to squeeze.
- thrawe** *n.* 1) a short period of time; 2) an occasion, a circumstance, an occurrence; **in a ~**, in a short space of time, quickly; **ani ~**, for any length of time, at all.
- thride** *adj. ord. num.* third.
- thriste** *v.* to crowd, throng; press forward, force one's way.
- thritty** *adj. num.* thirty.
- throte** *n.* the throat.
- thrynge** *v.* 1) to go, come, move; rush; 2) to force one's way forward; charge at sb., into battle.
- thurghe** see **thorghe**
- thurgheowte** see **thorowt**
- thusgates, þusgates** *adv.* in the aforesaid manner, in the previously indicated way, so, as follows; accordingly, consequently, therefore.
- thyn, thyne** *poss. adj.* your.
- thynke** *v.* to think; 3*sg.* **thynkes, thynkis**; *p.* **thoght, thoghte**.
- tide, tyde** *n.* 1) time; a season, space of time; 2) an indefinite space of time, a while.
- tide, tyde** *v.* to happen, occur, come about; become of sb., happen to sb.; ?used as *subj.* or future. **tidys; tyd me lyfe tyde me dede**, whether I live or I die.
- tighten** *v.* to set sth. in position; *ppl.* **tighte**.
- tite, tyte** *adv.* soon, hastily; **als ~**, immediately, right away.
- to** *adv.* in the same way; too.
- tobreste** *v.* to burst open, explode; split open forcefully; *ppl.* **tobraste**.
- tobrisen** *v.* to injure sb., the body, or a part of the body severely, especially by a blow or by crushing; crush sb., oneself to death; *p.* **tobrissed**.
- toffrusschen** *v.* to smash sb. or sth., crush; to beat or batter sb. to death; *p.* **toffrusschyd**.
- tohewe** *v.* to cut sb., a body, flesh, etc. to pieces; *p.* **tohewede**.
- tokynyng** *ger.* a representation through a visible object or an observable event of a truth, condition, etc.; an illustration of a state of affairs through a representative action; evidence, proof; a confirming detail.
- tome** *adj.* empty.
- tomorne** *adv.* tomorrow.
- topcastelle** *n. mil.* a platform near the top of the mast of a ship, especially one on a fighting ship, topcastle; see Explanatory Note 60..
- tope ouer taile** *phr.* head over heels, headlong.
- topsayle** *adv.* upside down, head first.
- torafe, toraffe** see **torive**
- torell** *n.* 1) a small circular tower which is part of a castle or a wall; 2) highest point, apex, summit.
- torent** *v.* to rip sth to pieces; break sth apart. Of a person, the body or flesh: to be torn in pieces, be lacerated; of a thing: break into pieces.

- torive** *v.* to rip out part of sb.'s body; tear sb. or sth. apart; to lacerate; *p. & ppl.* **torofe, toraffe.**
- torne** *v.* to turn, turn out to be; *p.* **tornede, tournede.**
- tonys** *n.* a denier of Tours, worth four fifths of that of Paris; a debased coin, imitative of the French silver tournois; **wheit** ~, the French silver tournois, based on the denier of Tours and used as a money of account.
- torofe** see **torive**
- toschake** *v.* to tremble, quake; break open or apart from strong vibrations.
- toschent** *v.* to destroy sb. or sth. utterly; to undo; ruin sb; break part of the body beyond repair, shatter, smash.
- toþer** *pron.* the second of two persons, things, etc., the latter.
- toun** *n.* a town.
- tounnes** *n. pl.* large barrels for wine, ale, or other liquid; casks.
- towz** *adj.* **maken it** ~, to make difficulties, make things difficult; to show reluctance to do sth.
- toyle** *n.* violent conflict, battle.
- trapped, trappede** *ppl.* dressed, caparisoned; armour-clad; **welc trapped.**
- trappour** *n.* a ceremonial or military trapping for a horse, made of cloth when primarily decorative and of armour when defensive as well as ornamental.
- trauaile, trauayle** *n.* effort, exertion; extra work, complication.
- trauelle** *n.* a journey, trip; motion, movement, passage.
- trauelle** *v.* 1) to work for wages; 2) to put forth great effort, take pains.
- trawly** see **trewely**
- traye** *v.* to vex sb., annoy, irritate; *p.* **trayedede.**
- traysty, tristry** *adj.* 1) faithful, loyal, trustworthy, steadfast; 2) to be depended upon, reliable.
- tre-castelle** *n.* a siege tower made of timber; see Explanatory Note 1859.
- trekilledede** see **triken**
- tresoun, tresone, tresoun, tresoune** *n.* treason.
- tresorye** *n.* a building, repository, vault, in which wealth, precious objects, etc. are stored and protected; a treasury, storehouse.
- tresoure** *n.* a store of riches, valuable objects, accumulated wealth, spoils; a quantity of money, precious metals, or stones, etc; *pl.* **tresours.**
- trete** *v.* to engage in negotiations, seek a settlement of differences; discuss terms (of a marriage).
- trew, trewe** *adj.* true.
- trewage** *n.* payment in money, goods, people, etc. owed by one nation or its ruler to another or exacted from one nation by another by virtue and in token of the former's subordinate status; tribute.
- trewely, trawly** *adv.* truly.
- trewse** *n.* a pledge to cease hostilities for a lengthy or an indefinite period of time, a truce, usually as a preliminary to further negotiation or the formal establishment of a peace; also, the peace established through such a truce.
- treytour, treytoure** *n.* a traitor.
- triken** *v.* to hang down, fall in a flowing manner; *p.* **trekilledede.**
- tripgettis** *n. mil.* a siege weapon designed to cast stones, darts, etc., with a counterweighted or man-powered throwing arm; a trebuchet; see Explanatory Note 5338-5350.
- triste** *n.* reliability, trustworthiness; trustiness, fidelity, faithfulness; **of euyll** ~, faithless.

- tristis** *n. pl.* supports, usually two-legged and employed in pairs, for boards or planks serving as a tabletops, trestles.
- tristnen** *v.* to trust; *p.* **tristede.**
- tristy** see **traysty**
- trompe** *v.* to sound a trumpet, horn, etc.; call an army to assemble by blowing trumpets.
- trompes, trompis, tromppes** *n.* 1) any of several trumpetlike horns in use in the Middle Ages; 2) one who plays a trompe, a trumpeter.
- trompetes, tromppettes** *n.* 1) any of several small wind instruments used primarily to proclaim, celebrate, summon, or warn; 2) a trumpeter.
- troncheoun** *n.* a staff; club, cudgel, truncheon.
- trowe** *v.* to have trust, be trustful; rely on sb. or sth., trust in God.
- trowghe** *n.* a grain hopper, a receiver like an inverted pyramid or cone, through which grain or anything to be ground passes into the mill.
- trusse** *v.* tie sb. or sth. to or onto sth.
- tues** *v. imp.* (OF) kill, slay.
- tuly, twyly** *adj.* deep red, crimson; ~ silke a deep red colour; also, fabric of such a colour.
- tunge** *n.* the human tongue; *fig.* language.
- twa, twaye, twey, twoo** *adj. num.* two.
- twyly** see **tuly**
- tyd, tyde** see **tide**
- tydyng, tythyng** *n.* 1) a report of an occurrence or event; a report brought by an official messenger; information gathered for a particular purpose, intelligence; 2) a message, an oral communication delivered by a herald; 3) an announcement; a prophecy.
- tyne** *v.* to suffer loss of a part, function, or faculty of the body, etc.; **lyfe** ~ , lose one's life, die; *p.* **tynt, tynte.**
- tyte** see **tite**
- tythyng** *n.* 1) recompense, reward; 2) yielding, yielding to something.
- tythyng** *n.* a tenth part of something, ten percent.
- tythyng** see **tydyng**
- vmbyclose** *v.* to close in upon an enemy; surround; besiege.
- vmbysett** *v.* to invest or besiege a stronghold, an enemy, etc.
- vmbythoughte, vnbythoughte** *v. p.* of **vmbythinke**, to think about sth., consider, ponder.
- vmgange** *n.* circumference, circuit, perimeter.
- vnblythe** *adj.* unhappy; sad, sorrowful.
- vnclosede** *ppl.* surrounded or encompassed.
- vncortays** *adj.* inconsiderate, rude, ill-behaved; ignoble; as noun: one who is rude.
- vnkouthe** *adj.* unknown; unidentified; alien; foreign.
- vndirstonde, vndirstande** *v.* to understand; **don** ~ , to teach sb.; give information to sb.; *p.* **vndirstode.**
- vndo** *v.* 1) unlock; 2) to lay out (goods or wares), display; *p.* **vndide.**
- vngirde** *ppl.* not wearing armour, not dressed for combat; not wearing a belt or girdle, with belt or girdle removed.
- vnhelyde** *ppl.* uncovered, exposed.
- vnkindly** *adj.* not in accord with the regular course of nature, unnatural, extraordinary.

vnlace *v.* to loosen the laces of garments, footgear, armour, etc., usually in preparation for removal from the body.

vnnethes *adv.* 1) hardly, scarcely, barely; 2) with difficulty, not without effort.

vnpyne *v.* to unbolt a gate; unbar.

vnrighte *n.* that which is unjust, injustice.

vnryde *adv.* 1) wildly, fiercely; 2) in great numbers, densely, thickly.

vnschote *v.* to open a door, gate, etc.

vnskille *n.* injustice, wrong; **with** ~, without regard for principle; wrongfully, unjustly.

vnthanke *n.* ill-will, wrath, anger.

vnwaxe *v.* to decrease in physical power or vigour.

vnwreste *adj.* wicked, immoral, depraved

vprieste *n.* resurrection; the act of rising from bed.

vttermaste, vttermaste *adv.* outermost.

valaye *n.* valley.

vawarde *n. mil.* the foremost position or part of an army, the vanguard of an army.

velany *n.* a treacherous act, villainy; **don (grete)** ~, to act wickedly or disgracefully, do a wrong, cause harm.

venerry *n.* the practice of hunting game animals.

venu *n.* attack.

venysoun *n.* 1) a wild animal hunted for food or sport, game animal; 2) the meat of a game animal.

verrament, verrayment *adv.* (AN **ver(r)eiment, verraiment**) certainly, truly; used almost invariably in rhyme position.

verrey *adj.* (AN **ver(r)ei, ver(r)i, verreae**) truly and thoroughly such, corresponding fully with what is implied by the name; true.

vertu *n.* virtue.

vesage *n.* the human face.

vesyoun see **avisyoun**

vetaille, vetalle, vetayle, vitaille, vytaile *n.* 1) food, drink, comestible commodities; 2) stocks of food and drink, esp. for use in warfare or travel; 3) supplies.

viage *n.* a journey by land or sea; a pilgrimage.

vigour *n.* strength, determination, military force, martial prowess, energy or zeal.

villely *adv.* so as to be morally offensive, wrongfully; wickedly, viciously.

vitaille see **vetaille**

vitaylen *v.* to provide sb. with supplies of food and drink or other necessities; to supply.

volantyne *n. coll.* birds, especially those raised or prepared for consumption, poultry.

vytaile see **vetaille**

wake *v.* 1) to remain awake in a custodial, protective, or supervisory capacity; 2) to watch over (sb. or sth.), protect.

walde, welde *n.* 1) dominion; sphere, domain; control, authority; **haue in** ~; 2) keeping, possession; **haue in** ~.

wande see **winden**

wande see **wonden**

- wane** *n.* abundance, plenty; an abundance of something; a copious amount, an excess; **ful** ~, at great speed, swiftly; with great force, forcefully; strongly; excessively.
- wanne** see **winne**
- wannowe** *interj.* contraction of: what now.
- wapyne** *n.* a weapon; weapons, battle gear, military equipment, armaments, arms, weaponry; *pl.* **wapyns**.
- warande** *v.* to guarantee the safety of sth. or sb.
- waraunde, waraunte** *n.* one who guards or defends, a protector; a champion.
- ward** *adv.* in the direction of ; toward.
- wardane, wardayne** *n.* one who is in charge of a castle, a city, etc.; a chief officer, master, an overseer; a city official with authority similar to that of a mayor.
- wardis** *n.* care.
- ware, warre** *adj.* aware, mindful; **be ~ of**, know about (sb. or sth.), have knowledge of, be familiar with.
- ware, warre** *n.* war; *v.* to wage war, fight, attack, do battle.
- ware, waren** *v.* see **bee**
- wareof** *adv.* of whom, whose; of which.
- warne** *conj.* were it not that sth. was so, if not for the fact that.
- warysoun** *n.* a reward or payment bestowed by a superior in exchange for some service.
- wasche** *v.* to wash; *p.* **waschede**.
- wassalle** *n.* 1) a salutation used in drinking healths, offering toasts, 2) the practice or custom of drinking healths; 3) used as an exclamation.
- wate** *adj.* rainy, wet.
- wate** *v.* see **wete**
- wawe** *n.* 1) misery, wretchedness; a state or condition of wretchedness, misery, or distress; 2) torment, physical pain.
- waxe** *n.* 1) wax seal; 2) growth, increase in size by natural growth; stature.
- waxe** *v.* to coat sth. with wax; *p.* **waxid**.
- waylayway** *n.* sorrow, grief, woe, distress, affliction; **singe of ~**, to lament; **thaire song was ~**, they expressed grief, dismay, or remorse.
- wayne** *n.* a two- or four-wheeled vehicle drawn by horses or by oxen, generally used for conveyance of cargo or passengers, a cart, wagon.
- wayte** *n.* a military or civic functionary responsible for signaling the hour or sounding an alarm by blowing a trumpet or ringing a bell; a palace retainer assigned to blow a trumpet at designated times, a herald.
- wayte** *v.* to direct one's gaze, look; gaze; 3*sg.* **wayttes**.
- wayttes** *n. pl.* lookouts, watchmen, sentinels; military guards.
- waytting** *ger.* 1) observation, surveillance; 2) an ambush, a trap; an evil machination, a treacherous design.
- wedes** *n. pl.* apparel, attire.
- wee** *pron.* we.
- weite** see **wete**
- wekett** *n.* a small door, usually set within a larger door or gate; a small doorway.
- welde** *n.* see **walde**
- welde** *v.* to reign, to rule.
- wele** *adv.* well; **nowthir for ~ ne 3ete for woo**: under no circumstances, for no reason.

welle *v.* of a liquid or semiliquid substance: well up, issue forth; flow.

wem, weme *n.* bodily injury or harm.

wen *v.* 1) to believe, opine, suppose; 2) to expect, anticipate, hope; 3sg. **wenys**; *p.* **wende**.

wen, wene *n.* **withouten** ~, undoubtedly, in truth (used parenthetically or as rime tag).

wende, wynede *v.* to go on foot, walk; to go; *imp.* **wendes**.

wende *v. p.* see **wen**

wendynge *ger.* 1) the act of changing direction; a turning; 2) ?a deceitful act, trick.

wentyn see **ga**

wenys see **wen**

wepe *v.* to weep.

werde *n.* (?error for **warde**) the action of guarding, keeping watch; watchfulness, vigilance.

were *n.* misfortune, tribulation; woe, sorrow.

were *n.* a protector, guardian.

were, werre *n.* war.

were *v.* 1) to repel sb. or sth., keep away; 2) to offer resistance, resist; to provide defence; 3) to mount or maintain a defence of a city, land, wall, etc. against actual or potential attack, hold.

weren see **bee**

werke *n.* a discrete act performed or undertaken by someone, someone's deed.

werken *v.* 1) to set (sth., a set of events) into motion, act to bring about; cause sth.; 2) to commit (a wrongful or foolish act), perpetrate (evil, a crime), do (a harmful deed); 3) to do construction work, erect a structure; work; 4) to exercise manual skill, work at a craft or trade; 5) to weave (fabric); *ppl.* **wroghte, wroghten**.

werlde *n.* the world; *gen.* **werldis**.

werre see **were**

werre, were, werrey *v.* to wage war, go to war; fight, attack, do battle.

werryoure *n.* a warrior.

werse *comp. adj.* worse.

wery *adj.* afflicted by a sensation of physical fatigue, spent, weary; exhausted.

weryn see **bee**

wete, wiete, wite, wyete *v.* to know; to be certain; ~ (**bou**) **wel**, be assured; *pr. 1sg. 1pl. 3sg.* **wate; wote; p. wote, wiste, wyste, wistyn**.

wethirwyns, whethirwynes *n. pl.* enemies, foes, adversaries.

weue *v.* to sever (a head or a helmet from the body); *ppl.* **weuede**.

wexe *v.* to increase in degree, intensify; become more fierce.

wha, whaa *pron.* who.

whare *pron.* where.

wharefore, wherefore *adv.* 1) for that reason, thus, therefore; 2) for what reason, on what account, why.

whate, whatte, whatt *pron.* what.

whedir *n.* the weather.

whedir, whethir *adv.* whether.

whedirwardes *adv.* in whatever direction, no matter which way, wherever.

whait see **tornys**

wheny *v.* to make various characteristic animal noises: of a horse: whinny; *p.* whenyed.

- whereof** *adv. & conj.* from which, out of which, of which; by means of which, whereby, with which.
- whete** *n.* cereal, especially wheat.
- whethyn** *adv.* from what place?, whence?
- whi** *pron.* why.
- whilke** *pron.* which.
- whils** *adv.* while.
- whitte** *v.* 1) to reproach sb., oneself; 2) to lay the blame on sb., oneself, or sth.; 3) hold accountable; denounce.
- whyte** *v.* to make (the hand) white (with silver), bribe (sb.); *p.* **whytyd.**
- wies, wiese** *n.* 1) manner, fashion; 2) appearance, physical form; **on alle** ~, in every way, in every particular, in all respects, entirely.
- wiete** see **wete**
- wighte** *adj.* 1) brave, valiant; 2) powerful.
- wighte** *n.* a living creature, an animate being.
- wilde fire** *n.* a highly inflammable composition used in warfare; Greek fire; see **furroure Gregis.**
- willen** *v.* 1) to have desire for something; want something to occur, wish; 2) accede to an action, consent; 3) to give directions, direct; issue an order to sb.; *2sg.* **wilte**; *p.* **wolde.**
- winden** *v.* 1) to wrap sth. in sth. else, enfold; 2) to lift or lower a bridge, etc. using some type of winch; *p.* **wande.**
- winne** *v.* 1) to get up, arise; 2) to take sth. into one's hand or under one's control, to take possession of sth. by aggressive action, take forcefully; 3) to struggle against an opponent or opposing force, contend; engage in armed conflict; 4) to proceed, make one's way; arrive at a place; manage to get inside a place; get access; *p.* **wanne**; *ppl.* **wonn, wonnenn.**
- wirchippe** *n.* honour, high respect, esteem; **don** ~, to do honor, show respect.
- wirke** *v.* 1) to work; 2) to act, behave, proceed; act; 3) to be painful, hurt, ache; cause pain.
- wiste, wistyn, wite** see **wete**
- wipal** *adv.* wholly, completely, fully; thoroughly, through and through.
- within** *adv.* ~ **and withowte**, in every place, indoors and out, everywhere, thoroughly, in every way possible.
- withowte, withouten, withowttyn** *prep.* without; **withinne and (or)** ~, in every place, everywhere, anywhere; ~ **(ani) lesynge**, without lying, in truth, truly.
- withstande** *v.* to oppose sb. or sth.; stand against.
- witt** *n.* a strategy, course of action, especially one showing wisdom or ingenuity.
- wittirly** *adv.* knowingly, truly, undoubtedly, certainly, indeed.
- wodde, wode** *n.* wood, forest; see **boughe** ~.
- wode, wood** *adj.* insane, mentally deranged, of unsound mind, out of one's mind.
- woghe** *n.* affliction, distress, suffering; misery, wretchedness, grief, sadness.
- wold, wolde** see **willen**
- wollewarde** *adj.* wearing woolen clothing next to the skin, usually as an act of penance.
- wonden** *v.* to renounce; abandon; *p.* **wande.**
- wondis** *n. pl.* wounds.
- wondre** *n.* an extraordinary thing, a marvel, prodigy.
- wone** *adj.* accustomed, wont; **ben** ~.

wone *n.* abundance, plenty; **ful god** ~, in great quantities, at great speed, swiftly; with great force, forcefully; strongly; excessively; repeatedly (the precise gloss is dependent on the context).

wonn *v.* to remain, stay; persist.

wonn, wonnenn *ppl.* see **winne**

woo *adj.* sorrowful, grieved; miserable, wretched; also, distressed, afflicted.

wood see **wode**

worde *n.* word; **at short wordes, in feue wordes**, briefly, in a few words.

wose *n.* any fluid or liquid substance.

wote see **wiete**

wounder *v.* to wonder; *p.* **woundirde**.

woundrede see **awoundre**

wounte *v.* **ben** ~, to be accustomed to do sth.

wrake *n.* 1) vengeance, revenge, retribution; 2) distress, misery, woe, trouble; 3) physical pain or suffering; harm, injury; 4) hostility, enmity; strife, discord.

wrang, wrange *adj.* wrong.

wrathe, wrothe, wrope *adj.* angry, irate, furious.

wreche *adj.* base, vile, contemptible; debased in character or condition.

wreke *v.* to avenge, punish, condemn sb.; *ppl.* **wreken, wroken**.

wrekyng *ger.* as *n.* revenge.

wrenche *n.* a trick, wile; a deception; a stratagem.

wrethe *n.* anger, wrath; animosity, hostility.

wrethe *v.* to be or become angry, rage; be angry with sb.

wrightis *n. pl.* carpenters, builders.

writh *n.* anger, wrath; animosity, hostility; **with** ~, in a state of anger, angrily.

writt, writte *n.* something written; a letter, or other written communication.

wroghte, wroghten see **werken**

wrothe, wrope see **wrathe**

wyese, wysse *adj.* wise.

wyn *n.* joy, happiness, pleasure, delight; **with** ~, with joy, with pleasure; with enthusiasm, eagerly.

wyndas *n. naut.* apparatus for hoisting or hauling; a windlass or winch.

wyndose *n. pl.* windows.

wynke *n.* sleep; a period of sleep, a nap; also, a fit of drowsiness, a somnolent state.

wynke *v.* to sleep, doze; nod with sleepiness, be or become drowsy.

wynn, wynne see **winne**

wyre *n.* wire; **golde** ~, see **golde**.

ybette *v. ppl.* decorated, ornamented; covered with metal, especially with gold; see **betyn gold**.

ybounde *ppl.* tied; bound; gathered or held together.

ycaste see **caste**

ycomen see **comen**

ydighte see **dighte**

ydo see **don**

yze see **eghe**

ylade *ppl.* of ships: loaded.

ylyke *adv.* in like or similar manner, in the same way, without distinction, similarly, alike.

ynde *n.* the colour indigo.

ynewe *adv.* afresh, once again, anew.

ynoghe, ynoughe see **anoghe**

ynowe see **anoghe**

yschapede see **schape**

yschewed see **schewe**

ysee see **see**

yseruede *ppl.* served (at a table).

yslawe see **sla**

yslayne see **sla**

ysteke *ppl.* locked, made fast, secured.

ystollyn *ppl.* spirited away secretly; **awaye** ~.

ywysse see **iwisse**